



LEADING POINTS IN  
SOUTH AFRICAN HISTORY



# LEADING POINTS IN SOUTH AFRICAN HISTORY

1486 TO MARCH 30, 1900

ARRANGED CHRONOLOGICALLY, WITH DATE-INDEX

By EDWIN A. PRATT

AUTHOR OF "PIONEER WOMEN IN VICTORIA'S REIGN"  
"LIFE OF CATHERINE GLADSTONE," ETC.

LONDON  
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET

1900





## PREFATORY NOTE

THE object of the present work is to bring together within the limits of a single volume, in the special interests of busy men, the leading facts connected with the growth of our Empire in South Africa, the doings of the Boer communities there, and the causes and chief events of the present war. These causes, be it remembered, are the result of a "situation" that began to be created long before the Franchise Question, the Jameson Raid, Majuba Day, or the aspirations of capitalists in South Africa were even thought of. They must be traced at least as far back as the Slachter's Nek Rebellion, when the Boers, by trying to enlist the natives on their side in order to drive the British out of South Africa, made their first move in the great struggle for supremacy which was bound to be fought out "to the bitter end" sooner or later; and the full purport of the present conflict will hardly be realised without some general idea—such as the following pages seek to afford—of the whole course of events since that time.

Gathered together from a great variety of sources—to consult which direct would involve the said busy man in a considerable expenditure of time—the facts

are presented in chronological order so that their development may be traced from year to year, or from day to day, as the case may be; and also because, in South African history especially, it is important to know not only when a particular event happened, but what was happening elsewhere in the countries round about at the same time. These two requirements, it is hoped, are met by the "Diary" arrangement; while, on the other hand, there should be no great difficulty in working out the continuous story of any particular branch of the subject with the help alike of the Index and of the frequent references, in brackets, to the next stage of development of the matters referred to. The Index itself has been drawn up, not according to the pages, but according to the dates—also arranged chronologically—under which the details will be found. Where a date alone is required it will, in most cases, be obtained at once from the Index; while in regard to such subjects as the Jameson Raid, the Franchise Laws, the Boer Intrigues for Expanded Boundaries, the action of Germany in South Africa, the leading events of the present campaign, or the histories of the Transvaal, Cape Colony, Natal, Basutoland, Swaziland, or Zululand, the entire story can be taken in at a glance, together with the date at which each development occurred, further facts being obtained from the Diary at any particular point, as desired.

The details given as to the way in which, step by

step, the Boers sought to expand the boundaries to which they had pledged themselves by the Pretoria and London Conventions to keep, are especially deserving of study even by those who are already more or less familiar with the subject. Another point made, it is hoped, abundantly clear, is the long-continued difference of view between British Ministers unwilling to increase our responsibilities in South Africa, and British representatives there who, with greater knowledge and better foresight, recognised the fact that our growing responsibilities could not be repudiated with impunity; while over and over again—in Natal, in St. Lucia Bay, in Bechuanaland, in Zululand, in Zambaan and Umbegesa's territory, and elsewhere—Ministers reluctant to annex were forced by the tactics of the Boers themselves into eventually taking over territories they did not want and which, in most cases, they might have had with far less trouble years and years before.

There is no need to refer here to all the other matters which have been brought together; but readers who are interested in the personal character of Mr. Kruger, and already have their doubts whether he is such a "patriot" as some people would have us believe, may like to have their attention directed to the correspondence which will be found under date May 20, 1878, giving the actual facts in connexion with his dismissal from the post he had accepted under the British Government after the annexation. In the light of

present events there was something almost prophetic (as regards one, at least, of the persons concerned) in the declaration then made by Sir Theophilus Shepstone, respecting Kruger and Joubert, when he wrote to the former: "No two men in the Transvaal have done more to make the general ruin you deprecate possible than you have, and upon no shoulders will the responsibility of averting it press so heavily as upon yours."

EDWIN A. PRATT

LONDON, *March* 30, 1900

## LEADING POINTS IN SOUTH AFRICAN HISTORY

**1486. The Cape discovered.**—Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope by the Portuguese navigator Bartholomew Diaz.

**1497. The Cape doubled.**—Vasco da Gama doubles the Cape with a fleet of four vessels of 125 tons each, and discovers the Natal coast, which he so names because he sees it first on Christmas Day.

**1503. Table Bay and Table Mountain.**—Antonio Saldanha, a Portuguese, lands in Table Bay, and is the first European to ascend Table Mountain.

**1580. What Sir Francis Drake thought of the Cape.**—Sir Francis Drake doubles the Cape, which he describes as “the most stately thing and fairest cape we saw in the whole circumference of the world.”

**1591. English ships in Table Bay.**—First visit of English ships to Table Bay.

**1595. Dutch ships in Table Bay.**—First visit of the Dutch to Table Bay.

**1600. English East India Company.**—English East India Company formed.

**1602. Dutch East India Company.**—Dutch East India Company formed.

**1620. A port of call.**—Table Bay becomes an ordinary port of call for ships proceeding east.

— JULY 3. **A premature announcement.**—British sovereignty proclaimed over South Africa by Shilling and FitzHerbert, two English East India Company captains, who raise the British flag on Signal Hill. [No settlement, however, was attempted, the annexation being repudiated by James I.]

**1648. A wreck that led to great results.**—Dutch East India Company's ship *Haarlem* is wrecked in Table Bay. [The crew remained ashore several months before being rescued. On their return home they gave a glowing account of the country, and recommended the establishment of a station there. It was resolved to act on their advice.]

**1652. APRIL 7. The Dutch take possession.**—A Dutch East India Company's expedition, commanded by Jan van Riebeck, a surgeon in the Company's service, takes possession of Table Bay, under a charter granted by the Dutch States General. [There was then no idea of establishing a colony. All that was aimed at was the securing of a halfway house to India, where ships could call for fresh meat and vegetables. No white man had yet gone so far as 10 miles inland.]

**1657. The first settlers.**—Nine soldiers and sailors, discharged from the Dutch East India Company's service, have small farms allotted to them at Rondebosch.

[They were the first actual colonists in South Africa, and the "station" was thus converted into a "settlement."]

**1658. The first vineyard.**—The first vineyard in South Africa is planted by van Riebeck on a farm beyond Rondebosch, thenceforward called, on that account, Wynberg.

**1659. JULY 29. Settlers and Hottentots.**—Van Riebeck writes to the Governor-General and Council, Batavia, concerning the hostility of the Hottentots, who object to the Dutch breaking up the best land and grass and "trying to establish themselves everywhere." They threaten, he says, to destroy the houses, and then to surprise the fort and force the Dutch to abandon the country.

—DEC. 15. **"Always be a burden."**—The Batavia Government authorise van Riebeck to increase the garrison by obtaining soldiers from passing ships, and declare that the residency at the Cape, "producing no return, would always be a burden on the Company."

**1672. "In matters of commerce the fault of the Dutch. . . ."**—The Dutch East India Company purchase the Cape districts from the Hottentot chiefs for "tobacco, beads, brandy, bread, and other trifles." [These goods were nominally worth £1,600; their actual value was £9 12s. 9d.]

**1679. The expansion begins.**—Stellenbosch founded by the Governor, Simon van der Stel, and so called from



Stel, his own name, and Bosch, the maiden name of his wife. [This was the first important extension of the settlement, which then consisted of about 300 men and 90 women. The number was increased shortly after by a party of immigrants from Holland, including a number of girls from orphan asylums, sent out as wives for the farmers.]

**1687.—Occupation of the Drakenstein valley.**

**1688. French settlers.**—Arrival of 180 Huguenot settlers. [They wished to form a separate French colony, but this was not allowed, and they were compelled to mingle with the Dutch settlers, with whom they thus soon formed one people.]

**1689. “Far from the madding crowd.”**—Explorations eastward. “Trekking” from the “crowded” districts of the settlement, and also from the rule of the Dutch East India Company’s servants, already in active force.

**1700. The first barrier range crossed.**—Extension of the Colony to the Tulbagh basin, the first barrier range being thus crossed.

**1707. Dutch rule.**—Governor Wilhem Adriaan van der Stel, son of Simon, is recalled, owing to charges of maladministration brought against him by the burghers.

**1709. The language question.**—French immigrants forbidden to use the French language in official communications and in their Church services.

**1713. The original Kruger.**—Jacob Kruger [original founder of the Kruger family in South Africa] arrives at Capetown in the Dutch East India Company's service. [The European population of Capetown at this time was 1,890, and the number of their houses was 300.]

**1737. The missionary element introduced.**—George Schmidt, Moravian missionary, begins work among the Hottentots. [For further development in regard to missionaries, see 1792.]

**1745. How the Colony grew.**—Magistracy established at Swellendam. [Trekking was still continuous, owing to the desire of Dutch settlers to get away alike from the "crowded" districts and from the rule of the Dutch East India Company. As they trekked, however, and set up fresh towns, the Company's control followed in the shape of magistracies. See 1784.]

**1754. SEPT. 3. The treatment of slaves.**—By a code of laws issued at Capetown, any slave who raises his hand against his master is to be put to death "without mercy," and any slave who loiters outside the church doors at service time is to be "severely flogged by the ministers of justice."

**1761-2. Explorations north.**—An expedition from Cape Colony crosses the Orange River and explores Namaqualand as far as 26° 18' south.

**1778. Colonists and Kaffirs.**—The Great Fish River declared to be the boundary of Cape Colony to the east. [It was hoped in this way to establish a dividing

line between the colonists, who were steadily spreading northward and eastward, and the Kaffirs, who were advancing southward and westward, and were, too, showing a decided liking for the cattle of the Europeans.]

**1779. Settlers and Dutch rule.**—The settlers present a memorial to the Dutch East India Company in which, among other things, they beg that the Fiscal, the highest law officer of the Government, may be restrained from arbitrarily committing burghers to prison and from compounding crimes by private fines; that the practice of deportation to the Indian factories may be prohibited; that authentic copies of the ordinances in force should be furnished from Holland, or that a printing press should be set up and a printer appointed; and that the burghers should be allowed to purchase goods direct from Holland, and also consign produce there direct, without the intervention of the Cape officials. [The reply was a distinct refusal, the settlers being scoffed at for wishing to put themselves on an equality with the “privileged free citizens of the United Provinces.”]

“It would be a mere waste of words,” it said, “to dwell on the remarkable distinction to be drawn between burghers whose ancestors nobly fought for and conquered their freedom from tyranny . . . and such as are named burghers here, who have been permitted, as matter of grace, to have a residence in a land of which possession has been taken by the Sovereign power, there to gain a livelihood as tillers of the earth, tailors, and shoemakers.”]

**1781. Great Britain at war with the Netherlands.**  
—Great Britain having, in 1780, declared war against

the Netherlands, a British fleet is sent to take possession of the Cape; but the French, who are now in alliance with the Dutch, hear of our intention, and hurry off a strong opposing force, which arrives first on the scene, with the result that the English commodore abandons the idea.

**1783.**—Peace restored between Great Britain and the Netherlands.

**1784. Dutch rule follows the trekkers.**—Magistracy established at Graaff Reinet in order to bring under the control of the Company's servants the farmers who had trekked to that district. [See 1795.]

**1789. A deputation to Holland.**—Delegates of the colonists proceed to Amsterdam to protest against the rule of the Dutch East India Company's servants. [They complained of "tyrannical interference with the people, alike as burghers and as individuals," and also, among other things, "that they were not allowed to punish their slaves at will." A Commission of Inquiry was sent out and some minor reforms were made, but these were not sufficient to allay the discontent.]

**1790. Bankruptcy.**—The Dutch East India Company is declared bankrupt.

**1792.**—Three Moravian missionaries establish the station of Genadendal for the benefit of the Hottentots. [See 1807.]

**1793. France declares war.**—France declares war against Great Britain and Holland.

**1795. Dutch subjects and Dutch rule.**—Finding themselves heavily taxed, and being afforded in return no protection from the Kaffirs, the burghers of the frontier districts of Graaff Reinet and Swellendam throw off the yoke of the East India Company, expel the officials, and set up independent governments.

— SEPT. 16. **The British occupy Capetown.**—Capetown occupied by British forces, sent there, with the approval of the Prince of Orange—a refugee in England—to hold it against a possible invasion by the French, under whose domination the Dutch Provinces have passed. [Swellendam submitted to the British, but the burghers of Graaff Reinet did not surrender until a military expedition had been sent against them.]

**1799. The missionary movement.**—Commencement of the London Missionary Society's labours among the Kaffirs and Hottentots. [See 1807.]

**1803. FEB. Dutch Government rule at the Cape.**—Under the provisions of the Peace of Amiens Cape Colony comes under the direct rule of the Dutch or Batavian Government, which seeks to rectify the abuses of the Dutch East India Company's servants.

— MAY. **Great Britain and Holland at war.**—War breaks out between Great Britain and Holland.

**1806. JAN. 10. The British take possession.**—Capetown surrenders to an English force under General Baird.

1807.—Moravian missionary station established at Groenekloof, 30 miles north of Capetown.

1811. **The Black Circuit.**—Under Lord Caledon's government it is ordered that two members of the Supreme Court shall annually go on circuit to every district in the colony. Two missionaries at Bethelsdorp champion grievances of the Hottentots, and lodge accusations against members of 70 or 80 leading families on the frontier. Searching inquiry is made, lasting several months; over 1,000 witnesses examined. Some convictions are secured, for minor offences, but in no instance are the most serious accusations substantiated. The proceedings lead to much bitterness between Dutch and English, and especially between colonists and missionaries. [See 1818.]

1811–12. **The Kaffir wars begin.**—First war with the Kaffirs, who enter in force the neutral ground between the Fish and the Sunday Rivers. [They were driven back, and a line of military posts was established along the eastern frontier. The headquarters, Grahams-town, became a military station in 1819, and developed into an important town after the settlement of Albany. See 1820–1.]

1812. **Beginning of the Zulu power.**—Chaka establishes the Zulu power. [The "Attila" or the "Napoleon" of South Africa, as Chaka came to be known, was born in 1783, and was the son of a Zulu chief living on the banks of the River Umvolosi. The Zulus were then quite a small tribe, and subject to the Abatewa. When a youth, Chaka fled from the jealousy

of his father, and took refuge with the Abatewa chief, Dingiswayo, who, having seen in Cape Colony the system of European military organisation, set about forming an army of his own on the same model. In due course Chaka became successively chief of the Zulus and chief of the Abatewa, and he then conceived plans of widespread conquest with the help of a highly trained army of 40,000 or 50,000 men, working under a system of absolutely perfect organisation, and with an obedience which knew no law but the will of a cruel and despotic chief, who awarded the punishment of death for the slightest offence. One characteristic of this organisation was that the soldiers were not allowed to marry without permission, and this was given only in return for long and meritorious services. By means of this military machine Chaka exterminated practically every tribe between Delagoa Bay and the Umzimvubu (St. John's) River. The number of his victims has been put at one million. See 1828.]

— **The slavery question.**—It is enacted in Cape Colony that Hottentot children, on reaching the age of eight, shall be apprenticed under regulations which make them slaves in all but the name. [See 1828, July.]

**1814. AUG. 13. Britain pays six millions.**—The great wars in Europe having ended, a Convention is signed under which Great Britain pays £6,000,000 for the Dutch possessions at the Cape, and also for the territories now forming British Guiana, already acquired by them by conquest. Dutch ships are to have permission "to resort freely to the Cape of Good Hope

for the purposes of refreshment and repairs, without being required to pay other charges than such as British subjects are required to pay." [Population of Cape Colony at this date: 26,700 Europeans, 17,650 free Hottentots, and 29,000 slaves.]

**1816. Robert Moffat.**—Robert Moffat goes to the Cape for the London Missionary Society. The Wesleyans also begin their missionary labours in South Africa. [In 1821 Mr. Moffat went to live with the Batlapin, at the mission station of Kuruman, founded by the London Missionary station in 1817.]

— MARCH 6. **The story of Slachter's Nek.**—Execution of the Slachter's Nek rebels. [Frederick Bezuidenhout, a farmer living in the Baviaan's River district, had refused to obey a District Court summons, issued on the complaint of one of his Hottentots, whose term of service had expired, but whom he would not allow to leave or remove his effects. He also threatened to shoot the messenger of the Court. Summoned next to the Higher Court at Graaff Reinet he again refused to appear, and the judge sentenced him for contempt. The under-sheriff went to arrest him, and, the district where the man lived being a notoriously lawless one, the official took a military escort with him. Bezuidenhout then retired with two others to a cave which he had stocked with food and ammunition, and, as the under-sheriff's party approached, the three fired on them. One of the party fired in return, and killed Bezuidenhout on the spot. When the news became known 50 or 60 Boers rose in arms to avenge his death, and they



endeavoured to incite the Kaffirs to join them, promising them land if they would help to drive the British from the country. Efforts were made to pacify them, but they worked up a regular rebellion against the British. Eventually a troop of dragoons was sent against them, and 39 surrendered. The leaders escaped for a time, but were afterwards found by a detachment of the Cape Corps trying to get away from the Colony. They resisted arrest, and fired on the troops from behind their waggons, killing one man and wounding another. Shots were fired in return; but it was not until Jan Bezuidenhout, brother of Frederick, had been killed, and another Boer, named Faber, and his wife had been wounded, that the remainder surrendered. The prisoners were tried by a Special Commission of the High Court, and the five leaders were sentenced to death. They were publicly hanged at Slachter's Nek—the very spot where they had met and sworn to stand by each other until they had expelled the "tyrants." Their fate would, in any circumstances, have produced a great impression; but this impression was the more profound because of the horrible conditions under which the execution was carried out. The five men were to be hanged simultaneously, and they were, therefore, all swung off together. But the scaffold broke down under their united weight, and the five fell to the ground with the ropes round their necks, but only partially strangled. When they recovered their senses they crawled up to the officer in charge, and, amid the cries and sobs of their friends, prayed for mercy. But the officer thought it his duty to still

carry out the sentence, and he ordered his men to reconstruct the scaffold. This was done, and by sunset the five had been at last successfully hanged—this time one after the other. The rebellion was checked, but Slachter's Nek was never forgotten by the Boers, and it has been stated that when, in the early days of 1896, there was some talk in the Transvaal of Dr. Jameson being executed in connection with his raid, the identical beam on which the Slachter's Nek rebels were hanged was taken to Pretoria in readiness for possible use over again.]

**1817. Rise of the Matabele.**—(a) Moselekatze, a favourite of Chaka, and leader of a large part of the Zulu army, is condemned to death, together with his men, for keeping part of the booty secured in an expedition on which he had been sent. [The whole band fled into what is now the Transvaal and Bechuana-land, and formed the tribe of the Matabele. They exterminated the other tribes, with the object of having an uninhabited district between themselves and Chaka. Moselekatze's headquarters were just to the north of what is now Pretoria. See 1836 (b).]

— (b) Arrival of 200 Scotch mechanics in Cape Colony.

**1818. The missionary movement.**—Dr. Philip sent to the Cape as general superintendent of London Missionary Society missions. [The missionary movement, taken up with great energy, was to exercise a powerful influence both in Cape Colony and in England, owing especially to the accusations brought by the

missionaries against colonists of inhumanity towards natives. The work of Dr. Philip and others in Cape Colony had a direct bearing on the agitation for the abolition of slavery. See 1828, April 28.]

**1819. British colonisation.**—Force of from 8,000 to 10,000 Kaffirs, headed by Makana, a prophet, attack Grahamstown. Desperate struggle with garrison of 320 men, but Kaffirs finally repulsed with heavy loss, and driven back to the Kei. [This incursion showed the impossibility of defending the existing frontier, owing to the dense bush on the other side of the Fish River, which concealed the movements of the Kaffirs, and steps were taken to occupy the country between the Fish River and the Keiskamma, that country being capable of better defence. The Colonial Government objected to this extension of the boundary, and a treaty was then made with the Kaffir chiefs that the territory between the two rivers should be neutral ground. The treaty was soon broken by the Kaffirs, whose chiefs, however, while objecting to the presence of isolated farmers as a temptation to plunder, and a possible danger to peace, consented to the setting up of a large British settlement and a line of forts. Lord Charles Somerset reported to the home Government in favour of such a settlement, describing the territory as “unrivalled in the world for its beauty and fertility.” The Government obtained a vote of £50,000, and no fewer than 90,000 persons asked to be sent out, though only 4,000 could be selected.]

**1820—1. British immigrants: Port Elizabeth founded.**—Arrival of 4,000 British immigrants, sent

out under the vote of 1819. [The new arrivals proceeded east from Capetown to Algoa Bay, where they started the Albany Settlement, and laid the foundations of Port Elizabeth, so called after Lady Elizabeth, deceased wife of the Acting-Governor, Sir Rufane Donkin. Each immigrant was allotted 100 acres of land, and was bound to employ free labour only. The Settlement greatly increased the British element in South Africa, counterbalancing the Dutch, and carried the line of civilisation up to the borders of Kaffirland.] [Among these immigrants was Thomas Pringle. See 1826.]

**1821.**—The Glasgow Missionary Society starts work in South Africa.

**1824. The rise of the Basuto.**—Moshesh begins to form the Basuto tribe out of remnants of various tribes broken up by Chaka and other disturbers of native peace, and as the result of forays and expeditions on his own account. [The power of Moshesh grew rapidly, the reputation he acquired for valour, wisdom, and generosity bringing him many adherents. See 1842.]

— **Paul Kruger born.**—Stephanus Paulus; Johannes Kruger is born at the homestead of Bulhoek. [In the immediate neighbourhood of Bulhoek, the birthplace of the future President of the South African Republic, there was founded, in 1830, the present town of Colesberg.]

— **AUG. An English footing in Natal.**—Lieut. Farewell and Mr. Fynn sent to the south-eastern coast by a company of Cape merchants to establish a trade

there, visit Chaka in his principal military kraal, and obtain from him a document which gives to the company “entire and full possession in perpetuity of the port and harbour of Natal, together with the islands therein and surrounding country,” representing territory running 100 miles inland, 10 miles to the south-west, and 25 miles to the north-east of the harbour. [In course of time the various English settlers in Natal became chiefs over different parts of an extensive area, Mr. Fynn being recognised as the “Great Chief of the Natal Kaffirs,” though they were all responsible to Chaka, or subsequently Dingaan, for the conduct of the people under them. See 1835, June 23.]

**1825.**—An Executive Council appointed to assist the Governor of Cape Colony. [See 1835 (*b*).]

**1826. Thomas Pringle.**—Thomas Pringle, the “South African Poet,” and one of the party of British immigrants arriving in 1820–1, returns to England. [He joined almost at once in the anti-slavery agitation at home, and became secretary to the Society for the Abolition of Slavery, and one of the leaders of the whole movement. It was he who wrote the lines:—

“Oppression, I have seen thee face to face,  
And met thy cruel eye and clouded brow.”

**1827. The language question.**—It is ordained that henceforth all legal proceedings in Cape Colony shall be conducted in English. The Dutch local courts are superseded by magistrates’ courts, presided over by English Civil Commissioners.

**1828.**—Chaka murdered by his brother Dingaan, and succeeded by him. [See 1838, Feb. 6.]

— APRIL 28. **Missionaries and natives.**—Publication of Dr. Philip's book, *Researches in South Africa*, exposing the ill-treatment and the wrongs of the Hottentots. [Many of his statements were afterwards declared to be prejudiced, exaggerated, or altogether inaccurate, and, while they did much to promote the anti-slavery movement, they also added to the bitterness already existing between the missionaries and the Boers.]

— JULY. **The Magna Charta of the Natives.**—Following on the publication of Dr. Philip's book, and on the instigation of the home authorities, Gen. Bourke issues his "Fiftieth Ordinance," declaring that "all Hottentots or other free persons of colour, lawfully residing within the Colony, are in the most full and ample manner entitled to all and every right, benefit, and privilege to which any other British subjects are entitled." [This famous Ordinance became known as "The Magna Charta of the Natives."]

**1829.** Missionary labours of the Paris Evangelical Society begin in South Africa.

**1830. FEB. The regulation of slavery.**—An Order in Council passed by the home Government which provides, among other things, that slave-owners in Cape Colony shall keep a "punishment record book," heavy penalties being imposed on them for unjust treatment of slaves. Great indignation caused among the Boers.

1834. DEC. **A Kaffir invasion.**—Twelve thousand armed Kaffirs cross the Fish River and invade Cape Colony, ravaging Grahamstown and the surrounding country. Within one week 50 Europeans are killed, 800 farmhouses are entirely or partially destroyed, and 5,700 horses, 112,000 cattle, and 162,000 sheep taken. [See 1835, March.]

— 1. **Slave emancipation.**—The Slave Emancipation Act, prohibiting all slavery throughout the British Empire, comes into force. [Number of slaves in Cape Colony, 36,000. Value assessed by Commissioners at three millions sterling. Out of the twenty millions awarded by the British nation as compensation to the slave-owners, the Government allotted one and a quarter millions to Cape Colony. This money was payable in London, but most of it got into the hands of speculators, who bought up the claims at a low price from the farmers, with the result that many of the latter got practically no compensation at all. The slaves were to serve a four years' apprenticeship from Dec. 1, 1834, to Dec. 1, 1838, and were then to be finally set free. When the latter date arrived the emancipated slaves refused to go on working on the farms for wages, although some of the establishments had previously had from 40 to 80 hands, and although the farmers were then in the midst of their wheat harvest. The undoubted ruin of many of the Boers was thus completed.]

— 11. **The beginning of the Treaty States.**—Treaty between Cape Colony and Andries Waterboer, chief of the Griquas. Waterboer becomes the

“friend and ally” of the Colony, which recognises his territory as extending along the Orange River from Kheis to Ramah, and agrees, among other things, to allow him an annual subsidy of £100, and to supply him with 200 muskets and a quantity of ammunition. [The Griquas originally sprang from an intermingling of Boers and Basuto women, and were at first known as the “Hottentot Bastards,” the name “Griquas” being given to them by the missionary John Campbell, about 1813. They settled to the north of Orange River in 1803, were there joined by other bands of natives, and by 1812 formed a community of 3,000 persons. The Colonial authorities then sent a Government agent to them, and thereupon various sections split off, and went to live elsewhere. Waterboer became the chief of those who remained. For creation of further Treaty States see 1843, Oct. 5 (a).]

**1835. In advance of the Great Trek.**—(a) A party of 50 trekkers under Carel Trichardt, and another of equal size under Johannes Rensburg, leave Cape Colony. [They joined at the Colonial boundary, and went together to Zoutpansberg, where they halted. Rensburg’s party afterwards moved on, and all but two children were massacred by the Matabele. Trichardt’s party proceeded to Delagoa Bay, where fever carried off all but 25, who were subsequently taken on by a schooner to Natal.]

– (b) The first Legislative Council for Cape Colony constituted, one half being Government officers, and the other half being nominated by the Governor and approved by the Crown. [See 1853.]



- MARCH. **Kaffirs driven back.**—As the result of the third Kaffir War the marauders are driven beyond the Keiskamma.

- MAY 10. **Colonial extensions and home scruples.**—As the outcome of the further war with the Kaffirs, Sir Benjamin D'Urban (Governor since 1834) issues a proclamation extending the boundary of the Colony eastward from the Keiskamma to the Kei. [His object was to secure a strategic frontier against the Bantu hordes. Part of the acquired territory was peopled by the friendly tribe of Fingos. In October Sir Benjamin extended the north-eastern boundary to near the present town of Aliwal North, on the Orange River. The new district was called "Queen Adelaide." Lord Glenelg, Secretary for the Colonies, was opposed to any extension of empire, and on Dec. 26 he wrote declaring that "the great evil of the Cape Colony consists in its magnitude." He reversed the policy of Sir Benjamin D'Urban in making the extensions, and the Colonial boundary was moved back from the Kei to Keiskamma, the land which had been taken reverting to the Kaffirs. The home disapproval of Sir Benjamin D'Urban's policy was further shown by his being recalled. For later developments, see 1847, Dec. 17.]

- JUNE 23. **The English settlement in Natal.**—The English settlers in Natal, about 35 in number, hold a meeting in one of the huts for the purpose of deciding on a site for a town. They agree at once that a town shall be built, and, going out, fix the site for the township of D'Urban. [They had no sooner begun to build this town than they sent a peti-

tion to the Governor at the Cape, asking that the country, which they had named "Victoria," should be recognised as a British colony. In this petition they said :—

"We hold in our possession extensive tracts of excellent land, a considerable portion of which has long been under cultivation. Many of us are occupied in conducting a valuable trade in hides and ivory, the former of which is almost exclusively obtained within the limits which, by mutual consent of surrounding chieftains, have been conceded to us. In consequence of the exterminating wars of Chaka, late King of the Zulus, and other causes, the whole country included between the Umzimkulu and Tugela rivers is now unoccupied by its original possessors, and, with a very few exceptions, is totally uninhabited. Numbers of natives from time to time have entered this settlement for protection, the amount of whom at this present moment cannot be less than 3,000. These all acknowledge us as their chiefs, and look to us for protection, notwithstanding which we are living in the neighbourhood of powerful native states, without the shadow of a law or a recognised authority among us."

The petition was not acceded to, but the facts stated therein are to be borne in mind in view of the attempts afterwards made by the Dutch trekkers to set up an independent Republic in Natal.]

— DEC. 26. **The Colonial Secretary defends the Kaffirs.**—Lord Glenelg writes to the Governor of Cape Colony :—

"Through a long series of years the Kaffirs had an ample justification for war; they had to resent, and endeavoured justly, though impotently, to avenge a series of encroachments; they had a perfect right to hazard the experiment, however hopelessly, of extorting by force that redress which they could

not otherwise obtain ; and the original justice is on the side of the conquered (the Kaffirs), and not of the victorious party."

[In view of the terrible devastation caused by the Kaffirs in 1834 these assertions by Lord Glenelg gave great discontent to the settlers, who concluded from them that there was no hope of their securing adequate protection from the British Government in the future. See 1836-40.]

**1836. Limits of British influence.**—(a) Under the Cape of Good Hope Punishment Act, passed this year, the Cape Colonial Courts are authorised to deal with offences committed by his Majesty's subjects in any part of South Africa south of latitude 25°, that is, up to the point where Portuguese influence begins, in Delagoa Bay. [The significance of this Act to-day consists in the evidence it affords as to what were regarded in the thirties as the limits of British influence in South Africa. The Boers who trekked were clearly and repeatedly warned that they would not get beyond these limits merely by going away from Cape Colony, so long as they remained within the territory specified.]

— **British treaty with the Matabele.**—(b) "Treaty of friendship" between Moselekatze and the Governor of the Cape. [For treaty with Lobengula, Moselekatze's son, see 1888, Feb. 11.]

**1836-40. The Great Trek.**—The Great Trek began in 1836, and continued about four years, the total number of persons taking part in it being estimated at 10,000. In the early part of 1836 the Boers in Cape Colony began to sell their farms, which were

mostly bought up by speculators at absurdly low prices, and the farmers then put their household effects and their families into their wagons, and went off in search of new homes elsewhere. The Colonial authorities desired to check the movement, but found themselves helpless in the matter, Sir Benjamin D'Urban writing, on Aug. 19, 1836, that "he could see no means of stopping the emigration except by persuasion and attention to the wants and necessities of the farmers." The various reasons which have been given for the movement may be thus summarised: Wandering habits acquired from the earliest days of the settlement, partly from discontent with the ruling powers, whether Dutch or British, and partly because of the periodical droughts, the wealth of the settlers consisting of flocks and herds with which they could wander as they pleased; the system of land tenure; the heavy financial burdens, owing to the cost of the military expeditions and the high salary of officials; the action of the missionaries in, as was alleged, usurping the authority of the civil magistrates, and making misrepresentations, and the effect of the missionary settlements in depriving the farmers of native labour, and in indirectly increasing the evils of vagrancy (already sufficiently great, owing to the native troubles); the attitude of the home Government towards the Kaffirs, as shown by Lord Glenelg's letter of Dec. 26, 1835; the bad feeling engendered by the Black Circuit [see 1811] and Slachter's Nek [see 1816, March 6]; but, above all, and as a last straw to this camel-load of grievances, the abolition of slavery, which made the farmers long more than

ever to go where they would be free from the control of the British Government. The earliest of the 1836 trekkers were a party of 200, from the Colesberg district, under Hendrik Potgieter as Chief-Commandant. They proceeded north to the Vet River, and there, close to the present town of Winburg, they arranged with the chief of the Bataung tribe, Makwana, that they should take over the whole country between the Vet and the Vaal (except a small portion which the chief reserved for his people), the Boers, in return, undertaking to protect him from the Matabele. They found it trouble enough, however, to protect themselves, for a large hunting party of the Boers, having crossed the Vaal, was attacked by the Matabele, many of them being killed. The survivors re-crossed, warned the others, and a laager was formed at Vecht Kop, between the Rhenoster and the Wilge Rivers, in Oct. 1836. This was attacked by about 5,000 Matabele, and there was a desperate fight. The Matabele were at last driven off, though they took all the live stock of the emigrants, representing 4,600 cattle and 50,000 sheep and goats. Other parties of trekkers arrived in due course, and on Dec. 2, 1836, the first emigrant Volksraad, consisting of seven members, who were to exercise supreme legislative and judicial powers, was set up. An expedition to punish the Matabele was formed, and on Jan. 17, 1837, the Boers surprised the military camp in the Valley of Mosega, north of the Vaal, killed 400 of the Matabele, drove off the remainder, burned the kraals, recovered the stolen wagons, and took 6,000 head of cattle. On their return

they established their camp at Winburg, so called from the recent victory, and the camp speedily became a village on the arrival of fresh emigrants. These, indeed, trekked in such numbers that by the end of May there were more than 1,000 wagons between the Caledon and the Vaal Rivers. Among those who took part in the Great Trek was Paul Kruger, then a boy of about twelve.

**1837. JAN. 22. The grievances of the trekkers.—**Statement published at Grahamstown by Piet Retief, one of the leaders of the Great Trek. They despaired, he said, of saving the Colony from the evils threatened by the turbulent and dishonest conduct of vagrants, who were allowed to infest it in every part. They complained of severe losses from emancipation of slaves, and vexatious laws respecting them; of the plunder and the invasion of the Colony by Kaffirs and other natives; and of “the unjustifiable odium which has been cast upon us by interested and dishonest persons under the name of religion.”

“We solemnly declare,” he further said, “that we leave this colony with a desire to lead a quieter life than we have hitherto had. . . . We quit this colony under the full assurance that the English Government has nothing more to require of us, and will allow us to govern ourselves without its interference in future. We are now leaving the fruitful land of our birth, in which we have suffered enormous losses and continual vexation, and are about to enter a strange and dangerous territory; but we go with a firm reliance on our all-seeing, just, and merciful God, whom we shall always fear and humbly endeavour to obey.”

— APRIL. **Piet Retief Commandant-General.**—Piet Retief arrives at Thaba Ntshu [to the east of the present town of Bloemfontein] as leader of a party of 108 trekkers, and is elected Commandant-General of all the emigrants, numbering over 1,000.

— NOV. **The Boers defeat Moselekatze.**—The Boers send a further expedition against Moselekatze. After a campaign lasting nine days he is so thoroughly defeated that he flies far to the north of the Limpopo. [He remained on that side of the river for the rest of his days. The territory he had devastated, and now abandoned—representing the greater part of the Transvaal, half of the present Orange Free State, and the whole of Southern Bechuanaland to the Kalahari Desert, except the part occupied by the Batlapin—was declared by the emigrant farmers to be forfeited to them.]

1838. FEB. 6. **The fate of Piet Retief.**—Massacre of Piet Retief and his party by Dingaan. [Retief had the idea of building up a great Boer Republic in South Africa. Not satisfied to remain in the new state set up on the north of the Orange River, he conducted a party across the Drakensberg Mountains into Natal. There he visited the Zulu king, and asked for a grant of land. Dingaan promised it if the trekkers would recapture some cattle taken from him by another tribe. This they did. Dingaan received them favourably on their return, gave Retief the desired grant, but caused him and his 65 companions, together with about 30 Hottentots, to be massacred at a farewell

feast which he gave them. In the meantime other trekkers, with about 1,000 wagons, had also crossed into Natal, and of these 282 white people—men, women, and children—and 252 natives, were slaughtered the same day by Dingaan's troops at a place since known as Weenen ("the place of weeping"). The remainder of the party, being warned in time, formed a laager, and successfully resisted the attack subsequently made on them.]

— APRIL 11. **Boers defeated by Zulus.**—Repulse of a Boer expedition against the Zulus. [On hearing of the massacre of Piet Retief's party, Commandants Hendrik Potgieter and Piet Uys crossed the Drakensberg, and, with a force of only 350 Boers, 17 English, and 1,500 natives, marched boldly on the Zulu capital. They were, however, led into a trap, from which they had to force their way out with the loss of 10 men, including Piet Uys, baggage, led horses, and spare ammunition. After his defeat, Hendrik Potgieter recrossed the Drakensberg with a large party, and, seceding from the other immigrants, owing to the dissensions which prevailed, set up the town of Potchefstroom on the Mooi River, with an independent government of its own. Its Volksraad claimed jurisdiction over all the territory north of the Vaal, and also over the northern half of the present Orange Free State. The withdrawal from Natal of Potgieter's party was soon more than made up by fresh arrivals of trekkers from Cape Colony.]

— 17. **Another Zulu victory.**—The Zulus defeat an expedition sent against them from Natal. [It con-



sisted of 17 Englishmen and 1,500 Natal natives. A Zulu regiment drew them across the Tugela by a pretended flight, and there they found themselves between the horns of an army 7,000 strong. There was a desperate fight, but the gallant little force was completely overpowered, their losses being 13 English and 1,000 Natal natives. The Zulus followed up their victory by invading Natal, where they remained nine days, plundering or destroying everything, the English settlers taking refuge meanwhile on a man-of-war in the bay.]

— JULY. **The emigrant farmers called back.** — Following up a previous announcement that Her Majesty's Government could not permit the creation of any "pretended independent State by any of Her Majesty's subjects, which the emigrant farmers continued to be," Sir George Napier now issues a proclamation inviting the trekkers to return to the Colony, promising them redress of well-founded grievances, stating that they could not be absolved from their allegiance as British subjects, and announcing that he should take military possession of Port Natal whenever he thought it advisable.

— NOV. **Andries Pretorius.**—Andries W. J. Pretorius arrives in Natal, and is elected Commandant-General by the emigrant farmers, who by this time have settled there in considerable numbers.

— DEC. 4. **Military occupation: the Republic of Natalia.**—A company of the 72nd Highlanders and a few gunners, 100 men altogether, arrive in the Bay of Natal under the command of Major Samuel Charters,

of the Royal Artillery, and take military possession of all the ground within two miles of high-water mark. [At this time the emigrant farmers had set up the "Republic of Natalia," with its Volksraad, and were engaged in laying out the town of Pietermaritzburg as the capital. The object of the military occupation by the British forces was stated by Sir George Napier, in a despatch dated Oct. 16, 1838, to be (1) to prevent all supplies and warlike stores from entering the port, by which means alone he could prevent aggression against the native tribes by the emigrant farmers, and thus put a stop to further bloodshed ; (2) to prevent the emigrants establishing an independent Government by being in possession of the only seaport through which gunpowder and other necessary supplies could be conveyed to them, and by which means he was sanguine enough to hope that emigration would cease. In a proclamation, however, dated Nov. 14, it was expressly stated that the occupation would be "of a temporary nature, and not partake in any degree of the nature of colonisation or annexure to the Crown."]

. - - 16. **Dingaan's Day.**—A Boer force of 460, under Pretorius, marching through Zululand to avenge the massacre of Feb. 6, is attacked in laager by the whole of Dingaan's troops, about 10,000 or 12,000 strong. After a desperate fight, lasting three hours, the Boers drive off the Zulus, killing 3,000 of them on what has since been known as Blood River. [Dingaan escaped, but his kraal was burned and his power broken. Dec. 16 has ever since been known in the Transvaal as "Dingaan's Day," and observed as a public holiday.]

1839. DEC. 24. **The Natal garrison withdrawn.**—The British troops at Port Natal re-embark for Cape-town. [Sir George Napier had in vain sought to induce the home authorities to constitute Natal a British Colony, and, as the Highlanders were expecting orders to return to Europe, he withdrew them from Natal. In a despatch to Lord John Russell, dated June 22, 1840, he wrote that “the apparently fixed determination of Her Majesty’s Government not to extend her Colonial possessions in this quarter of the world made him feel confident that the colonisation of that country would never be sanctioned.”]

1840. JAN. 4. **Natalia and Panda versus Dingaan.**—The Natalia Volksraad directs Commandant-General Pretorius to march against Dingaan, and demand from him 40,000 head of cattle as compensation for the previous losses. [This action was the result of an arrangement made by the Volksraad with Panda, Dingaan’s brother, who had risen in revolt against him, and wanted the Boers to help him to become king in Dingaan’s place. A Boer commando of 400, with from 5,000 to 6,000 of Panda’s followers, set out for Zululand. They were met by two of Dingaan’s chief officers, sent by him to arrange terms of peace, but Pretorius had them arrested and tried by court-martial for complicity in the previous massacre, and they were both executed. On Jan. 30 Panda’s followers fought a great battle with Dingaan, and inflicted on him a crushing defeat. Dingaan escaped to Swazi country, where he was soon afterwards assassinated by a Swazi. The Boers secured their 40,000 head of

cattle, and on Feb. 10 they formally installed Panda King of the Zulus, subject, however, to the paramount control of the Volksraad. Four days later Pretorius issued a proclamation taking possession in the name of the Volksraad of all the land lying between the Tugela and the Black Umvolosi River (St. Lucia Bay), going as far inland as the Drakensberg Mountains, "as also all sea coasts and harbours already discovered, or that may yet be discovered, between the mouths of the Umzimvubu and the Black Umvolosi Rivers." In this proclamation Pretorius described himself as "Commandant-General of the Right Worshipful Volksraad of the South African Society of Port Natal."]

— SEPT. 4. **Natalia seeks independence.**—The Natalia Volksraad write to Sir George Napier asking that, peace having been secured with their surrounding savage enemies, the emigrant farmers should now be declared a free and independent people. They propose to send two Commissioners to Capetown to treat for "an acknowledgment of their independence, with the rights of British subjects." [By this time the Boers in Natalia had arranged an alliance with those both in Winburg and Potchefstroom, and an "Adjunct Volksraad" had been set up for the local affairs of the settlers west of the Drakensberg, who sent representatives to the chief Volksraad at Pietermaritzburg for the discussion of matters of general interest. Wishing to temporise until he could obtain definite instructions from home, Sir George Napier replied, on Nov. 2, asking the emigrant farmers for an explicit statement as to the terms on which they would treat.]

1841. JAN. 14. **Natalia's aspirations, and the raid that checked them.**—The Volksraad of Natalia formulates its demands that the Republic should be recognised as "a free and independent State, in the closest alliance with the British Government." [While the negotiations on this subject were proceeding, a Boer commando, under Pretorius, made a raid on N'capai, chief of the Ambaca tribe in Pondoland, who was alleged to be concerned in a theft of cattle. Pretorius killed a number of the chief's people, captured 3,000 head of cattle, with 250 sheep and goats, and carried off 17 children into slavery. The Pondo chief, Faku, thereupon appealed to the Cape Government for protection, saying that the Boers had summoned him also to appear at their camp, and he had temporarily fled from his country. Afraid that this state of things would lead to native wars, and endanger British interests, Sir George Napier sent Capt. T. C. Smith, of the 27th, with a body of troops to Faku's country to preserve order.]

— JUNE 10. **The emigrant farmers still British subjects.**—Replying to the memorial from the Natalia Volksraad, Sir George Napier says he cannot enter into any negotiations or further communication with them until they acknowledge their full and entire allegiance as British subjects to the Queen, and declare their willingness to obey the lawful authority of the British Government.

— AUG. **Boers and natives.**—The Natalia Volksraad decides that the natives who have been flocking into Natal shall be settled between the Umzimvubu and

the Umtamvunu Rivers. [This country formed part of Faku's territory.]

— SEPT. 3. **Independence refused.**—Sir George Napier writes to the Boers in Natal, in accordance with instructions received, that—

“Her Majesty could not acknowledge the independence of her own subjects, but that the trade of the emigrant farmers would be placed on the same footing as that of any other British settlement upon their receiving a military force to exclude the interference with or possession of the country by any other European Power.”

— OCT. 11. **Natalia firm.**—The Natalia Volksraad inform Sir George Napier that, having asserted and maintained their independence as “Dutch South Africans” ever since they left the Cape Colony, they are fully determined not to surrender this point, and, “as Her Majesty has been pleased to reject their very fair proposals, they are inclined to remain on the same footing as before.”

— DEC. 2. **Military occupation to be resumed.**—Sir George Napier issues a proclamation in which he says there is reason to fear that warfare and bloodshed will be occasioned by the most unjust and illegal settlement of natives on Faku's territory; declares that Her Majesty will not recognise the emigrant farmers as an independent people, or permit them to form an independent State; and adds that he will resume military occupation of Port Natal without delay. [Capt. Lonsdale, of the 27th, was sent with reinforcements to Capt. Smith, who was to move on to Natal with 263 men and three guns.]

**1842. The encroachments on native territories.—**

Sir George Napier issues an order forbidding encroachments on the territories of the Griquas, Basuto, and other native tribes. [See 1843, Oct. 5 (*a*).]

— **Germany's first footing.** The Rhenish Mission establishes its first missionary station in South Africa at Bethanien, in Namaqualand. [See 1868 (*b*).]

**— FEB. 21. The solemn protest of the Natal Boers.—**

The Boers in Natalia send to Sir George Napier a solemn protest against the occupation of any part of their country by Her Majesty's troops, and declare themselves free from any responsibility for the possible consequences. [They sent both to Weenen and Potchefstroom to summon help, but reinforcements came only from the former place, Potgieter refusing to fight against the English.]

— **MARCH 24. A flattering delusion.**—Arrival at Durban of an Amsterdam ship, the *Brazilia*, sent there by some Dutch enthusiasts to establish trade with the emigrant farmers. [On board the *Brazilia* was a supercargo, named Johan Smellekamp, whose visit to Maritzburg created extraordinary excitement, a pamphlet he brought, written by his employer, leading the settlers to believe they could rely on the protection of the Netherlands. The Volksraad sent him back to Holland to negotiate a treaty, and supplied him with funds to send out clergymen and schoolmasters. The good-natured supercargo likewise drew up for them "treaties of alliance" with France, Spain, the United States, and even with China.]

— APRIL 1. **The troops for Natal.**—Capt. Smith and his force of 263 men leave the camp on the Umgazi for their march to Natal. [They arrived safely, on May 4, at their destination, a plain at the base of the Berea, half a mile from the few dwellings which represented the D'Urban of those days. The Volksraad made a written protest against his entering Natal with troops, and a deputation told him that "Natal was then under the protection of Holland."]

— MAY 23. **The gallant ride of Richard King.**—Capt. Smith makes a night attack on the Natal Boers at Congella, and is defeated, losing 50 men killed, wounded, or missing, out of the 140 who marched out of camp with him. [Smith and the remainder of his force being besieged in their camp, a brave fellow named Richard King rode off with a despatch to Grahamstown to summon help. Passing through most dangerous country, where his life was in extreme peril from the hostile natives, he reached Grahamstown on the ninth day, in a state of almost complete exhaustion. A relief force was at once despatched to Durban, and it rescued the besieged garrison on the evening of June 24, when Smith and his companions were on the verge of starvation. Those of the farmers who had come from Weenen at once recrossed the Drakensberg and returned home. The leaders of the Natal Boers retired to Pietermaritzburg.]

— JULY 14. **The Boers submit.**—Col. A. J. Cloete, in command of the British forces in Natal, goes to Maritzburg, on the invitation of the Volksraad, to



discuss the conditions of capitulation. [The Boer leaders had been deserted to such an extent by their former adherents that further opposition was useless, while something like anarchy prevailed among the different parties in the Volksraad. On July 15 a settlement was agreed to by half the members. The emigrants submitted to the authority of the Queen, but the existing institutions were to remain in force until the will of Her Majesty should be made known.]

**1843. MAY. The settlement of Natal: further trek of Boers.**—Mr. Henry Cloete arrives at Maritzburg as British Commissioner, to arrange for the permanent settlement and future administration of the district, now formally annexed as a dependency of Cape Colony. [The best men in Natal were greatly in favour of British control, the government of the country by the Volksraad, with its factions and its inability either to exercise control or to raise money for the now empty treasury, having been a complete failure. But the more turbulent among the Boers asked for time to consider Mr. Cloete's proposals, and, this being granted, they utilised it by sending to the other settlers in the Orange River territory and in the Transvaal to come to their help, saying they were being attacked by the British. They were, also, still expecting support from the King of the Netherlands, though they now soon learned that their hopes in this respect were delusive. Fourteen different parties, representing altogether 10,000 persons—but none of whom acknowledged the authority of either the Volksraad or the Adjunct Raad—flocked into Maritzburg, and when the sittings of the former body

were resumed, in August, the town was full of armed men. During the course of the renewed discussions Mr. Cloete was asked whether his authority extended to the other side of the Drakensberg, and how far Her Majesty meant to assert her supremacy over the country. He replied that the district would not extend beyond the Drakensberg, as Her Majesty's Government did not wish to exercise authority over vast extents of country where adequate protection of life and property could not be assured. The Volksraad then decided that the members from beyond the Drakensberg could not vote on the question. Mr. Cloete's settlement for Natal was formally accepted on August 8. Among its essential features were: Protection of the law to all alike, without distinction of colour, origin, language, or creed; no aggression whatever on natives living beyond the limits of the Colony; and slavery in any shape, or under any modification, to be "absolutely unlawful, as in every other portion of Her Majesty's dominions." On August 9 the whole of the farmers from the west of the Drakensberg returned home, and the attitude of some of the Boers who remained became so threatening that Mr. Cloete sent for more troops. On August 31 Major Smith arrived with 200 men and two guns, and thereupon the more turbulent among the Natal Boers trekked across the mountains, and there helped to form the communities which developed into the Orange Free State and the Transvaal.]

— OCT. 5. (a) **Creation of the Griqua and Basuto States.**—Treaties signed with Adam Kok and Moshesh for the creation of two more Protected Native States.

[It had for some years been the aspiration of the missionaries, and especially of Dr. Philip, to see a chain of Protected Native States stretching from the Pondoland of to-day to the territory now forming Griqualand West. Such a chain, they held, would help to protect Cape Colony from Boer interference, and would bring the natives better within the range of British protection. Adam Kok was chief of some 2,000 Griquas and others who had settled on the Orange River to the east of the boundaries allotted to Andries Waterboer in 1834; and to the east again of Kok's territory was that of the Basuto, under Moshesh. The treaties now made with these two chiefs were on lines almost identical with the treaty made with Waterboer. For creation of Pondo Treaty State see 1844, Nov. 23.]

— (b) **St. Lucia Bay: Boer aspirations for the sea.**  
— As the outcome of a visit paid by Mr. Cloete to Panda, the latter makes a treaty ceding St. Lucia Bay to Her Majesty. A new boundary between Natal and Zululand is also arranged. [Some of the Boers had declared that, after losing Port Natal, they would secure St. Lucia Bay in order to establish their desired outlet to the sea. It was to prevent this, and also to prevent any foreign Power from acquiring a seaport so near to the colony of Natal, that Mr. Cloete made his treaty with Panda. On this point the Secretary for the Colonies wrote on May 25, 1844:—

“I do not disapprove of the cession made by King Panda of the Bay of St. Lucia for the purposé for which it was made, namely, that of obviating the possibility of interference

on the part of any European Power or body of adventurers ; but you will distinctly state to Panda that it is not intended to form any settlement there, and you will strictly prohibit any of her Majesty's subjects from occupying any land or forming any establishment to the eastward of the Tugela."

With regard to the new frontiér, the same despatch said :—

"On the north-west many considerations combine in recommending that the great natural boundary of the Drakensberg or Quathlamba Mountains should be adhered to, and that communication with the interior beyond those mountains should be 'discouraged, and, as far as possible, prevented. Her Majesty's Government cannot be held responsible either for the conduct or for the protection of such of her subjects as may think fit to migrate into the interior.'"]

**1844. MAY 31. Natal annexed to the Cape.**—Natal is formally declared to be part of Cape Colony, under a Lieutenant-Governor, aided by an Executive Council of not more than five members, who may "recommend" laws to the Governor at the Cape, to be brought up by him before the Legislative Council there. [The Cape Legislative Council continued to frame laws for Natal until 1847.]

— NOV. 23. **The Pondo Treaty State.**—Sir Peregrine Maitland, Governor of Cape Colony, makes a treaty with Faku, Paramount Chief of the Pondos, recognising his independence in the territory lying to the south of Natal, bounded by the Umzimkulu and the Umtata Rivers, north and south, and by the Drakensberg Mountains and the sea, west and east. The treaty also provides for safe conduct of British subjects in Pondoland, extradition, and a prohibition of the landing of goods except under Colonial licence.

**1845. Another Migration.**—Extensive migration, eastward, of Boers from Potchefstroom and Winburg, with the idea of getting within easy reach of Delagoa Bay, so as to be as far removed as possible from the British Government. [In the first village they set up they were smitten with fever, and were reduced to a condition of great distress. They then selected a better site, on which they established the town of Lydenburg, so called because of their recent sufferings. Commandant Potgieter's party moved from Potchefstroom to Zoutpansberg.]

**1846. FEB. The trials and troubles of a Treaty State.**—Fresh treaty with Adam Kok signed. [When, in Oct., 1843, the treaty was signed which created the Griqua Native State, there were about 1,000 emigrant farmers settled along the Riet River, in the very heart of the territory claimed by Adam Kok, and they were greatly exasperated by the new arrangement, bitterly complaining that semi-independence should be given to natives and yet refused to Boers. "It is not our intention," they said, "to drive the coloured people from their possessions or dwellings, but it is our wish that measures should be adopted to give us also our rights." Mutual disputes and extensive seizures of cattle belonging to the Griquas speedily brought about a state of anarchy. On Jan. 13, 1845, Adam Kok appealed to the Colonial Government that a military post should be established in his country, while the burghers formed a large military camp. Skirmishing on both sides followed, and then a force of 200 British troops arrived. The Boers formally demanded that

there should be a line of demarcation set up between themselves and the Griquas, with whom they should be placed on an equality, they being recognised as a free people. This was refused, and their attitude became still more hostile. British reinforcements were secured, and the emigrant farmers were called on to surrender unconditionally to the Queen's authority. They refused, and on the night of May 3 the skirmish of Zwart Kopjes took place, the emigrants being overpowered, and possession taken of their camp. Most of those who were hostile to the British Government then moved from the Riet, the Modder, and the Lower Caledon either to Winburg or across the Vaal. By this time the districts of Potchefstroom and Winburg had been joined together under one Council and one Chief Commandant, Hendrik Potgieter. Kok's territory was divided into two districts—one exclusively for natives, and one where land could be freely leased to white men, the Griqua government of the whole being maintained under a British Resident. An agreement on this basis had been signed in June, 1845, and the treaty was now formally agreed to. From the station set up under these conditions by the British Resident, Major Warden, the town of Bloemfontein, capital of the Orange Free State, was developed. In Basutoland also, serious troubles arose between natives and Boer settlers, and Major Warden arranged a line of demarcation, which was thenceforth known as the "Warden line."]

— MARCH. **The war of the axe.**—Further Kaffir War, originating in the rescue of a native arrested for stealing

an axe (hence known as "the war of the axe"). [See 1847, Dec. 17.]

**1847. Another step forward for Natal.**—A separate Legislative Council, distinct from that at the Cape, granted to Natal. [See 1856, July 15.]

— DEC. 1. **A change of policy.**—Sir Harry Smith arrives in Capetown, from England, as Governor of the Cape and High Commissioner for South Africa. [With his arrival there began a new policy—one that was averse to leaving to the natives large tracts of country where European influence had been, or might be, exercised.]

— 17. **Abandoned boundaries re-absorbed.**—At the end of the war with the Kaffirs Sir Harry Smith proclaims an extension of the boundaries of Cape Colony, re-absorbing the province of Queen Adelaide (that is, the country between the Keiskamma and the Kei), abandoned by order of the home Government in 1835. This territory is not, however, annexed to Cape Colony, but is constituted a separate province under military rule, and is to be known as British Kaffraria. [See 1850-3.]

**1848. JAN. More trekking.**—Further extensive trek of emigrant farmers from Natal to the west of the Drakensberg, following on an unsuccessful attempt by Mr. Pretorius to prevent their ejection from farms to which they lay claim, and also because of the great influx of Zulus, to whom, they say, the British Government show more consideration than to themselves.

— FEB. 3. **The Orange River Sovereignty.**—Sir Harry Smith proclaims British authority over the communities between the Orange and the Vaal Rivers, and names the territory the “Orange River Sovereignty.” [In this way he abolished the Native Protected States on the territory in question, leaving Native Reserves to Adam Kok, Moshesh, and some minor chiefs. Sir Harry set up a form of British administration, under a British Resident, and hoped in this way to stop the anarchy and bloodshed which had previously prevailed, and to securely protect the natives against European interference. A large section of the Boers were profoundly displeased, especially because the district comprised in the Sovereignty included their Republic of Winburg. Trekking beyond the Vaal set in afresh, and Pretorius, who had been appointed Commandant-General of the Boers on both sides of the Vaal, crossed over to the Sovereignty to support the dissatisfied section, who had resolved not to submit without a struggle.]

— AUG. 29. **Battle of Boomplaats.**—Boer malcontents in the Orange River Sovereignty defeated by Sir Harry Smith at Boomplaats. [A commando under Pretorius had taken possession of Bloemfontein, ejecting the British Resident, but was now defeated in what Sir Harry Smith described as “one of the most severe skirmishes that had ever, he believed, been witnessed.” A reward of £2,000 was offered for the apprehension of Pretorius, who recrossed the Vaal, followed by a large number of the Boers. The Queen’s authority was proclaimed afresh, and the administration rearranged. Subsequently the Native Reserves were



defined. In the absence, however, of a force sufficient to maintain order, much trouble alike with Boers and with Basuto followed in the Sovereignty.]

**1849. MAY 23. The Transvaal Constitution.**—Proclamation of the “Thirty-three Articles” as the basis of a Constitution for the Transvaal. [From these Articles the Grondwet of Feb. 19, 1858, was developed.]

**1850-3. More Kaffir troubles.**—Further Kaffir War. Inhabitants ordered by Governor to rise *en masse* to defend frontier. War results in further frontier changes, Amatola district being created a Crown Reserve, and forming the inland boundary of British Kaffraria. Queenstown centre of new settlement. [See 1857.]

**1851. Dissensions in the Transvaal.**—With a view to putting an end to the divisions prevailing among the Boers from the time of their settlement in the Transvaal, the Volksraad appoints four Commandants-General, of equal rank and independent of each other. [One of the results was to make “confusion worse confounded.” For the Rustenburg and Potchefstroom districts, for instance, both Potgieter and Pretorius were appointed, and each resident was left to choose which Commandant he would serve under. See 1853, July 23.]

— **JUNE 30. British, Boers, and Basuto.**—A commando, consisting of 162 British troops, 120 farmers, and 1,500 natives, goes out against Moshesh, with whom and his people there have been constant troubles on account of their cattle-stealing propensities and their feuds with other natives. The commando seizes

a number of cattle at Viervoet, but the Basuto gather in force, retake them, and drive off the commando. [See 1852, Dec.]

— AUG. 25. **British troubles and Boer opportunities.**  
—Taking advantage of the state of anarchy produced in the Sovereignty by the persistent raids of the Basuto, especially on other natives, and also of the troubles of the Cape Government in connexion with the further Kaffir War, the Republican party in the Sovereignty send a written invitation to Pretorius to take upon himself the office of Administrator-General. [They also concluded a treaty with Moshesh, as the result of which he left the cattle of their party alone, but everywhere sought out and stole the cattle of those who were faithful to the British. Pretorius—for whose apprehension as a rebel the reward of £2,000 was still on offer—responded to the invitation to himself by writing to the British Resident that he was coming into the Sovereignty to devise measures for the restoration of peace. In October he wrote again that the emigrants beyond the Vaal had long wanted to enter into a treaty of peace with the British Government, and that he and two others had been appointed by the Council of War and the “people” to proceed to the Sovereignty to negotiate. In November two Assistant-Commissioners sent to Bloemfontein to investigate the whole situation reported in favour of the independence of the emigrants beyond the Vaal being recognised. It was, they said, the only way to secure their friendship; it would detach them from the malcontents in the Sovereignty, and would prevent their alliance with Moshesh, which that chief

desired ; while they were willing to bind themselves to the prohibition of slavery, delivery of criminals, etc. On Dec. 23 the Assistant-Commissioners announced alike their willingness to receive the deputation and the withdrawal of the sentence of outlawry against Pretorius and of the offer of a reward for his arrest ; and they further expressed the hope “that this act of grace may be a stepping-stone to a rational and permanent understanding, which may tend to promote the happiness of all, and lead to a general reconciliation.”]

— OCT. 21. **Non-Intervention.**—Lord Grey, Secretary of State for the Colonies, writes to Sir Harry Smith :—

“The ultimate abandonment of the Orange River territory must be a settled point of our policy. You will distinctly understand that any wars, however sanguinary, which may afterwards occur between different tribes and communities which will be left in a state of independence beyond the Colonial boundary are to be considered as affording no ground for your interference.”

[Sir Harry Smith was not only rebuked but recalled.]

1852. (a) **Boer designs on Bechuanaland.**—Mr. McCabe, one of the first Englishmen to cross the Kalahari Desert, is seized by the Boers, and told he cannot proceed. [Other travellers were similarly interfered with shortly after. See 1858 (a). The Boers wanted to be supreme in the territories of the Bechuana, not only on account of their rich pastures, but also because they controlled the great trade routes from Cape Colony to Central Africa, and these trade routes the Boers, in their desire to be an exclusive people, and to have nothing to do with the rest of

the world, sought to close. Bechuanaland, however, the scene of the labours of some of our most famous missionaries — Moffat, Livingstone, Mackenzie — was then being opened up by the British alike to travellers and to civilisation, and Livingstone well described the situation when he wrote: "The Boers resolved to shut up the interior, and I determined to open the country." Livingstone was then living with the Bechuana chief, Sechele, who thus wrote to Dr. Moffat respecting an attack made upon him by a Boer commando in this same year, 1852:—

"I am undone by the Boers, who attacked me though I had no guilt with them. They demanded that I should be in their kingdom, and I refused; they demanded that I should prevent the English and Griquas from passing (northwards). I replied, 'These are my friends, and I can prevent no one (of them).' They came on Saturday, and I besought them not to fight on Sunday, and they assented. They began on Monday morning at daybreak, and fired with all their might, and burned the town with fire, and scattered us. They killed sixty of my people, and captured women and children and men. . . . The house of Livingstone they plundered, taking away all his goods."

Livingstone himself wrote concerning the Boers:—

"It is difficult to conceive that men possessing the common attributes of humanity (and these Boers are by no means destitute of the better feelings of our nature) should set out, after caressing their wives and children, and proceed to shoot down men and women whose affections are as warm as their own. It was long before I could give credit to the tales of bloodshed told by native witnesses; but when I heard the Boers either bewailing or boasting the bloody scenes in which they had themselves been actors, I was compelled to admit the validity of the testimony."

When organising their expedition against Sechele the Boers called on Montsioa, chief of the Baralong branch of the Bechuana, to help them. He refused, and they then threatened him with punishment. Accordingly, when they had disposed of Sechele, they attacked Montsioa, and carried off many of his cattle. They afterwards offered him terms of peace, and these he accepted; but, distrusting the Boers, he retired for a time with a portion of his tribe to Mosheneng, leaving the remainder with his brother in Baralong country. See 1865 (*b*).]

— (*b*) A Capetown firm ships the first 11 tons of copper ore.

— JAN. 17. **Sand River Convention: Rise of the Transvaal State.**—Convention with the Transvaal emigrants, recognising their independence, signed at a farm near the Sand River. [The conference between the Assistant-Commissioners and the delegates was fixed for the 16th, when Mr. Pretorius, the late “rebel,” attended, with an escort of 300 Transvaal Boers, while the Assistant-Commissioners had with them five Lancers. The first clause of the Convention, signed the following day, was as follows:—

“The Assistant-Commissioners guarantee in the fullest manner, on the part of the British Government, to the emigrant farmers beyond the Vaal River, the right to manage their own affairs, and to govern themselves according to their own laws, without any interference on the part of the British Government, and that no encroachment shall be made by the said Government on the territory beyond to the north of the Vaal River, with the further assurance that the warmest wish of the British Government is to promote peace, free trade,

and friendly intercourse with the emigrant farmers now inhabiting, or who hereafter may inhabit, that country; it being understood that this system of non-interference is binding upon both parties."

Among the other clauses were the following:—

"Her Majesty's Assistant-Commissioners hereby disclaim all alliances whatever and with whomsoever of the coloured nations to the north of the Vaal River."

"It is agreed that no slavery is or shall be permitted or practised in the country to the north of the Vaal River by the emigrant farmers."

"Mutual facilities and liberty shall be afforded to traders and travellers on both sides of the Vaal River."

Potgieter's section of the Transvaal Boers was not represented at the conference, and at first the Zoutpansberg people accused Pretorius of having acted without authority, and of seeking to make himself supreme. But the two leaders became reconciled, and the Convention was duly ratified by the Raad.]

— **AUG. Boers and natives.**—Some of the Bapedi tribe having stolen cattle belonging to the Boers, a commando under Potgieter is sent to punish and disarm them. After capturing 5,000 head of cattle and 6,000 sheep, as the result of nine days' skirmishing, the commando proceeds to invest the mountain stronghold of the tribe, which they feel unable to take by storm. [The blockade lasted twenty days, and, as there was no water on the mountain, large numbers of men, women, and children, and thousands of cattle died from thirst. On the twentieth day there was a heavy storm, and then the Boers got tired of the expedition and

returned home, without, however, having disarmed those who were then left of the tribe.]

— DEC. **A native diplomatist.**—Incessant troubles with the Basuto having shown that an armed force is necessary to bring them to terms, Gen. Cathcart, successor to Sir Harry Smith, advances against them with troops divided into three divisions, in order to secure payment of the “fine” imposed on account of the raids committed on the farmers. One division secures 4,000 head of cattle, but altogether Gen. Cathcart gets by far the worst of the fighting, and he breaks up his camp and begins the march back. [Moshesh was wise enough, however, to see that he could not hope to permanently hold his own against the British, and he followed up his victory by sending the following letter to Gen. Cathcart:—

“THABA BOSIGO,

“*Midnight, December 29, 1852.*

“YOUR EXCELLENCY,—This day you have fought against my people and taken much cattle. As the object for which you have come is to have a compensation for Boers, I beg you will be satisfied with what you have taken. I entreat peace from you. You have shown your power, you have chastised. Let it be enough, I pray you, and let me no longer be considered an enemy of the Queen. I will try all I can to keep my people in order in the future.

“Your humble servant,

“MOSHESH.”

In the circumstances Gen. Cathcart readily responded to these overtures, and peace was made accordingly. This diplomacy on the part of Moshesh recalled a similar incident which occurred twenty years previously.

On that occasion Moshesh was attacked by the Matabele chief Moselekatze, but, though driving off his assailant successfully, he recognised his power, and sent after him a present of some of his finest cattle, with the following message :—

“Moshesh salutes you. He sends you these cattle as a recognition of your bravery, and that you may have food for yourselves on your way home. He desires to live at peace with you.”

Moselekatze never attacked him again. See 1861 (a).]

**1853. A representative constitution for Cape Colony.**—Order in Council issued for the creation of a Colonial Parliament for the Cape, consisting of a House of Assembly and a Legislative Council. [See 1872, Nov. 29.]

— MARCH. **Death of Hendrik Potgieter.**—Hendrik Potgieter dies, and is succeeded by his son, P. G. Potgieter, as Commandant-General of Zoutpansberg.

— APRIL 6. **The abandonment of the Sovereignty.**—Sir George Russell Clerk is appointed a Special Commissioner to carry out the abandonment of the Orange River Sovereignty. [Strong protests were made by a considerable section of the people against the withdrawal of British authority in the troubled conditions then prevailing, especially on account of the continued Basuto disturbances ; but Sir George Cathcart had sent word home that a permanent force of 2,000 troops would be necessary to hold the Sovereignty, and the Government concluded that they had better get rid as soon as possible of an undesired responsibility. On this point, see 1854, March 16.]



- JULY 23. **Death of Andries Pretorius.**—Andries Pretorius dies. [He was succeeded by his son, Marthinus Wessels Pretorius, as Commandant-General for Potchefstroom and Rustenburg. At this time the Republic was divided into four districts—Potchefstroom, Lydenburg, Zoutpansberg, and Rustenburg—these being then under the control of three Commandants-General, without any President. The Volksraad nominally exercised supreme authority, but each Commandant-General's district formed, in effect, a separate and distinct Republic. Coupled with the political discord that prevailed up to May 10, 1864—which see—there was a great deal of still more active ecclesiastical strife.]

1854. JAN. 30. **The abandonment policy.**—Royal proclamation signed “abandoning and renouncing all dominion and sovereignty over the Orange River Territory.”

- FEB. 23. **The Bloemfontein Convention: Rise of the Orange Free State.**—Bloemfontein Convention signed by Sir George Russell Clerk and representatives of the Orange River Territory. The first clause says :—

“Her Majesty's Special Commissioner, in entering into a Convention for finally transferring the government of the Orange River Territory to the representatives delegated by the inhabitants to receive it, guarantees on the part of Her Majesty's Government the future independence of that country and its government, and that, after the necessary preliminary arrangements for making over the same . . . shall have been completed, the inhabitants of the country shall then be free.”

It is further stated, among other things :—

“The British Government has no alliance whatever with any native chiefs or tribes to the northward of the Orange River with the exception of the Griqua chief, Captain Adam Kok.”

“The Orange River Government shall, as hitherto, permit no slavery, or trade in slaves, in their territory north of the Orange River.”

— MARCH 16. **Ministerial views in the Fifties.**—Mr. Fraser and Mr. Murray, delegates from the residents in the Orange River territory who are opposed to the abandonment, have an interview with the Duke of Newcastle, who informs them that it is now too late to discuss the question. [He added that in his opinion the Queen’s authority had already been extended too far in South Africa. It was impossible for England to supply troops to defend constantly advancing outposts, “especially as Capetown and the port of Table Bay were all she really required in South Africa.”]

**1855. Pretoria founded.**—The Transvaal Volksraad having decided to form a fifth district out of portions of Lydenburg and Rustenburg, and to lay out a town there to be called Pretoria, after the late Commandant-General, Mr. M. W. Pretorius, (elected first President, in July, 1855, of the “South African Republic,”) buys two farms, at a cost of £600, for that purpose. [On these farms the town of Pretoria was built in due course, and the seat of government was removed there in 1863, though Potchefstroom still remained the nominal capital.]

**1856. (a) Cetewayo and Umbelazi.**—Fierce battle

between Cetewayo and Umbelazi, sons of Panda, for the right to the succession. Umbelazi killed. [See 1861 (*b*).]

— (*b*) **The wool industry.**—Mohair wool industry established in Cape Colony by Mr. Adolph Mosenthal, as the result of a visit paid by him to Asia Minor to obtain Angora goats for the purpose.

— JULY 15. **Natal becomes a separate colony.**—Royal Charter granted to Natal, which becomes a distinct and separate Colony; its affairs to be administered by an Executive and Legislative Council. [See 1875 (*b*).]

**1857. East London founded.**—Germans, Swiss, and Italians, to the number of 2,000, established on the frontier as military settlers. [The land they occupied had become vacant in a singular manner. A native prophet, Umhlagaza, had told his true believers that if they destroyed their cattle and corn, and refrained from tilling the soil, their ancient heroes would return and drive the white men into the sea. His advice was followed, with the result that many thousands of natives died from hunger.]

— JAN. 5. **Mr. Kruger joins in a raid.**—Mr. M. W. Pretorius and Mr. Kruger set up a Representative Assembly at Potchefstroom, with the idea of having one Volksraad for all four communities in the Transvaal. [They also wanted the Free State to join in with them, and Mr. Pretorius went to the Free State, and tried to induce the people there to “unite” with their brethren across the Vaal. The Free Staters, however, preferred to keep to themselves, and turned a deaf ear to the

overtures made to them. Reasoning being of no avail, Mr. Pretorius decided on a raid, and in this raid Mr. Kruger played a prominent part. A commando was got together to take possession of the Free State, but on reaching the Rhenoster River the Transvaal forces found a Free State commando on the other side, waiting to receive them. For two days invaders and defenders looked at one another across the stream. Then Mr. Kruger, under a flag of truce, went over, had a talk with the Free State leaders, and arranged a pacific settlement, each side agreeing to recognise the other's status and independence. Zoutpansberg soon after threw in its lot with Potchefstroom, and in 1860 there was an agreement between the four districts to join together in forming one Republic. In the same year Mr. Pretorius suddenly resigned office as President of the Transvaal, and accepted that of President of the Orange Free State, with a view, it was believed, of making a further attempt to bring about a union between the two States. In the Transvaal there was a renewal of strife between the rival factions, and this went on until 1864, when Pretorius returned, and a final settlement was arranged by his resigning the Presidency of the Free State and taking the oaths of office as the recognised President over the whole of the Transvaal.]

**1858. (a) The road to the interior.**—Dr. Moffat is informed by the Boers that he and his fellow-missionaries must obtain their consent before proceeding to the interior. [See 1859, Feb. 23.]

—(b) **The Kaffirs again.**—As a result of further troubles the Kaffirs are driven from the country east-

ward of the Banshee River, but the Transkei—the land between Kei River and Banshee River—remains neutral territory.

— FEB. 19. **Proclamation of the Grondwet.**—Grondwet, or Fundamental Law of the Transvaal, proclaimed by the Volksraad at Rustenburg. [Among other things it declared that “the people will admit of no equality of persons of colour with the white inhabitants either in State or Church.”]

— NOV. 19. **Sir George Grey proposes confederation.**—Sir George Grey, Governor of the Cape, in a despatch to Sir E. B. Lytton, proposes a confederation of South African States.

“Experience has shown,” he writes, “that the views which led to the dismemberment of South Africa were mistaken ones. In point of fact, Her Majesty’s possessions here are of great and of yearly increasing value to the trade and commerce of Great Britain, and may be made valuable to an almost indefinite extent.”

[The proposal was rejected by the home authorities, who thought that the responsibility and cost of Great Britain becoming the paramount power in South Africa would far outweigh any possible advantages. See 1875, May 4.]

— DEC. **The Orange Free State seeks annexation.**—Having found that “independence” had brought serious anxieties, the Volksraad of the Orange Free State passes a resolution in favour of reunion, by federation or otherwise, with Cape Colony. [Sir George Grey strongly supported the scheme, but it was disapproved of by the home authorities, and fell to the ground.]

**1859. FEB. 23. Boers and British.**—Sir George Grey writes to Dr. Moffat:—

“I shall forward to Her Majesty’s Government your letter of Jan. 4, in order that they may determine what steps should be taken in case of the authorities of the Transvaal Republic persisting in molesting British subjects in their passage through the territories of independent chiefs, whilst on their way to the interior of the continent.”

[The intervention of Sir George Grey was effectual in preventing further molestation.]

– MARCH 31. **Railways introduced.**—First sod of Capetown and Wellington railway turned by Sir George Grey.

– JULY 20. **The uncertainties of British policy.**—Sir George Grey writes to the Colonial Office:—

“With regard to any necessity which might exist for my removal on the ground of not holding the same views upon essential points of policy as Her Majesty’s Government hold, I can only make the general remark that during the five years which have elapsed since I was appointed to my present office there have been at least seven Secretaries of State for the Colonial Department, each of whom held different views upon some important points of policy connected with this country.”

**1861. (a) Boers and Basuto.**—The Basuto chief, Moshesh, asks for British protection against the Boers of the Orange Free State on account of their frequent raids on what he claims to be his territory. [Prior to the Bloemfontein Convention there was a dividing line between the territories allotted to Moshesh and those occupied by the trekkers; but when the Convention was agreed to, in 1854, this line was abandoned, and Boers and Basuto were left to settle matters as best

they could between themselves. The Basuto taste for Boer cattle was, however, only surpassed by the partiality of the Boers for Basuto territory. Hence the trouble. In the earlier stages of the disputes the Basuto were more than able to hold their own, but the Orange Free State had made such vigorous efforts to assert its strength that the Basuto were at last completely overpowered. See further, 1864 (*a*).]

— (*b*) **Cetewayo comes to the front.**—Zululand being in a distracted condition, owing to the rival ambitions of Panda's sons, Mr. Theophilus Shepstone is sent there to arrange matters. In the result Cetewayo is formally recognised by king and people as the heir to the throne. [Thenceforward he acted to a great extent as regent until the death of Panda in 1873.]

**1864. (*a*) Boers and Basuto.**—The Governor of the Cape arbitrates between the Boers of the Orange Free State and the Basuto.

— (*b*) **Gold.**—Carl Mouch, a German mineralogist, discovers the Tati goldfields. [See 1869 (*a*).]

— **MAY 10. Peace in the Transvaal.**—Mr. M. W. Pretorius takes the oaths of office as President over the whole of the Transvaal, Mr. Kruger becoming Commandant-General. An end is thus put to eleven years or more of civil strife.

**1865. (*a*) Boers and Basuto.**—Fresh war between the Orange Free State Boers and the Basuto. The latter ask Sir Philip Wodehouse for protection. He declines to actively interpose, but sends a British Commissioner to the Basuto capital. [See 1866, April.]

— (b) **The Boers tax the Baralong.**—The Boers demand taxes from the Baralong (Bechuanaland), who refuse to pay [See 1868 (c).]

**1866. APRIL. Boers and Basuto.**—After further defeats by the Boers of the Orange Free State, who capture several of his strongholds and annex his best corn lands, and, being still refused active help by the British, Moshesh agrees to the Treaty of Thaba Bosigo, by which he recognises the permanent cession of a portion of Basutoland, and acknowledges himself a subject of the Orange Free State. [See 1868, Mar. 12.]

**1867. (a) South African diamonds: the story begins.**—A diamond worth £500 is found in the Hopetown district of Cape Colony. Rush of diamond seekers follows. [Somewhat later a valuable diamond was found in the possession of a Dutch farmer, who had given it along with a number of other pretty stones to his children to play with. Then a diamond of the first water, weighing  $83\frac{1}{2}$  carats, was brought to Cape Colony by a native, who sold it there. It subsequently realised £24,000, and is known as “The Star of South Africa.” See 1870 (a).]

— (b) **The south-west coast.**—The Governor of Cape Colony urges the British Government to extend the authority of the Queen over the south-west coast as far northward as  $22^{\circ}$  south latitude. [The Government declined to do this, but they took possession of 12 islands (the Guano Islands) off Angra Pequena, on the coast of Damaraland. These were annexed because they had been leased to a guano-collecting company, whose interests were thereby preserved. See 1874 (a).]



**1868. (a) The ownership of Delagoa Bay.**—President Pretorius proclaims that Delagoa Bay belongs to the Transvaal, as forming the natural outlet of that State to the sea, and he incorporates the country on each side of the Umzati down to its mouth. [By so doing he brought to a crisis a long-standing dispute as to the ownership of the Bay. Portugal claimed it on the ground that it had been discovered by Vasco da Gama in 1498, that shortly afterwards the Portuguese established a factory there, protected by 120 soldiers, and that since then they had been in occasional occupation of the territory. The Cape Dutch also built a factory there, but this was destroyed by the British in 1727, while any claims the Dutch might have would pass to the British with the transfer to them of the Cape. In 1823 Captain Owen, of the English Navy, finding that Portugal was exercising no authority south of Lorenzo Marques, obtained from the King of Tembe and the chief of the Maputa River tribe a cession of the Inyack Island, and of the whole coast south of the English River. He made no attempt to arrange for effective occupation, and on paying a second visit, in 1824, he found that possession had then been taken by the Portuguese, who expelled him, though they took no further steps to re-assert their authority over the southern shore. The question at issue remained in abeyance until the action of President Pretorius revived it. Sir Philip Wodehouse sent a man-of-war to the Bay to hoist the British flag, while the Portuguese, whose claims extended as far as 16° 30' south, negotiated with the Boers, and obtained a surrender to themselves of

the Transvaal pretensions, promising them freedom of trade in return. See Transvaal-Portuguese Treaty, 1875, Dec. 11. In 1872 Lord Kimberley decided on arbitration, notwithstanding the protests of the High Commissioner, who urged the supreme importance of the Bay to the British, and a Protocol was signed at Lisbon on Sept. 25, 1872, by which the whole question was referred to the President of the French Republic. The decision was not given until July 24, 1875, which see.]

– (b) **West coast: Britain invited to annex.**—Rhenish missionaries in Damaraland and Namaqualand appeal to British Government for protection on account of native feuds, and ask that the territory should be annexed by the British. The Prussian Government support the proposal, and suggest a joint demonstration of warships. The British Government disapprove, but promise to extend the same protection to German subjects as to British. A British Commissioner sent, and order restored for a time. [A good deal of trade was being opened up with these countries in the way of ostrich feathers and ivory, and the people had thus come under European influence, independently of the action of the German missionaries. Wars, however, were constantly arising between the Damara and the Hottentots. See 1876 (b).]

– (c) **A tax-gatherer, a commando, and a Boer repulse.**—A Boer official goes to the Baralong to collect taxes. The Baralong still refuse to pay, and a commando is sent against them, but is driven off by Montsioa's brother, Molema. [See 1870, March 27.]

— MARCH 12. “**The large folds of the flag of England.**”—The treaty made between Moshesh and the Orange Free State in April, 1866, was speedily followed by further conflicts, as the result of which the Basuto now find themselves reduced to almost the last stage of distress, and it becomes clear that nothing can save them but the help of the British. No fewer than 2,000 Basuto warriors have been either killed or captured, native homes have been broken up and crops destroyed, and the tribes are reduced to the position of starving refugees. Moshesh prays for British protection, saying, “Let me and my people rest and live under the large folds of the flag of England before I am no more.” The old chief’s prayer is granted, and a proclamation is now issued, declaring Basutoland to be British territory, and calling on the Boer commandos to leave. [The Free State protested, but compensation was given to them by the Treaty of Aliwal North, of Feb. 12, 1869, which see. Moshesh died in 1870.]

**1869. (a) Gold.**—Gold found in the districts of Lydenburg and Zoutpansberg. Diggings started. Mashona goldfields discovered by Baines and Nelson. [See 1871 (b).]

— (b) **Ostrich farming.**—Ostrich farming established in Cape Colony as a separate industry. [Previous attempts had proved a failure, owing to the wildness of the birds. Mr. Arthur Douglas now perfected his artificial incubator, and produced, thereby, successive generations of birds which became more domesticated than the original stock. In 1865 there were 80 ostriches returned as forming part of the live stock of the Colony.

In 1899 the average yearly value of the export of ostrich feathers was about £500,000.]

— FEB. 12. **The Treaty of Aliwal North.**—Treaty of Aliwal North signed by High Commissioner and representatives of the Orange Free State. It lays down the line between the Free State and Basutoland, and defines the relations in which the people on either side shall henceforward stand towards those on the other, especially with respect to the tracing and recovery of stolen horses or cattle. The portion of Basutoland lying to the west of the Caledon is finally incorporated in the Free State, and the remainder of the country is recognised by all parties as forming part of the Queen's dominions. [Under this treaty the Boers of the Orange Free State got permanent possession of a tract of rich wheat-growing country, 100 miles long by 30 broad, which has ever since been known as "The Conquered Territory," and has been the cause of frequent intrigues among the Basuto, who would gladly regain it if they could.] [See Aug., 1871.]

**1870. (a) Diamonds.**—Discovery of diamonds at Du Toit's Pan and Bulfontein. [See 1871 (a).]

— (b) Death of Moselekatze. Succeeded by Lobengula, his second son.

— MARCH 27. **Boer taxes in Bechuanaland.**—Montsioa writes to the Landdrost of Potchefstroom to complain that an official of the Transvaal Government has again demanded taxes from his people.

"If," he says, "there is not soon made an end of this lawless matter, I shall be obliged to hand it over to Her

Britannic Majesty's High Commissioner, Sir P. E. Wodehouse, with the earnest request to arbitrate between me and my most noble allies."

— **AUG. Boers wish to "dwell together" with the Baralong.**—Following on the discovery of diamonds a great meeting is held on the Transvaal border, near Mafeking, where President Pretorius and Commandant Paul Kruger invite representatives of Baralong and other tribes to "save" their territories from the British by joining them to the Transvaal. "Let us," they say, "dwell together." Montsioa (Baralong), Massow (Batlapin), and other chiefs refuse. "No one," says Montsioa, "ever spanned in an ass with an ox in one yoke." [The Boers now claimed the Baralong country on the strength of some alleged cession by the Portuguese. See, further, 1872, July 1.]

**1871. (a) The diamond fields and what they led to.**—Great find of diamonds at Old De Beers and Colesberg Kopje, two miles from Du Toit's Pan. [The rush which followed the discovery made in 1870 now became much greater, and by the end of 1871 the new town of Kimberley, which had been set up, already had a population of 10,000 diggers, mostly British, the Du Toit's Pan, the Bulfontein, the De Beers and the Kimberley (Colesberg Kopje) mines being all in a circle of three and a half miles, constituting the "diamond fields." The territory in question was claimed alike by the Griqua chief, Waterboer, and by the Orange Free State, the latter holding that it formed part of the boundary of the Orange River Sovereignty, as defined by Sir Harry Smith. The

Orange Free State at once established on the "fields" a form of government which was, however, found inadequate to maintain order. The dispute as to ownership was referred to a court of arbitration presided over by Mr. Keate, Lieutenant-Governor of Natal, who, on Oct. 17, 1871, gave his decision in favour of Waterboer, and the chief, finding himself in an awkward predicament, now offered both land and people to the Queen. On Oct. 27 a proclamation was issued accepting their allegiance, and declaring the territory British, under the name of Griqualand West. [It was erected into a Lieutenant-Governorship, under Mr. Southey, then Colonial Secretary at the Cape. For annexation to Cape, see 1877.] The Orange Free State raised a vigorous protest, and eventually the arrangement was made which is recorded under date July, 1876. In the meantime the opening of the diamond fields had great results not only from an industrial, but also from a political point of view. On the one hand the British Government at last dropped their old policy of non-expansion and non-intervention outside the limits of British territory, and on the other the Boer Governments found that their own policy of exclusiveness could not be continued in face of the great influx of foreigners, however distasteful their presence might be. As for the foreigners, their preliminary demand for roads and bridges widened out, in course of time, into still more earnest demands for political rights. The developments introduced by the finds of diamonds—to be expanded enormously by the later finds of gold—thus effected a complete revolution in the mutual

relationship of British and Boer, and brought about the first of a fresh series of differences and disputes.]

— (b) **The Transvaal begins to favour gold mines.**—First gold law passed by the Transvaal Raad, and a Mining Commissioner appointed for Zoutpansberg. [Previously to this the Transvaal Government had been distinctly hostile to gold-mining, dreading an influx of gold-seekers. See 1884 (a).]

— (c) **Mr. Cecil Rhodes.**—Mr. Cecil Rhodes goes out to South Africa.

— AUG. **Basutoland annexed to the Cape.**—Following on the proclamation of March 12, 1868, Basutoland is now annexed to Cape Colony. [Area of Basutoland, 10,300 square miles: bounded by Orange Free State, Natal, and Cape Colony. See 1879, March.]

**1872. JULY 1. Mr. Burgers: he makes a discovery.**—President Pretorius having resigned office owing to dissatisfaction felt in the Transvaal in consequence of the Keate award, he is succeeded by Mr. Burgers. [Mr. Burgers soon “discovered” that a certain Moshette, employed by a Transvaal farmer, ought to be “paramount chief” of the Baralong, and ruler over the land on the western frontier of the Transvaal, in place of Montsioa. Moshette came to the front in May, 1881. See 1873.]

— NOV. **The diamond fields.**—Reported that there are 2,500 registered claimants on the diamond fields, and 50,000 diggers and servants, of whom 35,000 are Europeans. [For a long time the average produce of diamonds was 1,000 carats a day.]

- - 29. **Responsible Government for the Cape.**—Concession to Cape Colony of “responsible government.”

**1873. Burgers and Montsioa.**—President Burgers asks Montsioa to consent to an alteration of the boundary of the Baralong country as fixed by the Keate award. Montsioa refuses. [See 1874 (b).]

- SEPT. 1. **Cetewayo becomes King.**—Shepstone, representing the Natal Government, attends the coronation of Cetewayo, on the death of Panda, and proclaims him King of Zululand. Cetewayo promises various reforms.

**1874. (a) The south-west coast.**—The Guano Islands, taken over by the British in 1867, are now formally annexed to Cape Colony. [See 1876 (b).]

- (b) **Montsioa seeks British protection.**—Montsioa, greatly troubled by Boer adventurers, makes a formal request to be taken under British protection. [See 1876, March 6.]

**1875. (a) The Delagoa Bay Railway: President Burgers' aspirations.**—President Burgers, leaving the Transvaal in charge of Acting-President Joubert, proceeds to Europe, mainly in order to promote the construction of a railway connecting the Transvaal with its “natural outlet” to the sea—Delagoa Bay. [Mr. Burgers, who was a man of far greater intelligence than those around him, and was, also, somewhat of a dreamer, had the idea not only of carrying out much-needed improvements in regard to education, finance, roads, bridges, etc., but also of seeing established a great



Dutch Republic, which, with the help of a railway to Delagoa Bay, "free from the trammels of British ports and influence," would develop the country, work up a trade with the interior, and secure a commanding influence generally. He obtained the sanction of the Volksraad to his raising a loan of £300,000 for the cost of construction, and also secured the approval of Portugal for his scheme. Leaving the Transvaal early in the year he came first to London, where the financial world declined to advance him any money at all. He then went to Holland, and secured in that country £90,000 of the amount he wanted, stipulating to pay a high rate of interest, and giving a bond on 500 Government farms. Regarding this £90,000 as enough to start with, he bought a stock of railway plant, which he duly sent out to Delagoa Bay. When it arrived, however, it had to be mortgaged so that the money could be raised to pay for the freight, and that, so far as President Burgers' scheme was concerned, was the end of the matter. Ten years later some of the railway plant he had bought still lay on the shores of the Bay. For concession to Col. M'Murdo, see 1883, Dec. 14. For return of Mr. Burgers, see 1876, April.]

— (b) **The government of Natal.**—Sir Garnet Wolseley is sent out to Natal, owing to the prevalence there of much discontent with the prevailing system of government. He promulgates a new Constitution, providing for an extension of the representative system. [See 1893, June 26.]

— MAY 4. **Lord Carnarvon's confederation scheme.**—Lord Carnarvon, Colonial Minister, having in 1868

successfully established confederation in Canada, sends a despatch to Sir H. Barkly, Governor of the Cape, reviving the question of confederation there [see 1858, Nov. 19 and Dec.], and suggesting that the Government of Cape Colony should invite representatives from Natal, the Transvaal, and the Orange Free State to confer on a scheme of confederation of all South African States. [Lord Carnarvon forwarded a detailed scheme of his own, and also nominated and sent out Mr. J. A. Froude as his representative. The newly-formed Cape Parliament jealously resented the despatch, passing a resolution that any movement in this direction should originate in South Africa, and not in England, while Mr. Froude failed to win the favourable opinion of the colonists.]

— JULY 24. **Delagoa Bay: Marshal MacMahon's award.**—Marshal MacMahon gives his award respecting the rival claims of British and Portuguese to Delagoa Bay, referred to under date 1868 (*a*). He decides that the claims of the Portuguese to the territories of Tembe and of Maputa, to the peninsula of Inyack and of the Elephants, have been duly proved and established. [He really gave to the Portuguese more than they had asked for. In anticipation, however, of an adverse decision, England had made a prior agreement with Portugal that whichever of the two disputing powers came to possess the whole or part of Delagoa Bay should give the other the right of pre-emption. On this point see further, 1891, June 11.]

— DEC. 11. **A Transvaal-Portuguese treaty.**—Treaty entered into between the S.A. Republic and Portugal

providing for the free importation of many articles into the Republic *viâ* the port of Lorenzo Marques, fixing the duties on other articles, and agreeing to the construction of a railway from Delagoa Bay inland. [The treaty was not definitely ratified until Oct. 7, 1882.]

**1876. (a) Defeat of the Boers by Secocoeni.**—Secocoeni was chief of a tribe, akin to the Basuto, living in the Lulu Mountains, on the borders of the Lydenburg district, and to the east of the Transvaal. The Boers claimed his territory on the strength of an alleged treaty with a Swazi chief, from whom, they said, they had bought the land. Secocoeni denied alike the sale and the right of the Swazis to sell, since the land had not been occupied by them. While the dispute was proceeding Secocoeni's brother, Johannes, went to live in the disputed district, and the Boers ordered him back. He refused to obey, and the Boers then appealed to Secocoeni, who replied that the land belonged to his tribe, and that Johannes had a right to be there. The chief added that he did not wish to fight, but was quite ready to do so if they preferred it. In June the Transvaal declared war, and sent a commando, 1,400 strong, aided by 1,500 Swazis, to punish the "rebels." Mr. Burgers [see April] led in person. One minor stronghold—described by Burgers as a "Kaffir Gibraltar"—was captured, and then an attack was made on Johannes' stronghold, which was taken, under circumstances of great barbarity, by the Swazis, whom the Boers left to do the fighting. So indignant were the Swazis at the cowardice of the Boers that they left the battlefield and went home. After this an

attack was made on a strong natural fortress where Secocoeni had entrenched himself. On this occasion the Boers left the bulk of the fighting to be done by about 40 English and Germans, who had gone out to help them, and Secocoeni's men offered so vigorous a defence that the Boers turned round and began to go back home. Mr. Burgers begged them to shoot him rather than allow him to suffer such a disgrace. They took no heed, however, and he was obliged to abandon the expedition. On the way back he erected a fort at Steelport. The news of the Boer repulse by Secocoeni created a great sensation, especially among the native tribes, who gained the idea that it was a much easier thing to beat the white man than they had hitherto supposed. On Sept. 4 Mr. Burgers presented to the Volksraad a scheme for establishing a border force under Capt. von Schlickmann, a Prussian adventurer, in lieu of depending on the old custom of raising troops, when wanted, by means of commandeering men to form commandos. This proposal being approved, Schlickmann was sent to Steelport. He gathered around him a number of filibusters, who were engaged on the condition that they were to have no pay or supplies but might seize whatever cattle they pleased, and he also promised to each man a farm of 2,000 acres in Secocoeni's country. With the help of Kaffir allies an intermittent war was carried on with great barbarity against Secocoeni and his people, many ruthless massacres taking place. Von Schlickmann was killed in an engagement on Nov. 17, and was followed by a certain Abel Erasmus, of whom

Lord (then Sir Garnet) Wolseley spoke in public as “a fiend in human form.” [See Dec. 18, and also 1879, Dec. 2.]

— (b) **Damaraland and Namaqualand.**—Mr. Coates Palgrave is sent as a Special Commissioner to the tribes north of the Orange River, owing to renewed complaints from the German missionaries. [He concluded treaties with the most important chiefs, who made earnest appeals to be taken under British protection, owing to the constant inter-tribal quarrels. He reported in favour of extending British protection over Damaraland, but Lord Kimberley, then Colonial Secretary, definitely forbade any such extension of British influence. See 1878, March 12.]

— MARCH 6: **Montsioa complains.**—Montsioa writes to the Lieutenant-Governor of Griqualand West:—

“MY FRIEND,—I wish to acquaint you with the doings of some people connected with the Boers. A man-servant of mine has been severely injured in the head by one of the Boer servants, which has proved fatal. Another of my people has been cruelly treated by a Boer tying a reim about his neck, and then mounting his horse and dragging him about the place. My brother Molema, who is the bearer of this, will give you full particulars.” [See 1878 (a).]

— APRIL. **The factions in the Transvaal.**—President Burgers returns to the Transvaal from Europe. [During his absence things had gone decidedly wrong. In a document which was not published until after his death he wrote:—

“The faction of unprincipled fortune-hunters, rascals, and runaways on the one hand, and the faction of the extreme

orthodox party in a certain branch of the Dutch Reform Church on the other, began to co-operate against the Government of the Republic and myself personally. . . . The Raad, filled up to a large extent with men of ill-repute, who, under the cloak of progress and favour to the Government view, obtained their seats, was too weak to cope with the skill of the conspirators, and granted leave to the acting President to carry out measures diametrically opposed to my policy. Native lands were inspected and given out to a few speculators, who held large numbers of claims to land which were destined for citizens, and so a war was prepared for me on my return from England which I could not avert.”]

– JUNE 12. **Kaffraria.**—Three large tracts of Kaffraria (Fingoland, Idutywa Reserve, and Noman’s Land) annexed to Cape Colony, on condition that the Cape Parliament provide for their government. [Act to that effect passed 1877. Territories formally incorporated Oct. 1, 1879.]

– JULY. **£90,000 compensation to the Orange Free State.**—Convention signed in London by Lord Carnarvon and President Brand, under which the Orange Free State withdraws all claims to the disputed territory forming the diamond fields of Griqualand West. [President Brand urged that the title of the chief Waterboer to the land which he ceded to us in 1871 was bad; but Lord Carnarvon declined to acknowledge either the Dutch title to it or the commission of any wrong by the English settlers. He found, however, in certain peremptory proceedings which had given offence to the Government of the Free State an excuse for offering in compensation a sum of £90,000, that amount to be paid by West Griqualand itself as the

country which benefited by the assumption of British rule there.]

— AUG. 22. **Boer treatment of natives: the prevalence of slavery.**—Khama, King of the Bamangwato, writes to Sir Henry Bulwer:—

“I write to you, Sir Henry, in order that your Queen may preserve for me my country, it being in her hands. The Boers are coming into it, and I do not like them. Their actions are cruel among us black people. We are like money; they sell us and our children. I ask Her Majesty to pity me, and to hear that which I write quickly. I wish to hear upon what conditions Her Majesty will receive me and my country and my people under her protection. I am weary with fighting. I do not like war, and I ask Her Majesty to give me peace. I am very much distressed that my people are destroyed by war, and I wish them to obtain peace. I ask Her Majesty to defend me, as she defends all her people. There are three things which distress me very much—war, selling people, and drink. All these things I shall find in the Boers, and it is these things which destroy people to make an end of them in the country. The custom of the Boers has always been to cause people to be sold, and to-day they are still selling people. Last year I saw them pass with two wagons full of people whom they had bought at the river at Tanane.”

[Abundant evidence was forthcoming from other quarters that these statements as to the slavery carried on by the Boers, whether openly or under the form of “apprenticeship,” were not exaggerated. In 1869, for instance, in a book published in Holland, a clergyman of the Dutch Church described the apprenticeship system in the Transvaal as “slavery in the fullest sense of the word.” Again, in 1875, a German missionary who had been engaged by President Burgers to report

on the condition of the natives wrote, after giving his definition of what constituted slavery: "If I am now asked to say conscientiously whether such slavery has existed since 1852, and been recognised and permitted by the Government, I must answer in the affirmative." See also President Burger's admissions, March 3, 1877.]

— SEPT. 22. **Sir Theophilus Shepstone's mission to the Transvaal.**—Lord Carnarvon writes to Sir Henry Barkly describing the war against Secocoeni, carried on under the conditions adopted by the Boers, as a menace to the peace of all South Africa, referring to the general position of affairs in the Transvaal, and adding:—

"Should the people of the Transvaal Republic consider it advisable, under all the circumstances, to invite Her Majesty's Government to undertake the government of that territory on terms consistent with the now well-known policy of Her Majesty's Government, I am of opinion that the request could not properly or prudently be declined."

[This letter was followed up by the despatch of Sir Theophilus Shepstone to the Transvaal to confer with the President on the question of confederation, discretionary power being given to him to annex the country if circumstances rendered such a course expedient. See 1877, Jan. 22.]

— — — **Boer tactics and native territories.**—Mr. Osborne, magistrate at Newcastle, writes:—

"The Boers, as they have done in other cases and are still doing, encroached by degrees on native territory, commencing by obtaining permission to graze stock upon portions of it at certain seasons of the year, followed by individual graziers



obtaining from native headmen a sort of right or licence to squat upon certain defined portions, ostensibly in order to keep other Boer squatters away from the same land. These licences, temporarily intended as friendly or neighbourly acts by unauthorised headmen, after a few seasons of occupation by the Boer are construed by him as title, and his permanent occupation ensues. Damage for trespass is levied by him from the very man from whom he obtained the right to squat, to which the natives submit out of fear of the matter reaching the ears of the paramount chief, who would, in all probability, severely punish them for opening the door to encroachment by the Boer. After a while, however, the matter comes to a crisis in consequence of the incessant disputes between the Boers and the natives; one or other of the disputants lays the case before the paramount chief, who, when hearing both parties, is literally frightened with violence and threats by the Boer into granting him the land. Upon this the usual plan followed by the Boer is at once to collect a few neighbouring Boers, including a field cornet, or even an acting provisional field cornet appointed by the field cornet or provisional cornet, the latter to represent the Government, although without instructions authorising him to act in the matter. A few cattle are collected among themselves, which the party takes to the chief, and his signature is obtained to a written document alienating to the Republican Boers a large slice of all his territory. The contents of this document are, as far as I can make out, never clearly or intelligibly explained to the chief, who signs and accepts of the cattle under the impression that it is all in settlement of hire for the grazing licences granted by his headmen. This, I have no hesitation in saying, is the usual method by which the Boers obtain what they call cessions to them of territories by native chiefs."

— Nov. **Sir Bartle Frere sent to the Cape.**—Sir Bartle Frere appointed Governor of the Cape and High Commissioner for South Africa. [Lord Carnarvon, in offering Sir Bartle Frere this appointment, wrote :—

“We have been on the edge of a great native war. . . . The war between the Transvaal Republic and the natives has had this further effect: it has rapidly ripened all South African policy. . . . It brings us near to the object and end for which I have now for two years been steadily labouring—the union of the South African Colonies and States.”

Lord Carnarvon further expressed the hope that Sir Bartle would be “the first Governor-General of the South African Dominion.” See 1877, March 31.]

— 2. **A native conspiracy against the whites.**—Sir H. Bulwer, writing to Lord Carnarvon respecting a reply from Cetewayo to a protest against a massacre of girls who had married without permission, says:—

“It is evident . . . that he (Cetewayo) . . . has not only been preparing for war, but that he has been sounding the way with a view to a combination of the native races against the white man.”

— DEC. 18. **Boer treatment of natives.**—In a despatch to Lord Carnarvon Sir Henry Barkly, High Commissioner, refers to the brutal massacres carried out by von Schlickmann, and expresses a hope that Her Majesty’s Government will be able to take such steps “as will terminate this wanton and useless bloodshed, and prevent the recurrence of the scenes of injustice, cruelty, and rapine which abundant evidence is every day forthcoming to prove have rarely ceased to disgrace the Republics beyond the Vaal ever since they first sprang into existence.”

**1877. Griqualand West.**—Griqualand West, after having been a separate province since 1871, is now annexed to the Cape. [Actual incorporation did not take place until 1880.]

— JAN. 22. **Sir T. Shepstone in Pretoria.**—Sir T. Shepstone arrives at Pretoria with an escort of only 25 Natal Mounted Police. [It was with no greater “armed force” than this that he carried out the subsequent annexation.]

— MARCH 3. **President Burgers on the position.**—President Burgers, in an address to the Transvaal Raad, says :—

“I would rather be a policeman under a strong Government than the President of such a State. It is you—you members of the Raad and the Boers—who have lost the country, who have sold your independence for a drink. You have ill-treated the natives, you have shot them down, you have sold them into slavery, and now you have to pay the penalty. . . . We should delude ourselves by entertaining the hope that matters would mend by-and-by. . . . Do you know what recently happened in Turkey? Because no civilised government was carried on there the Great Powers interfered and said, ‘Thus far and no further.’ And if this is done to an Empire, will a little Republic be excused when it misbehaves? . . . If we want justice we must be in a position to ask it with unsullied hands. . . . To-day a bill for £1,100 was laid before me for signature, but I would sooner have cut off my right hand than sign that paper, for I have not the slightest ground to expect that when that bill becomes due there will be a penny to pay it with.”

[The one-pound notes of the Transvaal State were at this time worth one shilling each.]

— 28. **The British flag preferred to anarchy.**—The Transvaal journal, *De Volksstem*, in an article on the state of the South African Republic, says :—

“About three months ago we said we would prefer con-

federation under the British flag, if the state of anarchy then threatening were to continue. We know that a good and stable government is better than anarchy any day."

— 31.—Sir Bartle Frere lands at the Cape.

— APRIL 11. **Cetewayo's intentions.**—Sir T. Shepstone sends a messenger to Cetewayo (whose forces are massed in three corps on the frontier), telling him that the Transvaal is about to be put under British Sovereignty, and warning him against interference. Cetewayo replies:—

"I thank my father Somtseu (Shepstone) for his message. I am glad that he has sent it because the Dutch have tired me out, and I intended to fight with them once, only once, and to drive them over the Vaal. You see my impis are gathered. It was to fight the Dutch I called them together. Now I will send them back to their houses."

— 12. **Annexation of the Transvaal.**—The Transvaal annexed to Great Britain. [After several months of inquiries and conferences Sir T. Shepstone became convinced that nothing short of British Sovereignty could save the Transvaal State from ruin. General disorganisation had followed the repulse of the Boers by Secocoeni, who was again threatening the country, while on the borders Cetewayo had from 30,000 to 40,000 Zulus assembled with the avowed intention of driving the Boers out of the Transvaal. There was no recognised force to resist them, and they were only held back from making an attack by the influence of the British. At the same time the Boers refused to pay the war tax for the Secocoeni expedition, and other taxes besides; the treasury was empty; salaries and

contracts remained unpaid; and the Transvaal State owed £215,000 without having any means of paying it. A petition in favour of annexation was presented bearing the signatures of 3,000 persons out of a total male population of 8,800. Sir Bartle Frere subsequently wrote to Mr. J. M. Maclean:—

“There was another reason for Shepstone’s act of annexation. Burgers had sought alliances with Continental Powers—Germans, Belgians, and Portuguese—and Shepstone had no reason to doubt that if England declined to interfere Germany would be induced to undertake the protection of the Transvaal, which would have added infinitely to our troubles in South Africa.”

The proclamation stated, among other things:—

“The Transvaal will remain a separate Government, with its own laws and legislation. It is the wish of Her Most Gracious Majesty that it shall enjoy the fullest legislative privileges compatible with the circumstances of the country and the intelligence of its people.”

Supplementary proclamations announced the assumption of office by Sir T. Shepstone as Administrator, and the repeal of the war tax. President Burgers made a formal protest against annexation in order, as he had informed Sir T. Shepstone (to whom he showed the draft), “to keep the noisy portion of the people quiet,” and he then retired to Cape Colony on a pension. Mr. Kruger took office under the British Government as a member of the Executive Council. For his dismissal from office see 1878, May 20. The annexation was speedily followed by the reorganisation of the Civil Service, the settlement of the financial troubles, the security of the Transvaal against native tribes, and

the influx of British settlers, who thought their industries and enterprise would be secure under the protection of the British flag. In carrying out the annexation Sir T. Shepstone acted independently of Sir Bartle Frere, who first heard of it on April 16, through a Cape journalist, and did not receive an official copy of the proclamation until April 30.]

— MAY 9. **A deputation from the malcontents.**—Mr. Kruger and Dr. Jorissen (State Attorney) leave Pretoria for London to protest against the annexation of the Transvaal. [It is alleged that at that time they represented only a small minority, and had some difficulty in raising the expenses of their journey. Certain it is that the majority of the Boers received the proclamation with acquiescence—for the time being—and even with a feeling of relief. Mr. Kruger and Dr. Jorissen were received by Lord Carnarvon, who informed them that the annexation was irrevocable.]

— JUNE 12. **A danger avoided by annexation.**—Sir A. Cunynghame writes from Pretoria :—

“I am convinced that had this country not been annexed it would have been ravaged by the native tribes. Forty square miles of country had been overrun by natives, and every house burned, just before the annexation.”

— AUG. **The last of the Kaffir Wars.**—Outbreak of the ninth and last Kaffir War, owing to a revolt of natives. [See 1878, May.]

— — 10. **Permissive confederation.**—An Act “for the union under one Government of such of the South African Colonies and States as may agree thereto” is passed by the Imperial Parliament.

— DEC. 19. **Supremacy up to Delagoa Bay.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Lord Carnarvon :—

“Your object is not conquest, but simply supremacy up to Delagoa Bay. This will have to be asserted some day, and the assertion will not become easier by delay. The trial of strength will be forced on you, and neither justice nor humanity will be served by postponing the trial if we start with a good cause.”

1878. (a) **South Bechuanaland.**—Military occupation of South Bechuanaland (Griqualand West) by Col. Warren and Col. William Owen Lanyon. [Subsequently Warren and Lanyon, with the help of troops and volunteers from Kimberley, were able to check various attempts made by Boers to get possession of farms in Bechuanaland. See Dec.]

— (b) **The Colonial movement in Germany.**—German African Society of Berlin formed. [See 1882, Dec. 6.]

— JAN. **The Transvaal annexation.**—A meeting of burghers in the Transvaal appoints a “People’s Committee” to promote the agitation against the annexation.

— 24. **The danger of the Zulu situation.**—Lord Carnarvon, in a despatch to Sir Bartle Frere, says :—

“It seems certain that the Zulu King has derived from his messengers the unfortunate idea that the Kaffirs are able to cope with the Colony on more than equal terms, and this belief has, as was inevitable, produced a very threatening change in his language and conduct towards the Transvaal Government. It is only too probable that a savage chief, such as Cetewayo, supported by a powerful army, already excited by the recent successes of a neighbouring tribe over the late Government of the Transvaal, may now become fired with the idea of victory over Her Majesty’s forces, and that a deliberate attempt upon Her Majesty’s territories may ensue.

Should this unfortunately happen you must understand that at whatever sacrifice it is imperatively necessary that Her Majesty's forces in Natal and the Transvaal must be reinforced by the immediate despatch of the military and naval contingents now operating in the Cape, or such portion of them as may be required. This is necessary not only for the safety of the Transvaal, for the defence of which Her Majesty's Government are immediately concerned, but also in the interest of the Cape, since a defeat of the Zulu King would act more powerfully than any other means in disheartening the native races of South Africa."

— **FEB. Lord Carnarvon resigns.**—Lord Carnarvon resigns office owing to a difference of views between himself and his colleagues on the Eastern Question. [His confederation scheme accordingly fell to the ground.]

— **The Zululand boundary question.**—Sir Henry Bulwer, Lieutenant-Governor of Natal, arranges that the Zululand boundary question shall be submitted to the arbitration of three Commissioners, the final award to be given by Sir Bartle Frere. [This dispute between the Zulus and the Boers dated from 1861. In accordance with their usual tactics the Boers had overflowed their boundaries, and had by this time established 75 farms of the usual dimensions—about 6,000 acres each—and a number of homesteads on land which the Zulus claimed to be theirs. The Zulus made reprisals, repeatedly attacking the Boers, burning their farmhouses, seizing or destroying their crops, and causing the settlers and their families to run for their lives. At the beginning of 1878 a still more serious collision appeared to be imminent, and it was only averted by Sir Henry Bulwer's action. See July (b).]



— MARCH 12. **Great Britain takes over Walfisch Bay.**—Influenced by the activity of German missionaries and traders in Damaraland and Namaqualand, by the report of Mr. Coates Palgrave [see 1876 (*b*)], and by the disordered condition of the country, Sir Bartle Frere urges the British Government to annex. [His fears as to German designs were regarded as groundless; but the Government consented to annex Walfisch Bay, with a strip of territory 40 miles long, north and south, and extending 20 miles inland.]

— 18. **A general rising of Kaffirdom feared.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Mr. R. W. Herbert:—

“I do not think I ever expressed to you my conviction, which has been gradually and unwillingly growing, that Shepstone and others of experience in the country were right as to the existence of a wish among the great chiefs to make this (Kaffir) war a general and simultaneous rising of Kaffirdom against white civilisation.”

[On this point, see also Dec. 12.]

— APRIL 4. **Another Boer deputation to England.**—A meeting of “the people” at Doornfontein [now a suburb of Johannesburg] resolves to send a second deputation to London. [Mr. Kruger and Mr. Piet Joubert were sent, with Mr. Bok as secretary. They were informed by Sir M. Hicks-Beach, in a letter dated Aug. 6, that it was “impossible, for many reasons . . . that the Queen’s sovereignty should now be withdrawn.”]

— APRIL 30. **Secocoeni and Cetewayo.**—Sir T. Shepstone writes:—

"I find that Secocoeni acts as a kind of lieutenant to Cetewayo. He receives directions from the Zulu King, and these directions are by Secocoeni issued to the various Basuto tribes in the Transvaal."

— MAY. **The Transkei annexed.**—Kaffir tribes subdued. The Transkei territory annexed by British.

— — 20. **Mr. Kruger dismissed from office.**—By direction of Sir T. Shepstone, the following letter is sent to Mr. Kruger:—

"OFFICE OF SECRETARY TO GOVERNMENT,  
"TRANSVAAL, *May 20, 1878.*

"SIR,—I am directed by the Administrator to inform you that, in accordance with the provisions of the law under which you were appointed a member of the Executive Council, your tenure of that office expired on the 4th Nov. last.

"After the line of conduct which you have thought it right to pursue with regard to this Government, and especially after the undisguised notification which you have given it in the letter addressed by you and Mr. Joubert, of the 14th inst., to the Administrator, that you intend to persevere in an agitation that threatens, as you yourself believe, danger and ruin to the country, his Excellency sees no advantage, and does not feel justified, in suspending the operation of the law any longer for the purpose of enabling you to retain that office and the pay attached to it. I am also under the necessity of calling your attention to the fact that on the 8th January last, when you personally applied to me at Pretoria to be paid the arrear salary due to you, which, according to law, was at the rate of £200 a year, you demanded salary at the rate of £300, on the ground that you had been promised that increased rate before your first departure for Europe; and that, relying upon your word, and influenced by your urgency, as well as by a desire to avoid the appearance even of any breach of faith on the part

of his Excellency, who was then absent from the seat of Government, I paid you at this increased rate, without further question, and without authority. I now find that the only ground you had for preferring this claim was a private conversation with the Administrator, in which you complained that your salary was inadequate, whereupon he told you that he wished to retain your services to aid the new Government, and that he would recommend that you should be retained permanently as a member of the Executive Council, to be called up for your advice when required, at a salary of £300 per annum, instead of the £200 to which you then were entitled.

"The reply you made was that you were a representative man, and must act according to the feelings of those you represented, but that when you were relieved from those trammels you could act according to your own convictions. You neither accepted nor rejected the proposal, and nothing has since passed to renew or confirm it; therefore you were not justified in making the demand you did, and I have made myself responsible for the payment to you without authority of the amount in excess of your usual salary.

"I have, etc.,

"(Signed) M. OSBORN,

*"Secretary to Government."*

"S. J. P. KRUGER, Esquire."

The letter of May 14, referred to above, was one handed to Sir T. Shepstone by Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert an hour or so before their departure for England. In it they indicated their intention not to abide by the result of their mission, should it be adverse to the object they had in view (the annulling of the annexation), and, in declaring that the annexation had failed to bring about the promised success and welfare, they described the state of things as "threatening danger and general ruin," which, in their opinion, could be averted only "by justice being done to our country and people." In for-

warding this letter to Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, Sir T. Shepstone said: "The only act which from their point of view would be a measure of justice sufficient to prevent the calamities to which they allude is the re-transfer of the Transvaal to them." In his reply to Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert Sir T. Shepstone wrote:—

"With regard to the danger and ruin to which you point as certain to follow the refusal of Her Majesty's Government to withdraw from the Transvaal, I feel that I should not be doing my duty . . . if I hesitated for a moment to express to you my deliberate opinion, formed upon sufficient knowledge and observation, that upon the conduct of you two gentlemen will the momentous issue you describe entirely depend. No two men in the Transvaal have done more to make the general ruin you deprecate possible than you have, and upon no shoulders will the responsibility of averting it press so heavily as upon yours."

— JULY. (a) **The troubles with Zululand.**—One of the wives of a Zulu chief flies in a wounded condition from Zululand twelve miles into Natal for protection, but is followed two days later by a considerable force of Zulus, who threaten the police if they interfere, carry off the woman to Zulu territory, and there kill her. [A similar outrage followed soon after. Sir H. Bulwer demanded that the leaders should be surrendered for trial in Natal. Cetewayo offered £50 instead.]

— (b) **The Zululand boundary question.**—The three Commissioners appointed by Sir Henry Bulwer in February to deal with the boundary question report greatly in favour of the claims of the Zulus. Sir Bartle Frere, who is to make the final award, takes time to consider the subject, in order to personally inquire into it. [See Nov. 16.]

— AUG. 10. **Sir B. Frere on Britain's responsibility.**—  
Sir Bartle Frere writes to Lord Carnarvon:—

“You must be master, as representative of the sole sovereign Power, up to the Portuguese frontier, on both the east and west coasts. There is no escaping from the responsibility which has been already incurred ever since the English flag was planted on the castle here. All our real difficulties have arisen, and still arise, from attempting to evade or shift this responsibility. The attempt always ends in, and can have no other result than that of, substituting the gun-runner and canteen-keeper for the English magistrate. . . . I have heard of no difficulty in managing and civilising native tribes in South Africa which I cannot trace to some neglect or attempt to evade the clear responsibilities of sovereignty. Nothing is easier, as far as I can see, than to govern the natives here, if you act as master; but if you abdicate the sovereign position the abdication has always to be heavily paid for in both blood and treasure.”

— SEPT. **More troubles.**—A Swazi chief, living in Zululand, makes raids into the Transvaal with the connivance of Cetewayo, and kills men, women, and children in a kraal of friendly natives in the Lüneberg settlement. [The settlers received notice from Cetewayo to quit, and they declared they must do so unless they were protected. Two companies of the 90th Regiment were sent, and order was restored.]

— 4. **The Pondos.**—Under a Proclamation of Sir Bartle Frere Umqikela ceases to be recognised as paramount chief of the Pondos, and the sovereignty of the port and estuary of St. John's River is vested in Her Majesty's Government. [See 1884, Sept. (a).]

— 12. **A Zulu hunting party.**—Sir H. Bulwer

informs Sir Bartle Frere that there are two large Zulu regiments close to the Tugela, "ostensibly for the purpose of hunting."

— 30. **Slumbering on a volcano.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Sir M. Hicks-Beach from Pietermaritzburg:—

"The people here seem to be slumbering on a volcano, and I much fear you will not be able to send out the reinforcements we have asked for in time to prevent an explosion. . . . The Zulus are now quite out of hand, and the maintenance of peace depends on their forbearance."

Following up his support of previous requests by Lord Chelmsford for reinforcements he says:—

"The position of affairs is far more critical than I expected. . . . We shall want all the troops asked for."

— OCT. 28. **What peace depended on.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Lord Carnarvon:—

"The continued preservation of peace depends . . . simply on the caprice of an ignorant and bloodthirsty despot, with an organised force of at least 40,000 armed men at his absolute command."

— NOV. 4. **The despatch of troops.**—Sir Bartle Frere receives the following telegram, dated Oct. 12, from Sir M. Hicks-Beach:—

"It may be possible to send out some special service officers, but I feel some doubts whether more troops can be spared. As the hostilities in the Cape Colony are now at an end, would not the police and volunteers be sufficient for the Cape, and might not all the Imperial troops be sent to Natal and Transvaal, with the exception of a small garrison for Capetown?"

[This telegram was followed by a despatch, dated Oct. 17, which stated:—

“Her Majesty’s Government are not prepared to comply with a request for a reinforcement of troops. All the information that has hitherto reached them with respect to the position of affairs in Zululand appears to them to justify a confident hope that by the exercise of prudence, and by meeting the Zulus in a spirit of forbearance and reasonable compromise, it will be possible to avert the very serious evil of a war with Cetewayo.”]

— 5. **The urgency of the situation.**—Sir Bartle Frere replies to Sir M. Hicks-Beach that “troops asked for urgently needed to prevent war of races. . . . On other side of fordable river Zulu army, 40,000 to 60,000 strong, well armed, unconquered, insolent, burning to clear out white men.”

— 16. **The Zululand boundary question.**—Sir H. Bulwer requests Cetewayo to send messengers to Tugela Drift to receive the award on the Zululand boundary question. [See Dec. 11.]

— 29. **The Zulu military system.**—Sir H. Bulwer writes :—

“In requiring the abolition of the Zulu military system as it is the High Commissioner strikes at the root of all that is most vicious and most dangerous in the Zulu country. Nothing but the eventual complete abolition of that system will, I think, suffice, though the effectual attainment of this object will require some management and careful attention on our part for some time. The abolition, as proposed by the High Commissioner, of the rule of compulsory celibacy, and of the system of centralised regiments, will go far towards attaining the object. The whole regimental system, in fact, must be broken up, and the abolition of the great military kraals must also be an essential condition.”

— DEC. **Montsioa and British protection.**—Montsioa

appeals to Col. Warren to be taken under British protection. [Mr. Christopher Bethell, formerly a lieutenant in the Intelligence Department of the force under Cols. Lanyon and Warren, was sent to Montsioa. For murder of Bethell by Boers, see 1884, June.] [For Montsioa, see further, 1881, May.]

— 11. **Sir Bartle Frere's ultimatum.**—Sir Bartle Frere gives his award on the Zulu boundary question. [Although not fully concurring in the decision of the three Commissioners, he decided that he could not do otherwise than enforce it; but in view of the threatening aspects of the Zulu position, in regard to the fears of a general rising, he delivered, also, an ultimatum requiring, among other things, the surrender of the persons guilty of the raids on Natal territory in July, and the reform of the Zulu military system, all warriors being permitted to marry as soon as they arrive at man's estate, without being first required to "wash their spears" in the blood of an enemy. He allowed a period of 30 days for a reply to this ultimatum.]

— 12. **The "common purpose" of the Kaffirs.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Sir Michael Hicks-Beach:—

"Wherever there has been disturbance and resistance to authority of Government between the Limpopo and the westernmost limits of Kaffir population, there we have found unmistakable evidence of a 'common purpose and a general understanding' to contest the supremacy of the Europeans."

— 13. **The Cabinet deprecate a Zulu war.**—Sir Bartle Frere receives a despatch from Sir<sup>i</sup> M. Hicks-Beach, dated Nov. 7, in which, replying to renewed applications from Sir Bartle and Lord Chelmsford for



troops, Sir Michael writes that the decision of the Cabinet remains the same, and they deprecate a Zulu war in addition to the other greater and too possible troubles.

— 14. **Reinforcements to be sent out.**—Sir Bartle Frere receives a telegram from Sir M. Hicks-Beach, dated Nov. 21, stating that reinforcements are to be sent out, but are to be used for defensive purposes, “to afford such protection as may be necessary at this juncture to the lives and property of the colonists.”

— 23. **Sir Bartle Frere’s hopes.**—Sir Bartle Frere writes to Sir M. Hicks-Beach :—

“I hope the preparations already made will secure our own borders from any inroad in force, and, if the time allowed passes without complete acceptance of our terms, I hope that Lord Chelmsford’s plan for moving in three converging columns on the royal kraal will go far to paralyse opposition and to secure success with as little sacrifice of life as possible.”

**1879. JAN. Col. Lanyon.**—Col. Lanyon succeeds Sir T. Shepstone as Administrator of the Transvaal.

— 9. **The reinforcements for Lord Chelmsford.**—Arrival of reinforcements, increasing the available force to about 5,500 British troops, with volunteers and natives in addition.

— 10. **The British enter Zululand.**—The 30 days allowed to Cetewayo to reply to the British ultimatum having expired without his answering, Lord Chelmsford’s force crosses the Tugela into Zululand. [The force crossed in four divisions, with the idea of converging upon the King’s kraal at Ulundi.]

— 13. **Nothing short of independence.**—A meeting of Boers at Potchefstroom, to hear the report of the delegates, Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert, on their return from England, passes a resolution declaring they will be satisfied with nothing short of independence. [Joubert was deputed to see Sir Bartle Frere and arrange a conference. Sir Bartle told him the annexation was irrevocable, but he desired to see to what extent the promised system of local self-government could be arranged. He also called on the Boers to help the British, in their common interests, to crush the Zulu power. For conference, see April 10 and 12.]

— 22. (a) **The disaster at Isandhlwana.**—Lord Chelmsford advances at daybreak with the main body of his division, leaving in camp at Isandhlwana, on the left bank of the Buffalo River, four companies of the 24th, with a native contingent, under Cols. Durnford and Pulleine. During Lord Chelmsford's absence a party sent out from the camp to observe comes in contact with some Zulus and fires on them. This leads to the camp being attacked by a body of from 15,000 to 20,000 Zulus, and, though the defenders fight with great bravery, killing 2,000 of their assailants, they are overpowered, only a few escaping. British loss over 800.

— (b) **The defence of Rorke's Drift.**—Later in the day 4,000 Zulus make an attack on Rorke's Drift, a station on the Tugela River in charge of Lieuts. Chard and Bromhead, who, with 80 men of the 24th Regiment, have been left to guard the commissariat stores, and a hospital in which are 30 or 40 sufferers. [On hearing from some refugees of what had already happened at

Isandhlwana, and that the Zulus might be expected soon, the little garrison hastily constructed a rampart of rice bags and biscuit boxes, and, when the enemy arrived, managed to keep them at bay. On no fewer than six occasions when the Zulus got inside the entrenchments the British drove them back at the point of the bayonet. After fighting all night, and setting fire to the hospital, the Zulus withdrew at dawn, leaving behind them 350 dead. The British loss was 17 killed and 10 wounded.]

— — — (c) **Col. Pearson's engagement.**—Col. Pearson's column has an engagement south of Eshowe with 5,000 Zulus, whom he drives off, the enemy's position being carried by the Naval Brigade. Gatling guns do great execution. Sending a portion of his column back to the base, Col. Pearson with 1,200 men occupies an entrenched position round the mission buildings at Eshowe. [For relief of garrison, see April 1.]

— — 23. **Sir Bartle Frere rebuked.**—In a despatch to Sir Bartle Frere written on this date Sir M. Hicks-Beach says:—

“I regret that the necessity for immediate action should have appeared to you so imperative as to preclude you from incurring the delay which would have been involved in consulting Her Majesty's Government upon a subject of so much importance as the terms which Cetewayo should be required to accept, before those terms were actually presented to the Zulu King.”

[This despatch, of course, was written before the news of the disaster at Isandhlwana had reached England, the first intimation not being received until Feb. 11.]

— FEB.—MARCH. **Reinforcements: Prince Louis Napoleon goes out.**—Reinforcements sent from England to Zululand. Prince Louis Napoleon proceeds with them as a “guest.” [See June 1.]

— MARCH. **Troubles in Basutoland.**—Moirosi, a chief in south-east Basutoland, causes trouble first by forcibly rescuing his son, who has been arrested for horse-stealing, and then openly defying the Colonial authorities. [Severe fighting followed; but in December Moirosi’s stronghold was captured by the Colonial forces, and the chief himself was killed. After this much discontent arose among the Basuto generally with respect to the division of Moirosi’s territory. See 1880, April (b).]

— 12. **The Intombi River disaster.**—Force of 4,000 Zulus surprises the British camp at Intombi River. Out of 60 of our men only 15 escape.

— 13. **Sir Bartle Frere censured.**—Sir M. Hicks-Beach says, in the course of a despatch censuring Sir Bartle Frere:—

“Her Majesty’s Government cannot but think that the forces at your disposal were adequate to protect Natal from any serious Zulu inroad, and to provide for any other emergency that could have arisen during the interval necessary for consulting Her Majesty’s Government upon the terms that Cetewayo should be called upon to accept; and they have been unable to find in the documents you have placed before them that evidence of urgent necessity for immediate action which alone could justify you in taking, without their full knowledge and sanction, a course almost certain to result in a war, which, as I had previously impressed upon you, every effort should have been used to avoid.”

On the other hand, however, Sir Bartle is appealed to not to take the despatch in the light of a recall, and is told that Her Majesty's Government

"have no desire to withdraw, in the present crisis of affairs, the confidence hitherto reposed in you, the continuance of which is now more than ever needed to conduct our difficulties in South Africa to a successful termination."

[Responding to this and other appeals, and not wishing to further complicate a critical situation, Sir Bartle Frere refrained from resigning.]

— 28. **Capture of Hlobani.**—Col. Wood captures Hlobani, the mountain stronghold of Umbelini, the most powerful of Cetewayo's chiefs; but on the way back he is surrounded by Zulus, and loses 70 men and 7 officers. [Among the officers lost was the Boer captain, Piet Uys, an honourable exception to the Boers generally, who otherwise rendered us no help in the overthrow of the common enemy.]

— 29. **The victory of Kambula Kop.**—Twenty thousand Zulus attack Col. Wood's entrenched camp at Kambula Kop. A desperate fight follows, lasting four hours, but the Zulus are completely routed.

— APRIL 1. **The victory of Gingilhovo.**—Ten thousand Zulus attack a column under Lord Chelmsford at Gingilhovo. They advance with great daring, but, after a struggle lasting only an hour, they are broken and fly, pursued by the native contingent and cavalry. Our loss trifling; that of the Zulus 1,500 killed. [The same night a party of the British marched to Eshowe, and relieved Col. Pearson and his garrison. Already, towards the end of March, Col. Pearson had signalled that their provisions would soon be exhausted.]

- - 4. **British troubles and Boer opportunities.**—Writing from Sanderton, in the Transvaal, Sir Bartle Frere says :—

“All accounts from Pretoria represent that the great body of the Boer population is still under the belief that the Zulus are more than a match for us, that our difficulties are more than we can surmount, and that the present is a favourable opportunity for demanding their independence.”

- - 10. **Sir Bartle Frere meets the Boers.**—Sir Bartle Frere, on his way to Pretoria to pay a promised visit to the Transvaal, goes alone and unarmed to a camp of 1,500 or 1,600 Boers assembled in support of their claim to independence. He tells them they may look forward to having complete freedom, and ultimately local self-government, under the British Crown, and he calls on them, in the meantime, to join in the common cause against the Zulus.

- - 12. **The conference at Erasmus Farm.**—Sir Bartle Frere has a conference with the Boer committee at Erasmus Farm. They declare that the “people,” in whose name they claim to speak, will be satisfied with nothing less than absolute independence of the British Crown. Frere tells them the annexation is irrevocable, but promises to forward a memorial, which, however, he declines to support. [At Pretoria, where the conferences were resumed, and where Sir Bartle remained until the end of April, he reiterated his statement that a restoration of independence was quite out of the question. He drew up, however, with the leaders, a scheme for the future government of the Transvaal, which, it was agreed, should be recommended to Her Majesty’s Government.]

— 20. **The neglect to fulfil promises.**—Sir Bartle Frere, writing from Pretoria to Lady Frere, says:—

“It was clear to me that it was not the annexation so much as the neglect to fulfil the promises and the expectations held out by Shepstone when he took over the government that has stirred up the great mass of the Boers, and given a handle to the agitators.”

— JUNE. **Sir Garnet Wolseley to go out.**—Announced that Sir Garnet Wolseley will succeed Sir H. Bulwer as Governor of Natal, Lord Chelmsford as commander of the forces against Cetewayo, and, “for a time,” will replace Sir Bartle Frere as High Commissioner of the Transvaal, Natal, and all the eastern portion of South Africa. [This new arrangement left Sir Bartle Frere only his position as Governor of the Cape, and High Commissioner over a limited area. Acting from a sense of duty, he again submitted.]

— 1. **Prince Louis Napoleon killed.**—Prince Louis Napoleon is killed in Zululand, while out with a reconnaissance party.

— 28. **Sir Garnet Wolseley at the Cape.**—Sir Garnet Wolseley arrives at Capetown. [He proceeded to Natal, but reached there too late to take part in the overthrow of Cetewayo.]

— JULY 4. **Final collapse of the Zulu power.**—Decisive defeat of the Zulus by the British force under Lord Chelmsford, comprising 4,062 Europeans and 1,103 natives, with 12 guns and two Gatlings. Ulundi and other military kraals captured and burned. Zulus lose about 1,000 out of 20,000 engaged. Our loss

10 killed and 51 wounded. [The cost of the expedition which thus at last effectually wiped out the Zulu power was £5,000,000.]

— AUG. 28. **Cetewayo a prisoner.**—Cetewayo, who escaped from the British at the Battle of Ulundi, is now captured. [He was taken by sea to Capetown, and was first kept in confinement at the Castle, and then put on a farm specially bought for him, making himself, after a time, quite comfortable there. Subsequently he was allowed to pay a visit to England, where he saw the Queen, and he was restored to a portion of his old power on Jan. 29, 1883, which see.]

— SEPT. 1. **Sir Garnet Wolseley's thirteen districts.**—Her Majesty's Government being opposed to annexation, Sir Garnet Wolseley meets the Zulu chiefs, and arranges with them for the division of Zululand into 13 different districts, each to be under a separate chief, who is to recognise British supremacy, and receive a Resident as the "eyes and ears" of the British Government; such Resident, however, though giving advice to the chief, is not to exercise any authority over him. The celibate military system to be abolished. No white men to be encouraged to settle in Zululand. Missionaries previously forced to leave not to return unless invited by the chiefs. [For the breakdown of this arrangement, see 1883, Jan. 29.]

— NOV. **The Midlothian campaign.**—Mr. Gladstone begins his first Midlothian campaign. [During the course of this campaign he strongly denounced the annexation of the Transvaal, carried out by the



Beaconsfield Government. Speaking at Dalkeith on Nov. 26, he said :—

“In the Transvaal we have chosen most unwisely—I am tempted to say insanely—to put ourselves in the strange predicament of the free subjects of a monarch going to coerce the free subjects of a Republic, and compel them to accept a citizenship which they decline and refuse.”

In another speech he said :—

“What is the meaning of adding places like Cyprus, and places like the country of the Boers in South Africa, to the British Empire? And, moreover, I would say this, that if those acquisitions were as valuable as they are valueless, I would repudiate them, because they were obtained by means dishonourable to the character of our country.”

These and the other references by Mr. Gladstone to South Africa were translated into Dutch and printed on slips of paper, which were circulated throughout the Transvaal, with the result that a general expectation was raised among the Boers that, on the restoration of Mr. Gladstone to power, the annexation would be revoked. See 1880, March 18.]

— 3. **Sir Garnet Wolseley ventures on prophecy.**—The *Times* correspondent in the Transvaal, writing from Heidelberg, Sept. 23, gives an account of Sir Garnet Wolseley’s tour through the country, and says :—

“Sir Garnet Wolseley on every occasion upon which he has spoken publicly has been careful to state decisively that no undoing of the annexation is possible; or, as he put it twice, the sun would forget to shine in heaven, and the Vaal River would run backwards, sooner than the British flag would cease to fly over Transvaal territory.”

-- 29. **The paramountcy of Britain.**—Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, in a despatch to Sir Garnet Wolseley, says:—

“The power and authority of England have for many years been paramount there [the Transvaal], and neither by the Sand River Convention of 1852, nor at any other time, did Her Majesty’s Government surrender the right and duty of requiring that the Transvaal should be governed with a view to the common safety of the various European communities. It has long been obvious that the largest measure of freedom which the country could enjoy consistently with the fulfilment of this condition would have been found in that union which seems to have been contemplated by the Volksraad in 1877, when, by a resolution quoted and adopted in the memorial of the Boer Committee, dated April 16, and again in their memorandum of the same date, they declared their readiness to enter into a closer union with Her Majesty’s Colonies for the benefit of South Africa.”

— DEC. 2. **Operations against Secocoeni.**—Secocoeni surrenders to a British force, and is taken to Pretoria. [Since his defeat of the Boers in 1876, Secocoeni, although at one time friendly disposed towards the British, had become a steadily increasing source of danger. He considered himself more powerful than the whites, and, as mentioned in Sir T. Shepstone’s despatch of April 30, 1878, acted as a kind of lieutenant to Cetewayo. He had gathered around him a following of about 4,000 or 5,000 men, who included the most lawless characters of the country round about, and with these he took up his position in a range of mountains difficult of access, near Lydenburg, and was only kept in check by a costly border force. From that point he made frequent raids on territory occupied by British

subjects. In November, 1878, Col. Rowlands attempted to capture his mountain fortress, but his efforts were frustrated by drought, fever, and horse sickness. Subsequently Sir Garnet Wolseley sent a conciliatory message to the chief, inviting him to submit on the following terms: (1) Recognition of British sovereignty; (2) peaceable behaviour in future; and (3) payment of a fine of 2,000 cattle previously imposed—plus 500 for recent offences. On his rejecting these terms, an expedition of Imperial and Transvaal troops, supplemented by 5,000 Swazis, was organised against him, and the operations of this force, under the command of Lieut.-Col. (now Lieut.-Gen. Sir) Baker Russell, were a complete success. Secocoeni's town was captured on Nov. 28, and though Secocoeni himself escaped, for the time being, he surrendered, as already stated, on Dec. 2. The border force was then disbanded, and thenceforward there was peace in a district where a state of terror had previously prevailed. In connexion with these operations a leading Boer in the Lydenburg district, named Erasmus, was arrested, Secocoeni having declared that Erasmus had instigated him to resist to the last.]

-- 9. **The expedition to Ferguson's.**—The Landdrost of Pretoria, with a troop of King's Dragoon Guards, proceeds to Ferguson's, 20 miles towards Heidelberg, to arrest a Boer, named Storm, who has offered armed resistance to a sheriff seeking to levy an execution on him for disregarding a judgment in a civil action. Storm is not found, but 30 head of cattle are seized in execution of judgment.

- - 10-15. **The foreshadowing of revolt.**—A meeting of Boers at Wonderfontein passes the following resolutions: (1) That the Vice-President, Mr. Paul Kruger, should become State President; (2) that he should convene the Volksraad; (3) that the people will never submit to the British; (4) that the people desire to shed their blood for independence; (5) that they demand that their Government should be reinstated; (6) that the committee should take steps to recover their independence; (7) that if the committee know a better method they should submit it to the people. [Definite action on these resolutions was postponed. If by April the British Government did not abandon its claims to domination, the "people" were to meet again. In connexion with this meeting, Mr. Bok, the Secretary, and Mr. Pretorius, the President, were arrested for treason, but the charges against them were not proceeded with.]

- - 17. **Sir Garnet Wolseley is again prophetic.**—Speaking at a public banquet in Pretoria, Sir Garnet Wolseley says:—

"I am told that these men (the Boers) are told to keep on agitating in this way, for a change of Government in England may give them again the order of things. Nothing can show greater ignorance of English politics than such an idea. I tell you there is no Government—Whig or Tory, Liberal, Conservative, or Radical—who would dare, under any circumstances, to give back this country. They would not dare, because the English people would not allow it."

- - 25. Direct telegraphic communication between the Cape and Great Britain completed.

1880. De Beers Mining Co., Ltd., formed, absorbing a number of small companies at work in the diamond-fields. [See 1888, March 13.]

— MARCH 18. **The Boers thank Mr. Gladstone.**—At a meeting of the Boer Committee, at Wonderfontein, a letter is drawn up thanking Mr. Gladstone for his sympathy, and expressing the hope that, in the event of a change of Government in Great Britain, “the injustice done to the Transvaal may find redress.”

— APRIL. (a) **Mr. Gladstone returns to power.**—As the result of the General Election Mr. Gladstone is returned to power, and the hopes of the Boers rise high.

— (b) **A revolt in Basutoland.**—Proclamation issued by the Cape Colony authorities applying to Basutoland the Cape Peace Preservation Act of 1878, which provides for a general disarmament of the natives. [When, in August, 1871, Basutoland was annexed to Cape Colony, the latter had not been granted responsible government, and Basutoland was, therefore, administered by the Imperial Government direct. On the concession of responsible government to the Cape, in 1872, Basutoland came under the administration of the Cape, and the attempt now made to bring about disarmament led to a general revolt against the Cape authorities. This revolt soon spread to other native territories east and south. After much fighting between the Colonial troops and the Basuto the leading chiefs sought for an arrangement, and the matters in dispute were, in 1881, left to the arbitration of the High Commissioner, Sir Hercules Robinson, but the Basuto still remained dissatisfied. [See 1882, Dec.]

— 12. **British sovereignty over the Transvaal.**—

In reply to telegrams from Sir Bartle Frere, asking if any change of policy was contemplated in regard to the Transvaal or to the Confederation question, and saying that abandonment might entail civil war, Lord Kimberley, Colonial Secretary, telegraphs that the sovereignty of the Queen over the Transvaal cannot be relinquished, and that he hopes for the speedy accomplishment of Confederation, which would allow of free institutions being given to the Transvaal and Natal, as already proposed.

— 27. **The policy of the new Government.**—Sir Bartle Frere again telegraphs to the Colonial Secretary, asking if the Government contemplate any change of policy in regard to either the Transvaal or Confederation. [Lord Kimberley replied that the matter required consideration.]

— MAY.—Sir Garnet Wolseley leaves South Africa.

— 6. **A Boer conspiracy against Confederation.**—Sir Bartle Frere telegraphs to Lord Kimberley that Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert have arrived at Capetown as emissaries of the Boer malcontents, and that he begs for an early announcement respecting the Transvaal. [The Boer delegates were urging the Cape Dutch not to support the Confederation movement until the grievances of the Transvaal had been removed. On this point see June 29.]

— 12. **Decision of the Government.**—Lord Kimberley telegraphs to Sir Bartle Frere: "Under no circumstances can the Queen's authority over the Transvaal be relinquished."

— 20. **Queen's supremacy.**—The Queen's Speech contains the following passage :—

“In maintaining my supremacy over the Transvaal, with its diversified population, I desire both to make provision for the security of the indigenous races and to extend to the European settlers institutions based on large and liberal principles of self-government.”

— 24. **Lord Kimberley says we cannot relinquish the Transvaal.**—Lord Kimberley, in the House of Lords, says :—

“Looking as they must to South Africa as a whole, the Government, after a careful consideration of the question, came to the conclusion that we could not relinquish the Transvaal. Nothing could be more unfortunate than uncertainty in respect to such a matter.”

— JUNE. **Sir George Colley.**—Sir George Colley arrives at the Cape as Governor of Natal and High Commissioner of South-East Africa, in succession to Sir Garnet Wolseley.

— 3. **The agitation against Sir Bartle Frere.**—A memorial to the following effect, and bearing about 90 signatures, is presented to Mr. Gladstone :—

“We, the undersigned, members of the Liberal party, respectfully submit that as there is a strong feeling throughout the country in favour of the recall of Sir Bartle Frere, it would greatly conduce to the unity of the party, and relieve many members from the charge of breaking their pledges to their constituents, if that step were taken.”

[See Aug. 1.]

— 8. **Mr. Gladstone explains.**—Mr. Gladstone writes to Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert :—

“It is undoubtedly matter for much regret that it should, since the annexation, have appeared that so large a number of the population of Dutch origin in the Transvaal are opposed to the annexation of that territory, but it is impossible to consider that question as if it were presented for the first time. We have to deal with a state of things which has existed for a considerable period, during which obligations have been contracted, especially, though not exclusively, towards the native population, which cannot be set aside. Looking to all the circumstances, both of the Transvaal and the rest of South Africa, and to the necessity of preventing a renewal of disorders which might lead to disastrous consequences, not only to the Transvaal but to the whole of South Africa, our judgment is that the Queen cannot be advised to relinquish her sovereignty over the Transvaal; but, consistently with the maintenance of that sovereignty, we desire that the white inhabitants of the Transvaal should, without prejudice to the rest of the population, enjoy the fullest liberty to manage their own affairs. We believe that this liberty may be most easily and promptly conceded to the Transvaal as a member of a South African Confederation.”

— 29. **Confederation shelved.**—It is decided in the Cape Parliament to allow the Confederation proposals to drop. [Mr. Kruger and Mr. Joubert claimed the credit for this as the result of the little conspiracy they started in May.]

— AUG. **British responsibility on the West Coast.**—War breaks out between the Damaras and the Namaquas owing to some cattle thefts. [The British Resident who had been sent there was recalled, and when the German missionaries and traders appealed to the Cape for protection it was refused. They then appealed to Prince Bismarck, who, in turn, was informed by the



British Government that they repudiated all responsibility in Damaraland and Namaqualand except as regards Walfisch Bay. See 1881, Aug.]

— 1. **Recall of Sir Bartle Frere.**—Lord Kimberley telegraphs to Sir Bartle Frere:—

“There has been so much divergence between your views and those of Her Majesty’s present Government on South African affairs, that . . . they have with regret come to the conclusion that Her Majesty should be advised to replace you by another Governor.”

— OCT. 15. **Griqualand West.**—The Province of Griqualand West is formally incorporated with Cape Colony.

— NOV. 11. **Bezuidenhout’s wagon.**—Much energy shown recently by the British authorities in enforcing payment of taxes, and even long accumulating arrears, so as to allow of the finances of the country being put on a better financial basis. The sheriff seizes a wagon belonging to a farmer named Bezuidenhout, in respect to a non-payment of £27 5s. alleged to be due from him, and an attempt is now made to dispose of it by auction. About 100 Boers surround the sheriff, and capture the wagon. [A force sent by the British Administrator to arrest the ringleaders was met by 300 or 400 armed Boers, but, on the intervention of Mr. Kruger, it was arranged that no further action should be taken until after an approaching national meeting.]

— 26. **The situation becoming grave.**—In view of the signs of coming troubles, Sir Owen Lanyon telegraphs to Sir George Colley asking that the 58th

Regiment should be sent back to the Transvaal. [Sir George replied that the regiment could ill be spared, because of a daily expected outbreak of Pondos, and a possible appeal for help from the Cape Government, whose hands were at that moment full of the Basuto War. To this war a body of 300 trained volunteers had recently been sent from the Transvaal.]

— DEC. 5. **President Brand intervenes.**—The President of the Orange Free State telegraphs to Sir George Strahan suggesting that a Commissioner should be sent up to the Transvaal from the Cape, with a view of ascertaining the true state of opinion with regard to the annexation, and he mentions Sir Henry de Villiers, Chief Justice of Cape Colony. [The suggestion was not adopted.]

— — 13. **Declaration of independence.**—After an animated discussion, lasting five days, a national meeting at Paardekraal resolves to again proclaim the South African Republic, to restore the Volksraad, and to appoint a Triumvirate, consisting of Messrs. Kruger, Joubert, and Pretorius, to administer the government provisionally. On the meeting breaking up the burghers proceed to Heidelberg, which they constitute their headquarters.

— — 16. **Outbreak of hostilities.**—Formal proclamation of restored Republic made to-day (Dingaan's Day). Letter sent to the British Administrator, offering him 48 hours in which to give up the keys of the Government offices and retire. The country is also declared to be in a state of siege and under the provisions of

martial law. [Sir Owen Lanyon had also issued a proclamation, warning the “misguided men” that they would be punished according to law, and had telegraphed to Sir George Colley to send all available troops to the Transvaal. He now further ordered that no armed body of Boers was to be allowed to come within a mile of any town in the province of Pretoria.] Hostilities begin at Potchefstroom. Small force sent to drive off a party of Boers who insult the garrison, and shots are exchanged, one Boer being wounded. Siege of Potchefstroom begins, garrison being completely isolated.

— 20. **The Bronkhorst Spruit Massacre.**—Main body of a detachment of British troops, some 250 strong (mostly 94th Regiment), summoned by Sir Owen Lanyon to proceed from Lydenburg to Pretoria, reach a stream known as Bronkhorst Spruit, 30 miles from Pretoria, and suddenly find a large force of Boers lying in ambush in a ravine, and under cover of some trees. Col. Anstruther, in charge of the British, halts his men, and sends word to the rear of the column—which is half a mile long—to hurry up. At the same moment a Boer messenger advances with a flag of truce, and presents a note signed by Piet Joubert and other Boer leaders, desiring Col. Anstruther to encamp where he is until an answer has been received to the ultimatum sent to Sir Owen Lanyon. An advance beyond the stream will be considered a declaration of war, and two minutes are allowed to Col. Anstruther to decide. These two minutes were utilised by the Boers in ambush in taking aim at the troops, and especially at

the officers, for scarcely had the messenger started to take back Col. Anstruther's reply—that he would march on to Pretoria—than the Boers opened fire, and within ten minutes 120 of the British had been either killed or wounded. The survivors, surrounded and outnumbered, waved their handkerchiefs to denote submission, and surrendered. [Capt. Elliott and Capt. Lambert, two of those who were taken prisoners on this occasion, were offered their liberty on promising to leave the Transvaal for the Free State, and not to take further part in the war. They agreed, and were escorted to a part of the Vaal where there was no ford. The Boers in charge made them attempt to cross, but the current was so strong that the horses lost their footing, and the vehicle in which the two officers were seated was washed back against a rock 10 or 15 yards from the Transvaal shore. The escort thereupon fired a volley at the carriage, killing Capt. Elliott on the spot. Capt. Lambert was wounded, but succeeded in swimming to the other side.]

**1881. Boer helpers in native troubles.**—Quarrels between Mankoroane, claiming to be paramount chief of the Batlapin (Bechuanaland), and Massow, another Batlapin chief, who disputes his claims, and demands a considerable portion of his country. Massow secures the aid of a large number of Boer freebooters (and also that of 1,000 Basutos) by promising them grants of land from the territories he hopes to secure. Mankoroane also obtains the help of a number of white volunteers. [In the course of the war that followed, Mankoroane's volunteers offered to go over to the side

of Massow if the latter would guarantee that they should share in the allotment of "farms." Massow agreed, with the result that Mankoroane was soon hard pressed, while before long the Boer volunteers had reduced Massow to a mere puppet. The Boer intriguers on the west were none the less active because of the war with Britain which was proceeding on the east. For troubles with another chief, see May. For dispute between Mankoroane and Massow, see further 1882, Feb.]

— JAN. **Sir Hercules Robinson.**—Sir Hercules Robinson, the new Governor and High Commissioner, arrives at Capetown.

— 7. **The vindication of the Queen's authority.**—The Queen's Speech on the opening of Parliament says:—

"A rising in the Transvaal has recently imposed upon me the duty of taking military measures with a view to the prompt vindication of my authority, and has of necessity, for the time, set aside any plan for securing to the European settlers that full control over their own local affairs, without prejudice to the interests of the natives, which I had been desirous to confer."

— 10. **Peace negotiations.**—Lord Kimberley writes to the London agent of the President of the Orange Free State:—

"Inform President Brand Her Majesty's Government have received with pleasure this expression of his friendly sentiments" [contained in a telegram urging peace] "and, provided only the Boers will desist from their armed opposition to the Queen's authority, Her Majesty's Government do not despair of making a satisfactory arrangement."

[Negotiations on this basis followed.]

— 23. **Sir George Colley calls on the Boers to disperse.**—Sir George Colley writes to Gen. Joubert:—

“To save the innocent lives that must be sacrificed and the blood that must be uselessly spilt in a prolonged resistance, I call upon you to dismiss your followers; and when the forces now in arms against Her Majesty have dispersed I shall be prepared to give attention to, and to forward to Her Majesty’s Government for consideration, any representations which are made to me of grievances under which any of Her Majesty’s subjects in the Transvaal believe themselves to suffer.”

— 24. **Colley’s advance: his reasons.**—Boers having invaded Natal, and taken up position at Laing’s Nek, Sir George Colley fears further delay may involve loss of Pretoria and Potchefstroom, and he advances with about 1,400 men, without waiting for expected reinforcements. Having crossed the Ingogo valley, he encamps four miles from Laing’s Nek. [In a letter to Sir Garnet Wolseley, dated Newcastle, Jan. 17, Sir George Colley had written:—

“Our weak point is Potchefstroom. . . . Unless I can in some way relieve the pressure on Potchefstroom before the middle of next month I am afraid that the garrison and its guns must fall into the Boers’ hands. This it is which has determined me to move on without awaiting further reinforcements.”]

— 27. (a) **What the Boers will accept.**—General Joubert replies to Sir George Colley’s letter of Jan. 23:

“We would be satisfied with the cancellation of the annexation and the restoration of the South African Republic under the patronage of Her Majesty the Queen, so that once a year the British flag shall be hoisted, all in strict accordance with the claim of our first proclamation. If your Excellency perseveres to refuse this we shall submit ourselves to our destiny.”

— — — (b) **What the British offer.**—Sir Hercules Robinson telegraphs to President Brand:—

“I am directed to inform your Honour that if avowed opposition ceased forthwith Her Majesty’s Government would thereupon endeavour to frame such a scheme as they believe would satisfy all enlightened friends of the Transvaal.”

— — 28. **British defeat at Laing’s Nek.**—Sir George Colley, with a mounted force, and men of the 58th Regiment, tries to capture the Boer position at Laing’s Nek. About 2,000 Boers in strong position behind rocks. British defeated. Of the mounted men 17 are killed or wounded; of the 58th there are 73 killed and 100 wounded.

— FEB. 8. (a) **The engagement on Ingogo River.**—The post having been stopped by a strong Boer patrol, Gen. Colley, with five companies of the 60th, two field and two mountain guns, and a detachment of cavalry, moves from camp to restore communications. He is attacked by the Boers, and, though he drives them off, suffers heavy loss, 6 officers and 62 men being killed, and 64 wounded.

— — — (b) **Peace negotiations.**—Lord Kimberley telegraphs to Sir George Colley that Her Majesty’s Government will give all reasonable guarantees as to the treatment of the Boers after submission if they cease from armed opposition, and that “a scheme will be framed for permanent friendly settlement.”

— — 13. **Mr. Kruger will allow the British to withdraw.**—Sir George Colley receives a letter from Mr. Kruger stating that the Boers have no wish to quarrel

with the Imperial Government, but they could not do otherwise than offer the last drop of their blood for their just rights, as every Englishmen would do. He offers to submit the claims of the Boers to a Royal Commission of Inquiry, and to allow all the besieged garrisons to withdraw, on that understanding, with all the honours of war.

— 16. **Peace negotiations.**—Lord Kimberley telegraphs to Sir George Colley :—

“Inform Kruger that if Boers will desist from armed opposition we shall be quite ready to appoint Commissioners with extensive powers, and who may develop the scheme referred to in my telegram to you of the 8th.”

— 17. **Reinforcements.**—Sir Evelyn Wood, sent out as second in command, arrives at Newcastle with reinforcements.

— 18. **Colley and the Government.**—Sir George Colley writes to Sir Garnet Wolseley :—

“I am now getting together a force with which, I think, I could command success ; but the home Government seem so anxious to terminate the contest that I am daily expecting to find ourselves negotiating with the ‘Triumvirate’ as the acknowledged rulers of a victorious people.”

— 21. **Peace negotiations.**—Sir George Colley writes to Mr. Kruger to inform him of the terms on which the British Government will negotiate peace, and says, if the proposals are accepted within 48 hours, he will agree to a suspension of hostilities.

— 23. **The Boers entrenching.**—Sir George Colley writes to Sir Garnet Wolseley : “The Boers are busy entrenching.”



— 26. **The British on Majuba Hill.**—No intimation having been received from the Boers accepting the British proposals, Sir George Colley, with 554 men, marches out from camp to seize and occupy Majuba Hill, on which the right of the Boer position rests. Three companies are stationed on the ridges to keep open the communications, and the remainder, fewer than 400 in number, climb the precipitous mountain side. [The summit was reached about 4 a.m., and the wearied troops, confident in the apparent security of their position, made no entrenchments.]

— 27. **The fight for the hill: British defeat.**—The first impulse of the Boers (who are about 1,000 strong) on seeing the summit in possession of the British, is to retreat; but they summon their courage, and a storming party of 200 ascend the opposite side of the hill by an easier route than that taken by our men. Working under cover they use their guns well, and gain the crest of the hill by midday. The British at last get into a state of panic, and rush down the hill, followed by the Boers. Our losses: 92 killed (including Sir George Colley), 134 wounded, and many taken prisoners.

— 29. **Reinforcements to be sent.**—Announced that the Government are sending Major-Gen. Sir Frederick Roberts to Natal with large reinforcements.

— MARCH 6. **An armistice arranged.**—Sir Evelyn Wood concludes an armistice with Commandant-General Joubert at Laing's Nek.

— 8. **An amnesty offered.**—Lord Kimberley tele-

graphs offering an amnesty to the Boers, and announcing the intention of Her Majesty's Government to appoint a Royal Commission to investigate the grievances complained of.

— 10. **An opportunity for a settlement.**—Mr. Gladstone states in Parliament that the Government consider an opportunity has arisen for endeavouring to bring about a settlement of the affairs of the Transvaal.

— 19. **Potchefstroom.**—Surrender of Col. Winsloe, at Potchefstroom, to the Boers. [Col. Winsloe and 250 British had been cooped up in a fort 25 yards square, and had lost more than one-third of their number in killed and wounded. The surrender took place 10 days after the Boer commander had learned that an armistice had been proclaimed.]

— 22. **The terms of peace.**—After various meetings between Sir Evelyn Wood and the Boer leaders terms of peace are ratified as follows: (1) Complete amnesty to all, including leaders, except to persons who have committed acts contrary to rules of civilised warfare. (2) Commission consisting of Sir H. Robinson, Chief Justice de Villiers, and Sir E. Wood to inquire into future settlement of the Transvaal; President Brand to be present at all proceedings. (3) Complete self-government under British suzerainty, with British Resident at Pretoria; provision to be made for (a) protection of native interests, (b) arrangement of frontier affairs, and (c) relations with Foreign Powers by the Commission. (4) Complete self-government to be granted, at latest within six months. [At the time that

peace was arranged Gen. Wood had 10,000 troops massed on the slopes of the Drakensberg, and 10,000 more British soldiers were on their way to South Africa. When Sir Frederick Roberts arrived at the Cape he found that an armistice had been completed, that peace was being arranged, and that he could return home at once. He did so, being in Capetown scarcely 48 hours.]

— MAY. **The freebooters and their tactics.**—Montsioa attacks a minor Baralong chief, Matuba (who had refused to obey an order to leave Lotlakani), and routs him, killing 100 men. Moshette [see 1872], with the aid and under the direction of Boer volunteers, declares war, in turn, against Montsioa, retreating across the Transvaal border whenever followed up, and using the Transvaal territory alike as a base of operations and for the grazing of the captured cattle. [Capt. Nourse, sent to the scene by the British Resident at Pretoria, sent word that the Boers were actively participating in the disturbances, and that ammunition in large quantities had been supplied by the Transvaal Government to the neighbouring landdrosts (magistrates). Even the "Border Guard," sent by the Transvaal Government to preserve peace, had joined the freebooters. It was further known that Gey van Pittius, leader of the Boer freebooters, had inserted advertisements in the Pretoria *Volksstem* inviting volunteers to join his standard, and promising them land in return for their services. See 1882, Jan. 22.]

— 10. **Mr. Kruger promises equality of treatment.**—At the conference at Newcastle between Her Majesty's Commissioners and the representatives of the Boers

the following conversation takes place (as afterwards officially reported):—

“*Sir Hercules Robinson*—Before annexation had British subjects complete freedom of trade throughout the Transvaal? Were they on the same footing as citizens of the Transvaal? *Mr. Kruger*—They were on the same footing as the burghers; there was not the slightest difference, in accordance with the Sand River Convention. *Sir Hercules Robinson*—I presume you will not object to that continuing? *Mr. Kruger*—No; there will be equal protection for everybody. *Sir Evelyn Wood*—And equal privileges? *Mr. Kruger*—We make no difference so far as burgher rights are concerned. There may, perhaps, be some slight difference in the case of a young person who has just come into the country.”

[With reference to this last expression Dr. Jorissen said on May 26:—

“What Mr. Kruger intended to convey was this: According to our law a new-comer has not his burgher rights immediately. The words ‘young person’ do not refer to age, but to the time of residence in the Republic. According to our old Grondwet, you had to reside a year in the country.”]

**AUG. German missionaries want protection.**—Owing to the threatening attitude of the natives, the German missionaries in Damaraland and Namaqualand beg the German Government to send a warship to protect their interests. [See Oct.]

— 3. (a) **The Pretoria Convention.**—Pretoria Convention, for the settlement of the Transvaal territory, signed. The preamble says that Her Majesty’s Commissioners “do hereby undertake and guarantee on behalf of Her Majesty that, from and after the 8th day of August, 1881, complete self-government, subject to the suzerainty of Her Majesty, her heirs and successors,

will be accorded to the inhabitants of the Transvaal territory, upon the following terms and conditions, and subject to the following reservations and limitations," these being duly set out in a series of 33 articles. Among other things Her Majesty reserves to herself the right to appoint a British Resident, who is to perform duties and functions analogous to those discharged by a *Chargé d'Affaires* and Consul-General; the right to move troops through the Transvaal State; and also "the control of the external relations of the said State, including the conclusion of treaties and the conduct of diplomatic intercourse with Foreign Powers, such intercourse to be carried on through Her Majesty's diplomatic and consular officers abroad." The Convention defines the boundaries of the "Transvaal State" (as it is called throughout), and contains the following clauses, among others:—

"The provisions of the fourth Article of the Sand River Convention are hereby reaffirmed, and no slavery or apprenticeship partaking of slavery will be tolerated by the Government of the said State."

"The Government of the Transvaal State will strictly adhere to the boundaries defined in the first Article of this Convention, and will do its utmost to prevent any of its inhabitants from making any encroachment upon lands beyond the said State."

"The independence of the Swazis within the boundary line of Swaziland, as indicated in the first Article of this Convention, will be fully recognised."

The government of the State is to be handed over on Aug. 8 to Messrs. Kruger, M. W. Pretorius, and P. J. Joubert, who are to cause a Volksraad to be convened which shall decide as to future administration,

while the three persons mentioned "agree to accept the government of the said territory, with all rights and obligations thereto appertaining." [See Oct. 25.]

— (b) **Boer promises: "Unity and Reconciliation."**

—A proclamation issued by the Transvaal Government says:—

"To all inhabitants, without exception, we promise the protection of the law and all the privileges attendant thereon. To inhabitants who are not burghers, and do not wish to become such, we notify that they have the right to report themselves to the Resident as British subjects. . . . But be it known to all that all ordinary rights of property, trade, and usages will still be accorded to everyone, burgher or not. We repeat solemnly that our motto is 'Unity and Reconciliation.'"

— **SEPT. Monopolies begin.**—At a meeting of the new Volksraad Mr. Kruger announces that, in order to place the finances of the country on a sound footing, the system of taxation will be modified and industry encouraged by the concession of certain monopolies. [The first monopolies granted were in 1882, for the manufacture of spirituous liquors and of smelting iron. So far was the system carried that by 1899 the official list of concessions, privileges, or contracts in the Transvaal included dynamite, railways, spirits, iron, sugar, wool, bricks, earthenware, paper, candles, soap, calcium carbide, oil, matches, cocoa, bottles, jam, etc.]

**OCT. British responsibility on the West Coast.**—British Foreign Office, replying to German Government, again declare that their responsibility in Namaqualand and Damaraland is limited to Walfisch Bay. [See 1883, May 1.]

— 25. **Convention ratified: a limit to Mr. Gladstone's concessions.**—The Transvaal Volksraad ratifies the Pretoria Convention, though not until after prolonged discussion, in the course of which an unsuccessful attempt was made by the Boer leaders to induce Mr. Gladstone to make some material alterations.

— Nov. **Further extensions of British territory.**—The territories known as Tembuland, Emigrant Tembuland, Bomvanaland, and Galekaland are formally proclaimed as British, and the Governor of the Cape is appointed Governor of those lands. [The Tembus of Tembuland Proper gave themselves over to the Cape Government in 1875–6, and the Bomvanas in 1878. The Emigrant Tembus formed a settlement of native British subjects. For the Galekas, see 1887. For the annexation of Tembuland, etc., to the Cape, see 1885, Aug. 26.]

1882. (a) **The franchise laws in the Transvaal.**—At the time of the Transvaal retrocession, in 1881, full franchise rights could be obtained by Uitlanders after two years' residence. In 1882 the term of residence necessary for qualification was increased to five years. This was due to a fear that the political interests of the Boers would be endangered by the large influx of Uitlanders into the gold fields. [See 1890.]

— (b) **The language question.**—Law passed by the Cape Parliament allowing speeches to be made in debate in either English or Dutch.

— (c) **The Boers and Matabeleland.**—Mr. Kruger makes an unsuccessful attempt to conclude a treaty with Lobengula, King of the Matabele.

**1882-3. The Boundary of Griqualand West.**—Commission, of which Mr. Cecil Rhodes is a member, appointed by the Cape Government to inquire as to an alleged injustice to the Batlapin tribe in the fixing of the boundaries of Griqualand West, under the Keate award. [It was found that an injustice had been done, but that certain farms taken up by the Boer filibusters could not then well be restored. Being hard pressed by the Boers, Mankoroane asked that the Cape Government should assist him in maintaining order, or, failing that, should annex his country. With a view of checking the Boer encroachments Mr. Rhodes obtained a cession of a portion of Bechuanaland from Mankoroane, but the Cape Government refused to accept it. It was then offered to the home Government, who said they would take it over if the Cape Government would pay half the cost of administration ; but this, also, the Cape Government declined to do.]

**1882. JAN. 22. Montsioa drives back the Boers.**—A force of 300 Boers and 600 natives, with three guns, crosses the Transvaal boundary and attacks Montsioa, but is driven back.

— **FEB. A Proclamation that was well meant.**—The High Commissioner issues a proclamation warning British subjects against breaches of the Foreign Enlistment Act. [Following on our retrocession of the Transvaal a number of Englishmen and loyal Dutch-speaking colonists took refuge in Bechuanaland, and were well received by both Montsioa and Mankoroane. The effect of the High Commissioner's well-meant proclamation was that these two chiefs were deprived



of the help of their British supporters, and their rivals, backed up by Boer freebooters, became more powerful than ever. For Montsioa see further, March 25. For Mankoroane see July 26.] \*

— MARCH 25. **Dividing the spoils.**—Meeting of Boer “volunteers,” who resolve to measure out the Baralong land, and occupy it, setting up the Republic of Goshen. [Montsioa warned them to leave his country. In reply to their claims he wrote :

“I do not know the Land of Goshen you write of. My people are living on the lands their fathers have lived on—the lands of the Baralong.”

— APRIL 1. **Montsioa gets a notice to quit: the Republic of Goshen.**—Van Pittius, the leader of the Boer volunteers helping Moshette, gives notice to Montsioa to remove his people within four days from certain lands desired by the Boer volunteers. [Montsioa refused, and the Boers sent their cattle into his cornfields. The Boers had by this time set up the Republic of Goshen, with a town at Rooi Grond, just outside the new Transvaal frontier, and close to Mafeking.

— - 7. **The Afrikander Bond.**—The *Free State Express* publishes a draft scheme for the organisation

\* The following table of the Bechuana tribes concerned, and their leaders, may be useful for the purpose of reference:—

Batlapin tribe	<div> <div> MANKOROANE (paramount chief) MASSOW (his rival) </div> </div>	<div> <div> Living on Batlapin country, where the Boer filibusters created the Republic of Stellaland; capital Vryburg. </div> </div>
Baralong tribe	<div> <div> MONTSIOA (chief) MOSHETTE (Boer protégé) </div> </div>	<div> <div> Living on Baralong country, where the Boer filibusters created the Republic of Goshen, with the town of Rooi Grond. </div> </div>

in that State of the Afrikaner Bond. [The movement had been started two years previously in Cape Colony, and the first Afrikaner Bond congress was held at Graaff Reinet in March, 1882. Various Free State journals, notably *De Patriot*, had advocated the formation of a similar body there, and on the *Express* giving the proposed scheme, *De Patriot* published some further articles of considerable significance as showing the motives of the promoters. Among other things, it said :—

“The Bond recognises no nationality whatever beyond that of the Afrikanders, regarding as such all of whatever origin who promise to work within the limits of this Constitution for the well-being of South Africa. The Afrikaner Bond has for its object the establishment of a South African Nationality by spreading a true love for what is really our fatherland. To attain this object we must first of all defend and promote the use of our national language (*volkstaal*), and in the second place Afrikanders must, both politically and socially, cause their power to be felt as a nation. . . . No better time for establishing the Bond could be found than the present, when the consciousness of nationality has been thoroughly aroused by the Transvaal War. The Bond must also be our preparation for a future Confederation of all the States and Colonies of South Africa. The British Government keep on talking about a Confederation under the British flag, but that will never be brought about. They can be quite certain of that. There is just one obstacle in the way of Confederation, and that is the British flag. Let them remove that, and in less than a year the Confederation would be established under the free Afrikaner flag. But so long as the English flag flies here the Afrikaner Bond must be our Confederation. After a time the British will realise that the advice given them by Froude was the best—they must just have Simon’s Bay as a naval and military station on the way

to India, and give over all the rest of South Africa to the Afrikanders. . . . Our principal weapon in the social war must be the destruction of English trade by our establishing trading companies for ourselves. . . . It is the duty of each true Afrikander not to spend anything with the English that he can avoid. . . . If an Englishman will become an Afrikander, and acknowledge our land, our people, and our language, then we will acknowledge him as our countryman, and cordially support him. . . . We must establish trading associations with Europe and the United States of America. . . . Our retail shops must be Dutch or Afrikander, and in no respect English. . . . Let us start a national bank, with branches in all towns and villages. . . . By this means we shall displace the English banks. . . . Another lesson we must learn from the war of last year is the need to start the manufacture of the munitions of war. . . . As independent States we must think of self-preservation; and for this two things are needed, (1) artillery for the Transvaal . . . (2) home-made ammunition."

These were the general lines on which the organisation was founded. It was eventually developed into one which embraces Cape Colony, the Orange Free State, and the Transvaal in its operations, each having a provincial committee, with district committees and branches, while representatives from the three provincial committees form a central Bond committee for the discussion of questions affecting general interests.]

— MAY 12. **Montsioa turns the tables.**—After giving warning, Montsioa sends a large body of men to the Boer settlement at Rooi Grond, and, for the time being, expels the freebooters.

— JULY. **Proposed joint intervention in Bechuana-land.**—British Government propose to Cape Colony,

the Transvaal, and the Orange Free State, a joint armed intervention to put down freebooting in Bechuanaland. Cape Colony alone concurs.

— 26. **Tired of fighting.**—Mankoroane and Massow are both tired of fighting, and anxious for peace. Armistice between them now secured by the “intervention” of Ferreira, a Transvaal official.

— AUG. **Mankoroane-Massow treaty of peace.**—Treaty of peace arranged between Mankoroane and Massow. Independence of each recognised, but Transvaal Government to have supreme power and be sole referee in case of disputes between chiefs, the decision of the Transvaal President being final. Boundary Commission to be appointed. Grants of land to be made to about 500 freebooters. [The land thus granted became the site of the Republic of Stellaland. Proclaimed 1883, Sept. 18. Mankoroane marked off a large piece of land for the Boer freebooters, but they wanted more. Mankoroane protested, and complained to the High Commissioner. For rejection of treaty by British Government, see Oct. 16.]

— 13. **The fate of Secocoeni.**—Secocoeni, his son, and 14 followers are killed by his relative, Mampoer, the chief put in his place by the English Government. [Under the Pretoria Convention of 1881 it was specially provided that Secocoeni and those of his followers who had been imprisoned with him should be forthwith set at liberty. They were duly released, with the result stated above. More, however, was to follow. Mampoer took refuge with the chief Mapoch, near Middleburg,

and the Boers thought this a good opportunity to pay off some old scores on Mapoch, who now openly defied them. See further, Nov. 16–17.]

— AUG.—SEPT. **Montsioa hard pressed.**—Montsioa hard pressed. Boer volunteers seek to capture Mafeking with the help of cannon. [See Oct. 24.]

— OCT. 7. **The Transvaal and Portugal.**—The treaty between the South African Republic and Portugal, entered into Dec. 11, 1875, is now revived and ratified.

— 16. **The British Government and the freebooters.**—Transvaal Government write to Massow and Mankoroane accepting their treaty of peace. [Settlement disallowed by British Resident, on the ground that the correspondence should have taken place through him. His view was supported by Lord Derby, who declared the treaty not valid or binding, as it disregarded the terms of the Pretoria Convention. The Imperial Government further intimated that they could not recognise the right of freebooters to set up a government of their own on the Transvaal borders.] [See 1883, March.] [For ultimate fate of Massow, see 1886.]

— 24. **Montsioa-Moshette treaty of peace: Boer strategy.**—Montsioa and Moshette sign a treaty of peace drawn up by Boer volunteers. [Another document put before Montsioa represented, in effect, that he would have no more to do with the British Government, that he made a complete submission to the Transvaal, that he gave the greater part of his land over to the Boers (farms of 6,000 acres were to be marked out for them within two months by a Commission), and that

no new inhabitants were to be admitted without the consent of the Transvaal Government. Montsioa refused to sign, but the Boers present put a cross beside his name for him, and afterwards declared that he had signed. The document remained inoperative, and, apart from the question of signature, Lord Derby refused to recognise the treaty, as it involved a breach of the Pretoria Convention.] [See 1883, March.]

— NOV. 16-17. **How the Boers "avenged" Secocoeni.**—Two engagements occur between the Boers and Mapoch, the chief with whom Mampoer, the murderer of Secocoeni, has taken refuge. In the first one the Boers are defeated with a loss of 300 men, and in the second their losses are so heavy that they retire to their laager. [Subsequently they renewed the attack, using dynamite in order to blow up some of the caves where the natives had taken refuge, killing a great number of people. On Nov. 30, as Mampoer still held out, the Boers attacked and captured one of the strongholds, inflicting further heavy losses. At the end of the year measures were taken on a large scale against the chiefs, and on Feb. 6, 1883, the Boers blew up Mapoch's stronghold with dynamite, using charges of 500 lbs. and 700 lbs., fired by electricity. The natives were driven out with great slaughter. In April Mapoch, being left without support or assistance, sued for peace, and expressed his readiness to pay an indemnity as well as a yearly tribute. On July 6 Mampoer surrendered, and Mapoch also surrendered shortly after, with 8,000 of his people. These remained as prisoners in the hands of the Transvaal officers, and were afterwards

“apprenticed” to various Boer farmers. Joubert and the burghers engaged in the war made a triumphal entry into Pretoria on Aug. 1. Mampoer, Niabel, his chief commander, and Mapoch were brought to trial for murder and rebellion. Mapoch and Niabel were sentenced to imprisonment for life, and Mampoer was hanged.]

— DEC. **Peace in Basutoland.**—Announced that peace has at last been restored in Basutoland. [See 1883, Feb.]

— 6. **The Colonial movement in Germany.**—A German Colonial Society formed at Frankfort. [Within one year the membership of this society amounted to over 3,000.]

1883. JAN. 29. **Cetewayo: his reinstatement and overthrow.**—Cetewayo is reinstated King over a portion of his former territories by Sir Theophilus Shepstone. [The arrangement made on Sept. 1, 1879, for the division of Zululand into 13 districts, with a separate chief for each, had led to a state of anarchy there, as the chiefs were incessantly quarrelling either with one another or with their own people. Early in 1882 Sir H. Bulwer made inquiries and reported to the home Government, who decided to reinstate Cetewayo over a portion of his old domains. This was now done, he being allotted the whole country north of the Umhlatusi River, with the exception of a small territory in the north-east, which Usibepu, one of the 13 chiefs set up by Sir Garnet Wolseley, was allowed to retain. The territory between the Umhlatusi and Natal was constituted a Native Reserve. Cetewayo’s enemies, headed

by Usibepu, speedily attacked him, and, after a struggle lasting some months, they overthrew him, and destroyed his kraal. He then took refuge in the Native Reserve, where he died Feb. 8, 1884. Soon after his death his followers, the Usutus, called in some Boer adventurers to help them in an attack on Usibepu, who was then himself overthrown. See 1884, May 21.]

— FEB. **Self-government for Basutoland.**—Self-government is now granted to Basutoland, following on the announcement made in December that peace prevails there. [It was not long, however, before the chiefs began to exercise their new powers by fighting among themselves. See Nov. 29.]

— MARCH. **The attitude of the British.**—British Government inform Mankoroane that they will not interfere by force on his behalf, but should he or Montsioa be driven from the country the Government will consider what pecuniary or other help can be given to them in the Colony. [See Sept. 18.]

— MAY 1. **Germany's first colony.**—Expedition sent out by Herr Lüderitz, a Bremen merchant, obtains from the chief, Joseph Frederick, a concession of land on the Bay of Angra Pequena (10 miles of coast, with extension inland of about 24 miles), with all rights of supremacy.

— 2. German flag raised on coast of Damaraland over Germany's first colony. Astonishment and alarm of British and Colonial authorities. [Germany had been absolutely straightforward in the matter. She had repeatedly inquired as to the extent of British responsibility along the coast, had invited British action



in regard to the protection of German missionaries and German interests, and had acted with an almost punctilious scruple for diplomatic propriety. The British and the Colonial Governments, however, had alike shirked any increase of expense or responsibility in regard to the territories in question, and the last despatch from the home authorities to the Cape, asking what the latter was disposed to do, was pigeon-holed for six months or so, and completely overlooked—owing to a change of Ministry—until the news came that possession had been taken by Germany, whom, at that time, no one had even dreamed of as a possible competitor for Colonial possessions. See further, Nov. 3.]

— 9. **Mr. Kruger President.**—Mr. Kruger elected President of the Transvaal, the voting being: Kruger, 3,431; Joubert, 1,171.

— SEPT. 18. **The Stellaland Republic proclaimed.**—The Boer freebooters settled on the land granted to them by Mankoroane in August, 1882, proclaim the Republic of Stellaland, with Vryburg as the capital.

— OCT. **Mankoroane's protest.**—Mankoroane informs the Acting High Commissioner of his intention to proceed to London to beg Her Majesty's Government to favourably consider his case. [Was told not to; the Government would give full attention to matters presented to them through the Acting High Commissioner at the Cape. Mankoroane went to Capetown. In a statement he made he said the Boers had taunted him with trusting in a Government which would do nothing for his protection. "The Boers," he also said, "who

fought for Massow are now occupying my ploughing, grazing, and hunting grounds. . . . The Boers are preventing my people from ploughing by threats.”]

— Nov. The “United States of Stellaland.”—British Resident in Bechuanaland reports to the High Commissioner a Boer proposal to join Stellaland and Goshen as “The United States of Stellaland.” [A proclamation to that effect was issued, but the scheme was not carried out. Van Pittius remained supreme in Goshen and van Niekirk in Stellaland.] [See 1884, Feb.]

— 3. England too late.—English warship, the *Boadicea*, which had been sent from Capetown to Angra Pequena, returns with news that she had been met there by the German corvette *Carola*, and had been informed that she was in German waters, and that Herr Lüderitz had acquired rights over the coast as far as the Orange River.

— 7. Boer discontent with the 1881 Convention.—Transvaal deputation, consisting of Mr. Kruger, Mr. S. J. du Toit, and Mr. N. J. Smit, wait on Lord Derby (Secretary of State for the Colonies) in London, to present various objections to the 1881 Convention. [They desired, *inter alia*, the removal of the Suzerainty, the withdrawal of the clauses referring to natives, freedom in regard to external relations, and substitution of title “South African Republic” for “Transvaal State.” Negotiations proceeded until Feb. 27, 1884, which see.

“When the British Government in 1881 conferred a modified independence on the Transvaal, they undoubtedly believed

that they were performing a generous action, and hoped that the guarantee of the Boers would be the best guarantee for the peace of South Africa. How mistaken they were! and yet how natural was the mistake! The reason of it is simple. The Boers believed that they had been deeply wronged by the annexation; they claimed as a right the complete restoration of their independence as it had been before 1877. They received a partial independence, and accepted it, not as a full settlement, but as a first instalment. While we were expecting to find them gratefully enjoying their restored right of self-government, they were only considering how they could regain complete independence.”—*Quarterly Review*, Jan. 1900.]

— 29. **Imperial administration for Basutoland.**—The troubles between the Basuto and Cape Colony have led the former to regard with much disfavour the rule of the latter, and various attempts at a settlement have been unsuccessful. Cape Colony, too, after spending over £3,000,000 on the “gun war” of 1880, is by no means enamoured of Basutoland. Then, again, the Basuto have found that independence may involve not only civil strife but also serious dangers when carried on in the proximity of the Orange Free State, and they urge that Basutoland should be taken under the direct administration of the Imperial Government. The latter (after withdrawing self-government in June) consent, provided that the Basuto give clear evidence of their approval, that the Orange Free State will respect its frontiers, and that the Cape Colony pays towards the cost of administration a sum equal to the duties on goods imported into Basutoland. A national gathering of Basuto now held agrees to these terms. [See 1884, March 13.]

- DEC. 14. **The Delagoa Bay Railway.**—Concession granted by Portugal to Col. Edward McMurdo, an American citizen, for the construction of a railway from Lorenzo Marques to the Transvaal frontier. [See 1887, Dec. 14.]

- - 22. **Boer promises.**—The *Times* publishes the following letter received by Mr. J. Davies, secretary of the Lisbon-Berlyn (Transvaal) Goldfields, Ltd., from the secretary of the Transvaal deputation in London (of which Mr. Kruger was the leading member), negotiating for a revision of the Pretoria Convention :—

“ALBEMARLE HOTEL, 1, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.,  
“*December 21, 1883.*

“SIR,—I am directed by the President and deputation of the Transvaal to acknowledge your letter of December 19, inquiring whether the Transvaal Government will view with satisfaction the development of the properties on which concessions have been granted, and whether the companies acquiring concessions can count upon Government protection. In reply I am to state that the President and deputation cannot refrain from expressing surprise and indignation at your directors thinking such an inquiry necessary, as it is absurd to suppose that the Government of the Transvaal would grant a concession on the Lisbon and Berlyn, or any other farm or plot of ground, and then refuse to protect the rights conveyed thereby. The Government desire to see the mineral resources of the Transvaal developed to their fullest extent, and will give every assistance incumbent on them to that end.

“I have the honour to be, Sir, your obedient servant,  
“EWALD ESSELEN, *Secretary.*”

1884. (a) **Gold.**—Systematic gold-mining begun in the Transvaal, previous efforts in this direction having

been on only a comparatively small scale. [Before long some reefs of gold-bearing quartz of great richness were discovered, among them being the famous Sheba Mine in Barberton, which place quickly developed from a few shanties into a town of 5,000 white inhabitants. See 1886, July 18.]

– (b) **Emigration to the Cape.**—Between 1873 and 1884, 23,337 immigrants were introduced into Cape Colony under the auspices of the British Government. [The work of assisted emigration to the Cape has been in abeyance since 1884.]

– FEB. **The freebooters and their spoils.**—The Executive of the Republic of Goshen officially announce that their territory comprises 250 farms of 3,000 morgen each. [The lots already drawn by the “volunteers” and others, with the sanction of the Executive, represented 350 farms, so that there was not yet sufficient land to go round.]

– – 9. **British interests in Bechuanaland.**—Commission issued to Sir Hercules Robinson to look after British interests in Bechuanaland. [Both the Imperial and the Cape Governments were by this time being aroused out of their lethargy, and convinced of the disadvantages of a non-intervention policy, by the activity, on the one hand, of Germany, who, it was feared, might stretch her possessions to meet those of the Transvaal, and so entirely block the way to the Zambesi, and, on the other hand, by the tactics of the Boer filibusters, who were gradually appropriating all the territories on the west of the Transvaal.] [See April 12.]

-- 27. **The London Convention.**—Fresh Convention between Great Britain and the Transvaal signed in London. The preamble says that—

“whereas the Government of the Transvaal State . . . have represented that the Convention signed at Pretoria . . . contains certain provisions which are inconvenient, and imposes burdens and obligations from which the said State is desirous to be relieved, and that the south-western boundaries . . . should be amended . . . it is hereby declared that the following Articles of a new Convention . . . shall . . . be substituted for the Articles embodied in the Convention of 3rd August, 1881.”

The new Convention sanctions the change of name from “Transvaal State” to “The South African Republic,” and does not repeat the stipulations of the Pretoria Convention as to a British Resident and the right to move British troops across the Transvaal territory. The boundaries are defined afresh, and it is reaffirmed that the Transvaal Government will “strictly adhere” to these boundaries, and “will do its utmost to prevent any of its inhabitants from making any encroachments upon lands beyond the said boundaries,” the following being added to what was said on this point in the Pretoria Convention :—

“The Government of the South African Republic will appoint Commissioners upon the eastern and western borders whose duty it will be strictly to guard against all irregularities and all trespassing over the boundaries. Her Majesty’s Government will, if necessary, appoint Commissioners in the native territories outside the eastern and western boundaries of the South African Republic to maintain order and prevent encroachments.”

Article 4 stipulates:—

“The South African Republic will conclude no treaty or engagement with any State or Nation other than the Orange Free State, nor with any native tribe to the eastward or westward of the Republic, until the same has been approved by Her Majesty the Queen.”

The provisions of the Pretoria Convention as to slavery and the full recognition of the independence of the Swazis are repeated, and it is declared by Article 14 that—

“all persons, other than natives, conforming themselves to the laws of the South African Republic (*a*) will have full liberty, with their families, to enter, travel, or reside in any part of the South African Republic; (*b*) they will be entitled to hire or possess houses, manufactories, warehouses, shops, and premises; (*c*) they may carry on their commerce either in person or by any agents whom they may think fit to employ; (*d*) they will not be subject, in respect of their persons or property, or in respect of their commerce or industry, to any taxes, whether general or local, other than those which are or may be imposed upon citizens of the said Republic.”

On the question of commandeering, Article 15 exempts “from all compulsory military service whatever” all persons other than natives who settled in the Transvaal between April 12, 1877, and August 8, 1881.

— MARCH 13. **Basutoland a British colony.**—Basutoland formally disannexed from Cape Colony, and converted into a British colony under the direct control of the Crown. [The Cape Colony contribution was at first fixed at £20,000 a year, but this was afterwards reduced to £18,000.] [See 1891, July 1.]

- APRIL 12. **The Mackenzie Mission.**—At the request of Sir Hercules Robinson, Mr. John Mackenzie, the Kuruman missionary (successor of Moffat and Livingstone), agrees to go to Bechuanaland and establish the Queen's authority there. [He was instructed that if the white inhabitants of the so-called Republic at Stellaland could not be expelled, and if the farms did not seriously encroach on native lands, the grants already issued might be recognised, but provision must be made for administration. With regard to the "Republic of Goshen," the farms assigned to Moshette's volunteers in Montsioa's country had never been occupied or improved, and the territory left to the chief, Montsioa, by the new Convention was so limited, that no portion of it could be alienated. "You may, therefore," wrote Sir Hercules, "find yourself obliged to order the ejectment of the persons now trespassing at Rooi Grond." See May.]

- - 16. **Netherlands Railway Concession.**—The Transvaal Government grant a concession of all the railways in the State to a group of Hollander and German capitalists. [Netherlands Railway Company floated June 21, 1887.]

- - 24. **German protection.**—Officially announced that Herr Lüderitz and his possessions are under the protection of the German Empire.

- MAY. **Stellaland and Goshen.**—Mr. Mackenzie arrives at Vryburg, a new town lately grown up, and the capital of Stellaland. Here he declares the Queen's authority. [During the course of his journey, which



lasted a little over three months, Mr. Mackenzie travelled over the whole of Bechuanaland, south of the Molopo River, and entered into treaties with Mankoroane, Montsioa, and other chiefs, by which the whole of the country north of Cape Colony, west of the Transvaal, and east of 20 degrees east longitude, was surrendered to Great Britain, though a British Protectorate was not actually proclaimed till March, 1885. At Stellaland Mr. van Niekirk, on behalf of the Boers, agreed to accept Her Majesty's protection, and he was appointed by Mr. Mackenzie Assistant-Commissioner under the Queen, the existing Government in Stellaland to remain. Very speedily, however, troubles arose between the rival British and Dutch parties, and Mr. Mackenzie then hoisted the British flag as a sign of annexation. In Goshen his experiences were still more unfavourable, the Boers there practically defying his authority. Both Stellaland and Goshen were soon in open rebellion, and the attacks on native chiefs were continued.]

-- 21. **The Boers in Zululand.**—Following on the events narrated under date Jan. 29, 1883, and finding that Her Majesty's Government still refuse to exercise sovereign rights in Zululand, the Boer adventurers there proclaim Dinizulu, son of Cetewayo, King of Zululand, in the presence of 10,000 natives.

— JUNE. **The murder of Mr. Bethell.**—Decisive battle in Goshenland between the Baralong, led by Mr. Bethell [see 1878, Dec.] and the Boer freebooters, the former being defeated. [During the struggle Mr. Bethell was severely wounded, and he begged some of the Boers to

take him to their camp. One of them asked him to explain the use of his rifle, and Mr. Bethell did so, as well as his condition would allow. The man then inserted a cartridge, put the muzzle to Mr. Bethell's head, and blew out his brains.]

— JULY 30. **Mr. Mackenzie withdrawn.**—Mr. Mackenzie withdrawn by Sir Hercules Robinson. [Objections had been raised against Mr. Mackenzie at the Cape on the ground partly that, being a missionary, his sympathies with the natives were too strong, and hence his failure to effect a settlement; and partly that he had gone too far in annexing the country. On the other hand, he had been refused the assistance of 200 police, with which, he had declared, he could have established the Queen's authority.]

— AUG. (a) **A Boer "New Republic" in Zululand.**—As a "reward" for their services in establishing Dinizulu King of Zululand the Boers take over an extensive area in that country, on which they now set up the "New Republic." [See 1885, Dec.]

— (b) **Mr. Rhodes' mission to Bechuanaland.**—Mr. Cecil Rhodes (leader of the Opposition in the Cape Parliament) accepts office as Deputy-Commissioner of Bechuanaland, in succession to Mr. Mackenzie. Continuous reports of cattle-stealing and land-grabbing by the Boers. [See Sept. 8.]

— (c) **Germany annexes Damaraland and Namaqualand.**—Formal annexation by Germany of all the coast of Damaraland and Namaqualand between 26° south and the Portuguese boundary, with the exception of

Walfisch Bay. [The territory in question extends along the coast a distance of about 930 miles, exclusive of Walfisch Bay (British), and represents a total area of 322,450 square miles, with a population (in 1897) of 200,000, including 2,682 whites. The whole of the southern part and much of the east is barren and desert.]

- - 7. **Great Britain and Walfisch Bay.**—Walfisch Bay, taken over by the British on March 12, 1878, is now formally incorporated with Cape Colony.

- SEPT. (a) **German designs on Zululand.**—Herr Einwald, acting for Herr Lüderitz, of Bremen, makes propositions to obtain possession for Germany of St. Lucia Bay, on the coast of Zululand. [See Nov. 13.]

- - (b) **Kaffraria.**—St. John's River Territory annexed to Cape Colony.

- - 8. **The Rhodes agreement with the freebooters.**—Agreement signed at Commando Drift between Mr. Rhodes and the Boers. Mr. Rhodes "recognised" the Stellaland Government, and vested it in van Niekirk and the Boer burghers temporarily, to allow time for inquiry, though their acts were to be valid only when approved by the Deputy-Commissioner, the British Protectorate being fully acknowledged. Ownership by Boers of farms already registered was guaranteed. [In carrying out his mission Mr. Rhodes adopted a distinctly conciliatory tone towards the Stellaland Boers. He felt that he could not count much on active support from either the Imperial or the Colonial Government, the High Commissioner having previously appealed in vain

for the employment of British troops and British money to preserve our interests in Bechuanaland. Mr. Rhodes' great object was to keep the British flag floating there, and thus preserve to the British the all-important trade-route through Bechuanaland to Central Africa, in other words, the "door" which Livingstone had prevented the Boers from closing 30 years previously. At the same time Mr. Rhodes saved Mankoroane from annihilation. Having settled Stellaland, Mr. Rhodes went on to Goshen, and at Rooi Grond he met Mr. Joubert, who had been appointed by Mr. Kruger "Commissioner of the Western Border," for the purpose of "preserving order." The Boers were so far from recognising the authority of Mr. Rhodes that while he was there they made a final attack on Montsioa, whose town they captured, the Baralong being then at their mercy. Mr. Rhodes notified to them that they were making war against the Queen, and he then returned to Stellaland. Joubert, under the pretence of restoring order, set aside the London Convention, and declared the country to be Transvaal territory. He then divided Montsioa's lands among the Boers, leaving only 10 farms for the deposed chief and his people. Mr. J. M. Wright, who had been left in charge by Mr. Mackenzie, was induced, under cover of a flag of truce, to leave Mafeking, and was made prisoner by the filibusters.]

— 10. **Mr. Kruger and the "interests of humanity."**  
—Mr. Kruger issues a proclamation by which, "in the interests of humanity," he "proclaims and ordains" the contending chiefs, Moshette and Montsioa, to be under

the protection of the South African Republic. The proclamation, however, is made "provisionally," and subject to the London Convention.

- - 24. **A Capetown protest.**—Great meeting in the Corn Exchange, Capetown, passes the following resolutions:—

"That the intervention of Her Majesty's Government in Bechuanaland for the maintenance of the trade route to the interior, and the preservation of native tribes to whom promises of Imperial protection have been given, is an act dictated by the urgent claims of humanity, no less than by the necessities of a wise and far-seeing policy."

"That any failure on the part of Her Majesty's Government to maintain its just rights under the Convention of London, entered into with the Transvaal, and to fulfil its obligations towards the native tribes in the Protectorate of Bechuanaland, would be fatal to British supremacy in South Africa."

- OCT. **The Warren expedition.**—Sir Charles Warren is appointed Special Commissioner, with authority to take an expeditionary force to Bechuanaland, in order "to remove the filibusters, to pacificate the country, to reinstate the natives in their land, and to take such measures as are necessary to prevent further depredations; and, finally, to hold the country until its further destination is known."

- - 9. **Mr. Kruger withdraws.**—The High Commissioner formally calls upon Mr. Kruger to withdraw his proclamation on the ground of its being a contravention of Article IV. of the London Convention. [This was at once done.] [See Nov. 22.]

- NOV. 13. **British flag in St. Lucia Bay.**—The British flag hoisted in St. Lucia Bay. [There were

rumours that the Germans intended to hoist their flag in the Bay, to which they laid claim on the ground that Herr Lüderitz, of Bremen, following up his successes on the West Coast, had acquired St. Lucia Bay from Dinizulu, together with 100,000 acres of adjoining land. But the British had a prior right to the Bay owing to its cession to them by Panda, on Oct. 5, 1843 (which see), and Sir Henry Bulwer, on his own initiative; arranged to anticipate any possible German action by raising the British flag at once. The incident attracted much attention at the time, but it was generally considered that Sir Henry had shown a wise discretion, and had saved what might have become a diplomatic difficulty. See 1885, June 25.]

- - 22. **Cape politicians intervene.**—Two members of the Colonial Ministry—Sir Thomas Upington, Premier, and Sir Gordon Sprigg, Treasurer-General—influenced by “an earnest desire to avert bloodshed, and avoid the creation of race bitterness and national jealousies,” proceed to Bechuanaland, and now make an agreement with the leaders of Goshen. [The Imperial Government refused to ratify the “settlement.”]

- DEC. 4. **Sir Charles Warren at the Cape.**—Sir Charles Warren lands at Capetown.

- - 24. **A British assurance to Germany.**—Prince Bismarck is officially informed that the British Government have no wish to make any annexations west of 20° E. longitude.

**1885.**—The German South-West Africa Association takes over claims of Herr Lüderitz.

— JAN. 6. **Pondoland.**—A British Protectorate proclaimed over Pondoland East.

— 22. **Sir Charles Warren's force.**—Sir Charles Warren's expeditionary force encamps on Vaal River. [It consisted of 1,420 Regulars, 600 British and 1,500 Colonial Volunteers, and 500 of the Native Guide Corps, a total of 4,020. During the march of the force northward Mr. Kruger had visited the disturbed districts, and warned the people against armed resistance. He also asked for and obtained permission to have an interview with Sir Charles Warren.]

— **Mr. Kruger pacific.**—Mr. Kruger meets Sir Charles Warren in conference at Fourteen Streams, on the borderland of the Transvaal and Griqualand West. Anxious to stop the advance of Warren's force he pledges himself to maintain order on his frontier, and agrees to a demarcation of the boundary line.

— MARCH. **Sir Charles Warren's bloodless victory.**—Sir Charles Warren, with a strong escort, proceeds to Mafeking, sweeps away the "Republic" of Goshen, and clears off the freebooters of Rooi Grond. [In a paper which he read before the Colonial Institute on Nov. 10, 1885, giving an account of the expedition, Sir Charles said:—

"There was every intention to fight on the part of the filibusters, and on the part of those who sympathised with them; but when they found we were prepared at all points, they did not know how to commence. They received no provocation, and they simply retired before us and disappeared. This was due in a great measure to the rapidity with which the troops were organised, disciplined and drilled, and marched up country."]

During his stay at Mafeking Sir Charles learns from the home Government that they have decided on taking Bechuanaland under British protection. Is instructed to inform Khama, Sechele, and other chiefs, and proceeds further north accordingly. [This Protectorate made British influence supreme up to 22° S. latitude; that is, up to the northernmost point of the Transvaal Republic. It restricted the Transvaal boundaries to those fixed by the Convention of Feb., 1884, and also prevented the possibility of a junction being effected between the Transvaal and the German territory on the west, an event which it was at one time thought might be brought about. The Bechuanaland policy of the Imperial Government in 1884-5 constituted, also, the first actual assumption by them of their responsibilities as the paramount power in South Africa.]

— MAY. **Boers, Germans, and Portuguese would all like Mashonaland.**—Sir Charles Warren receives a communication from his agent in Shoshong (the largest town in Bechuanaland—20,000 inhabitants), saying:—

“The Boers are determined to get a footing in Mashonaland (their condition being so wretched, and Mashonaland being the finest agricultural land in South Africa) by thus taking the Matabele on the flank, and gradually acquiring their territory by conquest, from thence overspreading all the independent tribes to the west and south of here. I also have good proof that the Germans and Portuguese are working quietly but slowly to acquire as much of these lands and the Transvaal under their protection as occasion will allow of, and believe that they, as well as the Boers and other nations, are only waiting to hear what action the British Government will take to settle on their own.”



— **Sir Charles Warren in Northern Bechuanaland.**—Sir Charles Warren has an interview at Shoshong with Khama and other chiefs of Northern Bechuanaland, and informs them of the proclamation of a British Protectorate over their territories. Khama hands Warren a written acceptance of British friendship and protection, and also signs a treaty acknowledging the Queen's supremacy.

— **JUNE 25. Germany and St. Lucia Bay.**—After much diplomatic correspondence and discussion concerning St. Lucia Bay, Germany declares that she will make no annexations in East Africa south of Delagoa Bay.

— **AUG. 26. Annexations to Cape Colony.**—Following up the action taken in November, 1881, a proclamation is issued now formally annexing Tembuland, Emigrant Tembuland, Bomvanaland, and Galekaland to Cape Colony. [In 1886 Lower Tembuland was added to this list by the submission to British rule of Pali, chief of the Amatshezi, who had previously been living in practical independence.]

— **SEPT. 24. Departure of Sir Charles Warren.**—Sir Charles Warren leaves Capetown for England, having accomplished his mission without striking a blow, though at the cost of about a million and a half of money.

— **30. Britain's new possessions.**—The southern portion of Bechuanaland, *i.e.* all the territory south of the Molopo, is constituted a Crown Colony, under the name of British Bechuanaland. The northern portion,

*i.e.* from the Molopo up to 22° S. latitude, and representing the district where Khama's power is supreme, is constituted the British Protectorate of Bechuanaland. [In Oct. the Governor of Cape Colony was proclaimed Governor of British Bechuanaland. See 1890, July 4.]

– Nov. **Boer designs on Swaziland.**—Umbandine, King of Swaziland, sends a message to the Governor of Natal stating that Piet Joubert, with two other Boers and an interpreter, had called on him and asked him to sign a paper to say that “he and all the Swazis agreed to go over and recognise the authority of the Boer Government, and have nothing more to do with the English.” He refused, saying he recognised only the English Government. Thereupon the Boers said:—“Those fathers of yours, the English, act very slowly, and if you look to them for help, and refuse to sign this paper, we shall have scattered you and your people before they arrive. Why do you refuse to sign the paper? You know we defeated the English at Majuba.” [In December Umbandine applied to the Colonial Office that his country should be taken under the protection of Her Majesty's Government, but his offer was not accepted. See 1887 (b).]

– DEC. **The Boers and Zululand.**—By the end of this year the claims of the Boers to different parts of Zululand amount to about three-quarters of the entire territory. [See 1886, Nov. 4.]

1886. (a) **The fate of Massow.**—In the early part of the year Massow, whose claims against the Batlapin

chief, Mankoroane, had been supported by the Boers, and who had conveniently served their own purposes in Bechuanaland, meets with his fate at their hands. His town of Mumusu, situated in that portion of Bechuanaland which by the London Convention was included in Transvaal territory, is attacked by the Boers, who kill Massow himself and many of his people, the remainder being dispersed and their lands and cattle confiscated.

— (b) **Gold fields of South Africa Company.**—The gold fields of South Africa Company founded by Mr. Rhodes and Mr. Rudd. [See 1888, Oct. 30.]

— MAY. **Land claims in Bechuanaland.**—The Commissioners appointed in Oct., 1885, to determine the land claims in British Bechuanaland present their report. Among other things they recommend life annuities of £300 to Mankoroane and Montsioa, and grants, as an indulgence, to seven of the Rooi Grond claimants. Nearly all the 252 Stellaland claimants (of whom only 22 are English, the remainder being Boers) receive grants from the Commission.

— JULY 18. **The Rand gold fields proclaimed.**—Proclamation of the Rand gold fields. [With this proclamation a new era in the history of South Africa, and especially in that of the Transvaal, was reached. An enormous development of the Barberton gold fields was already in progress, but the discovery that the conglomerates of the Rand contained workable gold in large quantities foreshadowed possibilities surpassing anything dreamed of before. At this time, too, there was very substantial reason why the Transvaal Govern-

ment should at last encourage gold-mining. Their finances were in such a condition that the State was almost on the verge of bankruptcy. The salaries of the officials were in arrear, the Treasury was behind in its payments, and had had to raise a loan of £5,000 at heavy interest to be going on with, while the general prospect appeared gloomy in the extreme. The nature of the change now to be brought about is shown by the fact that, whereas the gold production of the Transvaal between 1870 and 1886 was only £500,000, in the year 1897 it amounted to £11,500,000, of which the Rand production was £10,000,000. The political changes introduced were, however, to be still more important than the industrial. The earlier settlers in the gold fields were quite satisfied if they obtained gold; but when they were gathered in their thousands, and the town of Johannesburg was developed by men who had come to stay, demands for the rights of citizenship for those who were contributing so greatly to the wealth of the country began to be raised, and so the opening chapter in the latter-day history of the Transvaal was reached.]

— SEPT. 20. **The beginning of Johannesburg.**—The Transvaal Government decide to mark off a township on the Rand. [They appointed a Mining Commissioner, and held a first sale of building sites for the new town, which was to be called Johannesburg, after the Surveyor-General of the Transvaal. The actual founding of the town—represented at first by a few straggling shanties on the line of reef now forming the Wemmer and Ferreira Companies' ground—dates from Dec. 8, 1886.]

— OCT. **Kaffraria.**—Formal annexation by Cape Colony of the Xesibe country (Mount Ayliff district), hitherto administered as a dependency of Griqualand East. [The Xesibes were a tribe under British protection, and their country had been subjected to raids by the Pondos.]

— NOV. 4. **The Boer “New Republic” in Zululand.**—Announced that the British Government have agreed to recognise the Boer “New Republic” in Zululand, though with substantially narrower limits than the Boers have laid claim to. [For absorption into the Transvaal, see 1888, July. For annexation of remainder of Zululand by the British, see 1887, May.]

1887. (a) **Portuguese pretensions.**—Activity of the Portuguese in Matabeleland. [An official map was issued by the Portuguese Government on which a great portion of Matabeleland was marked as Portuguese territory. Lord Salisbury protested, pointing out that under the Berlin Act no claim to territory in Central Africa could be recognised that was not supported by effective occupation. He also informed Portugal that no pretension of hers to Matabeleland could be recognised, and that the Zambesi should be regarded as the natural northern limit of British South Africa. See 1888, Feb. 11.]

— (b) **The position of Swaziland.**—Owing to the steady influx into Swaziland of Boer and other adventurers, Umbandine becomes anxious for the safety of his country, and asks for the appointment of a British Resident, whose salary he offers to pay. The

request is refused, as Her Majesty's Government consider that "circumstances have not rendered desirable that form of interference with the internal affairs of Swaziland." [See 1889, March (a).]

– (c) **Troubles in Galekaland.**—The Galeka tribe, residing beyond the Kei, under Kreli, one of the leaders of the great Kaffir War of 1850–3, defy the authority of the British, and invade territory under our rule. They are driven back by Colonial forces, Kreli is deposed, and (in October) his country, the Rode Valley, is annexed to Cape Colony.

– (d) The Transvaal Republican Union formed at Barberton. [The Union did not attain to great importance, but its formation at this period was a matter of some significance.]

– MAY. **British Zululand.**—In order to ensure a peaceful administration of what is left of Zululand, after the substantial slice taken by the Boers for their New Republic, the British Government, with the general assent of the Zulus, declare the country to be British territory. [For incorporation with Natal, see 1897, Dec. 1.]

– JUNE. **Amatongaland.**—A deputation from Zambele, Regent Queen of Amatongaland, waits on the Governor of Natal to ask for British protection, she and her people being "in great distress and trouble in consequence of the treatment they are subjected to by the Portuguese Government at Delagoa Bay," in respect to the payment of taxes. [The Queen had, it seemed, not been informed of the MacMahon award, which estab-

lished Portuguese influence in the northern part of her dominions. To prevent, however, any injury to her own and to British interests from the adventurers who were overrunning the country, a treaty was now made with Queen Zambele by which she bound herself not to enter into any treaty for the cession or surrender of any portion of her country to any foreign State except with the knowledge and the sanction of Her Majesty's High Commissioner. Amatongaland, or Maputaland, covers an area of about 2,000 square miles, on which there is a population of about 9,000, and lies between Swaziland and the sea, having Portuguese territory on the north, and Zululand on the south. In 1887 it was almost the only piece of coast territory under native independent rule, from Senegal on the west coast to Zanzibar on the east, which had not been absorbed by some European Power. The Transvaal longed for its possession as a means of affording them their much-desired outlet to the sea, and the western strip of Amatongaland had been the scene of Boer intrigues since 1884. On this point see further 1888, Jan. 30.]

- DEC. 14. **The Delagoa Bay Railway.**—First section of the Delagoa Bay Railway from Lorenzo Marques to Komati, at the foot of the Lebombo Mountains, a distance of about 52 miles, opened. [It was announced that the construction of the portion of the line from the Portuguese frontier to Pretoria would be carried out by a Dutch-German syndicate. For seizure of line by Portugal, see 1889, June 29.]

1888. A "steam tramway."—Transvaal Volksraad gives its sanction to the construction of a "steam tram-

way" between the Raad and the neighbouring coalfields. [It was an ordinary railway in almost everything except the name, but was called by the promoters a steam tramway to soothe the feelings of the President and others, who were opposed to the introduction of railways into the Transvaal except in regard to the one from Delagoa Bay.]

— JAN. 30. **The story of Zambaan and Umbegesa begins.**—Replying to a formal intimation from the High Commissioner as to the treaty arranged with Amatongaland, the Transvaal State Secretary, Mr. Bok, takes exception to the definition therein of Queen Zambele's territory as being "bounded on the west by Swaziland." He says that between Amatongaland and Swaziland there live two "independent chiefs," named Zambaan and Umbegesa, whose lands are bordered on the south and east by the Pongola River, on the north by the Usuta (Maputa) River, and on the west by the Lebombo Mountains. These chiefs, he proceeds, have "repeatedly pressed to come in under the Republic with all their people, and transfer their territory, and have concluded agreements with Mr. Ferreira, Native Commissioner of Wakkerstroom." [As it happened, these so-called "independent chiefs,"—who denied having made any such treaties at all,—had both been subjects of the Zulu kings, and their domains, representing about 668 square miles, were recognised as forming part of Zululand when Gen. Wolseley set up the boundaries of the 13 districts at the end of the Zulu War. Sir Hercules Robinson accordingly replied to the Transvaal Government, on Feb. 7, that the territory described in the



treaty with Zambele was regarded by Her Majesty's Government as exclusively within the sphere of British influence, and he had "no expectation that the assent of Her Majesty's Government would be given to the agreements." On Nov. 19 Sir A. E. Havelock pointed out to Sir H. Robinson that the acquisition by the South African Republic of the territory of the two chiefs would deprive Great Britain of the only uncontrolled access to Swaziland still left to her, and would powerfully further any desire of the Transvaal for the annexation of Swaziland.] [See Oct. 20.]

— 30-FEB. 18. **A South African Customs Union.**—Conference at Capetown of delegates from Cape Colony, Natal, and Orange Free State, to discuss the establishment of a South African Customs Union. [A Customs Union Tariff Bill was passed by the Cape Parliament in August, and represented an important development in the idea of a South African Federation. The efforts made now and subsequently to induce the Transvaal to enter the Union were, however, futile, Mr. Kruger thinking that by means of the Delagoa Bay Railway the Republic would become independent of the Cape railways. See 1889, April.]

— FEB. 11. **The Moffat Treaty with Lobengula.**—British treaty with Lobengula, King of the Matabele, and ruler over the adjacent subjugated tribes of Mashonas and Malakas, signed. [The discovery of gold in Griqualand West led to much attention being paid to the country north of the Limpopo, the scene of some gold discoveries in 1864. At the same time rumours were circulated that the Boers, baffled in their

attempt to get possession of Bechuanaland, intended to start settlements to the north of the Transvaal. On this point see later developments, June, 1891. The Portuguese, also, were still casting longing eyes in this direction, and were endeavouring to secure a concession of mining rights. Fearing that the British might thus be anticipated, Mr. Rhodes had urged Sir Hercules Robinson to make a treaty with Lobengula, but Sir Hercules was unwilling to make any such treaty involving responsibility. Mr. Rhodes then suggested a "negative" treaty, on the model of the one made with the Queen of Amatongaland in 1887. To this Sir Hercules agreed. Mr. J. S. Moffat, Assistant British Commissioner in Bechuanaland, was then sent to Lobengula, who, harassed by the Boers on the one hand, and the Portuguese on the other, was quite willing to arrive at some understanding with the British. Under the treaty now agreed to he pledged himself not to enter into any correspondence or treaty with a Foreign Power, and not to sell or alienate any part of his territory, without the sanction of the High Commissioner.]

– MARCH 13.—Amalgamation of diamond mining companies effected by Mr. Cecil Rhodes, under the title of De Beers Consolidated Mines, Ltd.

– MAY.—Mr. J. F. Celliers sworn in as member for Barberton, being the first elected representative for the gold fields.

– JULY. **The "New Republic" absorbed.**—The Boer "New Republic" in Zululand is incorporated with the South African Republic, forming the Vryheid district.

— 6. **Pondoland.**—A Resident Commissioner for Pondoland appointed. [See 1893, Dec.]

— 14. **Sir John Henry Brand.**—Death of Sir John Henry Brand, President of the Orange Free State since 1863. [See 1889, Jan. 11.]

— OCT. 20. **Boer access to the sea.**—In a further despatch to the High Commissioner respecting the treaties made by Mr. Ferreira with the chiefs Zambaan and Umbegesa, the Transvaal State Secretary says:—

“The territory of these chiefs is certainly of great importance to this Republic, of more importance to it than to the British Empire. This Republic would, by reason of the existence of a large river in that territory, obtain a closer connexion with the sea, and such a connexion is naturally considered very desirable by this Republic. If the British Government, by the acknowledgment of the concluded agreements, will promote such a connexion, this will, according to the firm opinion of this Government, also carry with it this advantage—that the public opinion of the people of this Republic will be thereby favourably influenced, for they will acquire by it the tangible proof that the British Empire, far from the wish to oppress this young State, is ready to grant its support and help to it, and more and more to promote the friendly relations.”

[See 1891, Aug.]

— 30. **The Rudd concession.**—In return for the consideration of £100 a month, 1,000 rifles, and a large supply of ammunition, Lobengula grants a complete and exclusive concession of all mining rights in his territory to Mr. C. D. Rudd, Mr. Rochfort Maguire, and Mr. F. R. Thompson, on behalf of the Gold Fields of South Africa Company, and a syndicate of which Mr. Rhodes, Mr. Rudd, and Mr. Alfred Beit are the

principal representatives. [The Rudd concession, in combination with previous concessions and interests, formed the basis on which the British South Africa Company was formed. Lobengula further issued a notice that all the mining rights in Matabeleland, Mashonaland, and adjoining territories had been disposed of, and warning off any further concession-hunters or speculators. The Portuguese Consul responded with a counter-notice, declaring that Lobengula's concessions were null and void, inasmuch as the territory belonged to Portugal. See 1889, April 30.]

- DEC. 9. **An expansion of Zululand.**—The territories of Sibonda and Uncamana, lying between Zululand and Amatongaland, are declared to be part of Zululand. [The chiefs had for some years been subordinate to the Zulu kings and chiefs. Troubles had recently arisen between them and the natives of Amatongaland, while another important element in the situation was the fact that Sibonda's district extended 45 miles along the coast, in a northerly direction, from St. Lucia Bay, and included Sordwana Bay, which it was thought desirable should be brought under British influence, as it seemed to offer facilities for the creation of a harbour. An exploring party was sent there to inquire, while one or two schemes for its utilisation were brought forward. Some other small districts, also to the north of Zululand, comprising those of Fokoti, Umjindi, and Manaba, were added to Zululand in Feb., 1890.]

**1889. The Cape Railway.**—Orange Free State agrees with Cape Colony that the latter shall, at its own

expense, extend its main trunk railway to Bloemfontein, the Free State to have half the profits. [The Free State afterwards bought at cost price the portion of the line on its own territory.]

— JAN. 11. Mr. Reitz elected President of the Orange Free State. [See 1896, February.]

— MARCH. (a) **The position in Swaziland: the Little Free State.**—Umbandine, King of Swaziland, sends an envoy to the High Commissioner with a formal request for the proclamation of a Protectorate over his country by the British. His request is refused. [By this time the position of affairs in Swaziland had reached a critical stage. Under the London Convention of 1884 the independence of the Swazis, within the boundary line of Swaziland as fixed by the Convention, was fully recognised. By 1886, however, there was a steady influx of Europeans going on. Following their old tactics, as described under date Sept. 22, 1876, the Boers acquired grazing rights so extensive as to amount to virtual possession of the pastoral portions of Swaziland. They established a settlement to which they gave the name of "The Little Free State," converting it into a self-governing community, although it was well within the Swaziland boundaries. Ferreira visited Umbandine, and persuaded him to sign a document ceding the full sovereignty of the district to him, and authorising the Government of the Transvaal to annex it. The Government of the South African Republic then applied to the High Commissioner for permission so to do, saying that the case was one that "brook no delay," and that "the addition of this so-called 'Little

Free State' to the territory of this Republic cannot be regarded as a concession on the part of the Government, inasmuch as the addition is a matter of imperative necessity, and no single reason exists for opposing it." The securing of grazing rights had, in the meantime, been followed by mining concessions—especially on the circulation of reports as to the discovery of gold—together with concessions of practically everything in the country that was worth possessing. When troubles arose the Government of the South African Republic proposed to take action by themselves "to secure peace," but the British Government declared that any intervention must be by the two Governments acting together. For appointment of Joint Commission, see Sept.]

- - (b) Arrival in England of two envoys from Lobengula, who wishes to satisfy himself of the actual existence of the "Great White Queen." [See 1890, January 27.]

- - 13. **Transvaal-Free State Treaties.**—At a conference between Presidents Kruger and Reitz, at Potchefstroom, certain treaties between the South African Republic and the Orange Free State are agreed to, including a Railway Treaty, a Treaty of Amity and Commerce, and a Political Treaty. The last-mentioned refers to the wish for Federal Union—at present regarded as impracticable—and binds each State to help the other whenever the independence of one of the two States shall be threatened or assailed from without, unless the State which has to render the assistance shall show the injustice of the cause to the other State. [Treaties ratified May 25, 1889.]

— APRIL. **Customs Union Convention.**—Customs Union Convention entered into between Cape Colony and the Orange Free State. [See 1891, Jan. 1.]

— — 30. **The British South Africa Company.**—Proposals are laid before the Imperial Government by Mr. Rhodes for the formation of a company to develop the Bechuanaland Protectorate and the territories lying to the north. Intimation given that a Royal Charter will be asked for. Objects: (1) To extend northwards the railway and telegraph systems in the direction of the Zambesi; (2) To encourage emigration and colonisation; (3) To promote trade and commerce; (4) To develop and work mineral and other concessions under the management of one powerful organisation, securing to the native chiefs and their subjects the rights reserved to them under such concessions. Field of operations: The region of South Africa lying immediately to the north of British Bechuanaland, to the north and west of the South African Republic, and to the west of the Portuguese dominions. [Visiting London to promote the formation of the British South Africa Company, as it was called, Mr. Rhodes made an agreement with the directors of the Exploring Company, which had obtained great influence with Lobengula through Mr. E. A. Maund, who had taken part in the Warren expedition. Mr. Rhodes brought in the De Beers Company, which took a large interest—over £200,000—in the British South Africa Company. See Oct. 29.]

— MAY 4. **Mr. Kruger's friendly offer.**—Mr. Kruger telegraphs proposing a "friendly settlement" regarding Matabeleland and Swaziland—the Transvaal Republic

to withdraw all claims to the north, and to use influence to support British expansion in Bechuanaland and Matabeleland, if Her Majesty's Government will withdraw from Swaziland, from the territory of Zambaan and Umbegesa, and also from Amatongaland, including Kosi Bay, Her Majesty's Government using, in the same way, their influence for the expansion of the South African Republic to the east. [See Swaziland Convention, Aug., 1890 (*a*).]

- JUNE. **Sir Henry (Lord) Loch.**—Sir Henry Loch succeeds Sir Hercules Robinson as Governor of the Cape and High Commissioner for South Africa.

- - 29. **Seizure of the Delagoa Bay Railway by Portugal.**—The line of railway between Delagoa Bay and the Transvaal, constructed by a British and American Company, is seized by Portugal on the ground that the company have not carried out the terms of the concession granted Dec. 14, 1883. [The company had had enormous difficulty in raising funds—with consequent delays in carrying out the work—owing to well-founded rumours circulated from Amsterdam that, although the Portuguese Government had guaranteed that no competing line should be allowed, a secret agreement had been made in Máý, 1884, with the Transvaal for a steam tramway to run alongside, to carry passengers and goods. The first section of the line, from Lorenzo Marques to Komati, was opened Dec. 14, 1888, Komati being the terminus which had been shown on the Portuguese official plans. At the instigation of the Transvaal, however, the Portuguese Government arbitrarily declared that another point, five miles beyond,



was the actual "frontier," and they required completion of the line to that further point by June, 1889, the date originally fixed by the concession. Meanwhile Col. McMurdo, the concessionaire, died suddenly, while the prevalence of the rainy season, and other causes, had rendered impossible the completion of the extension up to the limits of the newly-defined boundary by the time fixed. On June 26 the Portuguese Government cancelled the concession, saying that the company had not completed the line within the stipulated time, and that the Government would take over the property at a valuation, and would themselves complete the line to the "frontier." On June 29 the line was seized by Portuguese troops, who displayed a good deal of vigour, and made several arrests. Three British men-of-war were sent to Delagoa Bay, and Portugal was informed that she would be held responsible for loss sustained by British subjects. The second section of the line, from Komati to the "frontier," was completed Jan. 24, 1890, and opened April 28. The United States Government claimed from Portugal compensation to the amount of £760,000 for damages to the interests of American citizens, and heavy claims were also made on behalf of the English company. It was intimated in 1890 that the Portuguese Government would accept the principle of arbitration for the settlement of the various claims. A Court of Arbitration was, by arrangement, appointed by the Swiss Government, and began its sittings at Berne on Aug. 8, 1890. For official opening of the Pretoria section of the Delagoa Bay Railway, see 1895, July 8.]

— SEPT. **Swaziland: a Joint Commission.**—Sir Francis de Winton is instructed by Lord Knutsford to proceed to Swaziland, and hold an inquiry into its affairs in concert with a Commissioner to be appointed by the South African Republic. [Lord Knutsford informed Sir Francis that Umbandine, having been unable to control the conflicting interests of British and Boer settlers, had appealed to both Her Majesty's Government and the Government of the South African Republic for protection. See Nov. 11.]

— OCT. — The Johannesburg Chamber of Mines founded.

— 29. **British South Africa Charter granted.**—The British South Africa Company obtains its Charter. [The Imperial Government was favourably disposed towards the proposal, partly because a chartered company could be better controlled than a limited liability one, and partly because such a company could "relieve Her Majesty's Government from diplomatic difficulties and heavy expenditure." Capital of the Company at this date, £1,000,000. See 1890, June 28.]

— NOV. 11. **Sir F. de Winton at Pretoria.**—Sir Francis de Winton arrives at Pretoria, *en route* for Swaziland. [Umbandine, King of Swaziland, died before the arrival of Sir Francis at the Cape. Sir Francis had several interviews with Mr. Kruger, and left Pretoria Nov. 21 for Swaziland, accompanied by Generals Joubert and Smit. For report by Sir Francis on the results of his mission, see 1890, Feb. 25.]

**1890. The franchise laws in the Transvaal.**—Concession of a Second Chamber, which, however, is to have no powers with regard to taxation or other important matters. Period of residence for franchise qualification of Uitlanders increased from five years to ten, reckoning from the time of enrolment on the field cornets' lists. [The result was to exclude even the oldest residents among the Uitlanders, as enrolment had never before been required or obtained. The reason alleged for these and other similar changes subsequently was a fear lest the Uitlanders might "swamp the polls and capture the Government." See 1894, Sept.]

— JAN. 27.—Imperial Commissioners hand to Lobengula, at Bulawayo, a letter from the Queen announcing to him the incorporation of the British South Africa Company, and recommending that Company to his favourable consideration.

— FEB. 25. **Sir F. de Winton's report: a study in Boer tactics.**—Sir F. de Winton presents his report on his visit to Swaziland. He says the Government of the Transvaal claim certain rights over Swaziland on account of services rendered to the father of Umbandine, when he was a candidate for the chieftainship; but this was only a family quarrel as to the rights of succession, while the Boers offered no material assistance when the Swazis were threatened by the Zulus. On the other hand, the influence of the British was constantly exercised over the Zulus to keep them from invading Swaziland, so preserving the nation. As regards Umbandine, "it was his desire to please the whites that caused him

to fall into the hands of unscrupulous adventurers, who, under the pretence of friendship, stripped him of all his possessions by so-called concessions." The trade and commerce of Swaziland have been chiefly created by the wants of the white residents, and are almost entirely in the hands of the English, with the exception of one or two Germans. The mineral wealth is chiefly close to the border of the Transvaal, but there has been a tendency to exaggerate its amount. Sir Francis further reports that the joint mission attended a meeting of native chiefs and headmen, and promised them, among other things, that the independence of the Swazis should be maintained by both Governments, that the Commissioners would ratify the choice of the nation as to their future king, and that the concessions of which they complained should be brought before a legal tribunal, properly appointed, who should decide as to their legality. A Provisional Governing Committee was appointed. Respecting concessions, Sir Francis says the late King and his Council

"have parted not only with all their actual territory, but with rights which should only belong to the Government of a country, to a lot of adventurers whose sole object was to make money by them. . . . Some of the most important of these concessions, such as postal, telegraphic, banking, customs, etc., have been purchased by the Government of the Transvaal, and, in the opinion of the law officers of the Crown, they were within their legal rights. . . . The question, then, arises, supposing the Government of Great Britain takes over Swaziland, how is the government of the country to be carried on? Nearly all the available revenue of the country under the concessions will be in the hands of the South African Republic, and unless they are purchased there will be

an *imperium in impero*, a state of affairs which could only lead to endless complications between the two Governments. This would also apply to any joint action. . . . The grazing rights granted to numerous Boers would likewise form a source of continual disputes in the event of a dual control, or the assumption of a Protectorate over Swaziland by Great Britain.”

Sir Francis further mentions the Transvaal offer to withdraw all claims to Matabeleland and Mashonaland, provided Her Majesty's Government will withdraw from Swaziland; and, finally, with regard to the Transvaal aspirations for a seaport, he recommends that the South African Republic should be allowed to acquire rights for the construction of a railway through Swaziland to the coast, and to acquire land with a 10-mile radius round Kosi Bay, for the construction of a harbour, provided the Republic will undertake (1) that such port shall never pass out of the hands of the Transvaal Government into those of any other Power than Great Britain; and (2) that the Transvaal shall join the South African Customs Union. [See Aug. (a).]

— MARCH 4. **Mr. Kruger in Johannesburg: the flag incident.**—Visit of President Kruger to Johannesburg. [President Kruger proceeded to the Wanderers' Hall, where he was to address a crowded meeting of local residents. The gathering became the scene of an historical incident which is thus described by Mrs. Lionel Phillips in *Some South African Recollections*:—

“I happened to have a seat just behind him (the President). He advanced to the platform surrounded by some officials and all the prominent men of the town. Just as he was beginning to speak in his ponderous manner some youths in the crowd below began to sing ‘Rule Britannia’! He glared stolidly

into space for a moment, then roared out as if speaking to a naughty child, 'Blij stil!' (Be quiet!) A burst of laughter was the natural response. . . . Without a single word he turned his back, walked off, and all the protestations of the serious part of his audience were unavailing. . . . That night the Transvaal flag flying over the Landdrost's house was pulled down, and two wretched men were caught, put into prison, and finally released six months after, without even having been tried. People said they were not the real offenders, which is quite possible, the town not being lighted. . . . However, this incident, always spoken of as 'the flag incident,' has been used by President Kruger as one of the main reasons for refusing the franchise to the Uitlanders, and he has given it over and over again."]

— JUNE 28. **British South Africa pioneers.**—Pioneer expedition, consisting of 500 British South Africa Company's police, 170 pioneers, and 400 native drivers, under the command of Col. Pennefather, and the leadership of Mr. Selous, leaves the Macloutsie (a tributary of the Limpopo) to make roads and take possession of the new territory. [Lobengula consented at first, though he afterwards tried, unsuccessfully, to waylay and stop the expedition. See Sept. 11.]

— JULY 4. (a) **The administration of North Bechuanaland.**—By an Order in Council the whole of the territory north of British Bechuanaland, west of the Transvaal and of Matabeleland, east of the German Protectorate of South-West Africa, and south of the Zambesi, is placed under the jurisdiction of the Governor of British Bechuanaland, though the British South Africa Company claim the section of Bechuanaland north of the Crown Colony by reason of its being included within the sphere defined by their Charter.

— (b) **Mr. Kruger and his relations.**—Speaking in the Raad, Mr. Kruger says:—

“Mr. Taljaard yesterday threw in my teeth that I took advantage of my position to benefit my own relations. I assure you that I have done nothing of the kind. Unfortunately one of my relatives, who is a speculator, has got a concession which I am in duty bound to carry out. But I am deeply grieved that Mr. Taljaard said what he did say. In future, I can assure you, not a single member of my family shall receive a single office. I will not even make one of them a constable. I have children myself, but I have left them on the farm rather than put them in office to draw money from the State.”

[On this subject the *Manchester Guardian* of Oct. 5, 1899, published the following from its Pretoria correspondent:—

“Of the pressure of family influence in public life there is far too much. The President, in particular, has been a most unblushing practitioner of nepotism. His relations fill many of the most important posts. Piet Grobler, a grandson, a man of some energy, but of no real education, occupies the important post of Under-Secretary of State, and exercises no small influence in politics. Another grandson, Piet Kruger, was appointed over the heads of many senior men to the place of Master of the High Court, though possessed of no legal training or experience whatever. One of Kruger’s younger sons, a notorious ‘wastrel,’ also destitute of education and official experience, is in control of the Secret Service Fund, which has on one occasion amounted to £120,000 in a single year. Another grandson, Hans Malan, is Chief Inspector of Roads; and yet another is in command of the forts at Johannesburg. The husband of one of his granddaughters is Assistant State Attorney. The list might be greatly extended if notice were taken of remoter family connections.”]

— 17. **Mr. Rhodes Prime Minister.**—New ministry

formed at the Cape by Mr. Cecil Rhodes, on the resignation of Sir J. Gordon Sprigg.

— AUG. (a) **A Convention that failed.**—A Swaziland Convention is reluctantly signed by the Transvaal Government, who intimate that they do not relinquish their claims to the territories to the east of their boundaries. Independence of Swazis in regard to their domestic affairs confirmed; a committee of three, representing Swazis, British, and Boers, to have jurisdiction over the whites; joint consent of British and Boers required for appointment of judges and subordinate officials. The Transvaal abandons all claims to compete with the British South Africa Company in the north and north-east, engages to withdraw opposition to railway extension, and agrees to enter eventually into the Customs Union Convention. In return the British Government approve of the South African Republic securing an outlet to the sea, on the lines suggested in Sir F. de Winton's report. [The Convention was duly ratified, but it eventually lapsed because the Transvaal Government disapproved of the conditions (especially in regard to the Customs Union), and took no advantage of it within the specified period of three years. As regards non-competition with British South Africa Company, see Limpopo Trek, June, 1891.]

— (b) **Britain and Portugal.**—An agreement entered into by the Governments of Great Britain and Portugal in which the eastern limits of the British South Africa Company's territory are defined. [The agreement was not ratified by the Cortes.]

— SEPT. 11. **Possession taken.**—British South Africa



Company's expedition reaches its destination [the site of the present town of Salisbury], having made a road 400 miles long from the Macloutsie River, and established forts at Tuli, Victoria, and Charter. They now raise the British flag, and formally take possession in the name of the Queen.

— 29.—British South Africa Company pioneers disband, and start work on land allotted to them under previous agreement.

— DEC. 3.—Railway from Kimberley to Vryburg completed. [See 1894, Oct. 3.]

**1891.**—Cape Railway system extended to the Vaal River, at Viljoen's Drift. [See 1892, Sept.]

— JAN. 1. **British Bechuanaland enters the Customs Union.**—British Bechuanaland admitted to the Customs Union between Cape Colony and the Orange Free State. [See July 1.]

— MAY 11. **An Anglo-Portuguese skirmish.**—A conflict which has been maturing for some time between British and Portuguese interests or aspirations reaches a crisis. The agreement made by the British with Lobengula on Feb. 11, 1888, was strongly resented by many Portuguese, who thought that, inasmuch as his country formed the background to the line of coast to which they laid claim, their influence over it should be supreme. Negotiations were opened between the British and Portuguese Governments, but in the meantime two Portuguese, Col. de Andrada and Lieut. Gordon, took some black troops and visited various petty chiefs, whom they induced to accept Portuguese flags. After the Chartered Company had taken posses-

sion of their territories Mr. Colquhoun and Mr. Selous, with an escort, travelled eastward, and on Sept. 14, 1890, they made an agreement with Umtasa, paramount chief of Manikaland, to take his country under the protection of the British South Africa Company. Included in this country was Andrada, a place 20 miles to the south-east, where, with Umtasa's consent, a Portuguese trading station had been established. Mr. Selous went on to this place, and met two Portuguese officers who protested against the arrangement, and claimed not only a vast extent of territory as Portuguese, but that Umtasa himself was a Portuguese subject. These claims were repudiated both by Umtasa and by the Company, and the latter sent a small force under Capt. Forbes to the chief to support him. On Nov. 14 Col. de Andrada and a party of supporters visited Umtasa's kraal, but on leaving it they were arrested and disarmed by the British. The leaders were sent as prisoners to Salisbury, *en route* for Cape-town, but at Tuli were liberated by Dr. Jameson. The news of the affair caused great excitement in Portugal, and parties of students set off for Beira to defend the honour of the Portuguese flag. Arriving there they went with some negroes to occupy Andrada, which they reached May 5, 1891, representing a force of 100 Europeans and 300 or 400 natives. In now making a reconnaissance they meet a body of 53 of the British South Africa Company's police, with whom they come into collision, the Portuguese party being totally defeated, with heavy loss, though without any casualties on the side of the British. [For Anglo-Portuguese Treaty see June 11.]

- JUNE. **The dream of a fresh Republic across the Limpopo.** — The "Banjailand Trek" incident. [For several years the Transvaal Boers had cherished the hope of founding, on the north of the Limpopo, a new Republic, where, as they said, "a genuine Afrikaner nationality could be developed." So far back as 1882 Mr. Kruger had attempted to arrange a treaty with Lobengula, and though he was then unsuccessful the project was still entertained. The news of the Moffat Treaty with Lobengula, in 1888, followed by the concessions to Mr. Rudd and others, convinced the Boers that the time had come for active steps on their part, if they wished to succeed at all, and preparations for a great trek across the Limpopo began to be made in 1890. Intimation was then given by the High Commissioner that the scheme would not be allowed; but it was proceeded with all the same, and in the early part of 1891 it was understood that the new "Republic of Banjailand" would be set up on June 1. The various offices for the provisional government were allotted in advance, and doctors, ministers, and others were to accompany the armed body of 5,000 trekkers, by whom the settlement was to be established. Dr. Jameson, as Administrator of the British South Africa Company, sent a protest to the High Commissioner, and Sir Henry Loch informed President Kruger that the threatened trek would be in violation of the Swaziland Convention, and an act of hostility to the Queen, and that troops had already been sent to prevent, if necessary, any invasion of the Queen's territory. (Sir F. Carrington had been put in command of the Imperial

troops and the Chartered Company's Police, and a detachment of regulars moved up to Mafeking in readiness). Sir Henry Loch's letter was read in the Volksraad, which, realising at last the gravity of the situation, confirmed a proclamation drawn up by the President prohibiting the trek, and added thereto an intimation that any offender would be liable to a fine of £500 and one year's imprisonment with hard labour. In the meantime two parties of Boers had appeared on the Limpopo, where they found on the opposite side a body of the Chartered Company's Police, under Colonel Goold-Adams and Dr. Jameson. The latter crossed the river, and told the trekkers that, though they could have farms under the Company's control, on easy terms, they would not be allowed to form an independent settlement. He talked them into reason, and then they dispersed, the only further trouble being the arrest and detention for a few days of Col. Ferreira, leader of one of the two parties, on account of the violence of his language. Subsequently the fact of the trek being abandoned was made by Mr. Kruger, a reason for claiming "compensation" in another direction; namely, the right of the Boers to the land lying between the Transvaal, on the east, and the sea, on the basis of Mr. Kruger's "friendly proposal" of May 4, 1889.]

— 11. **Anglo-Portuguese Treaty: the Beira Railway.**

—Treaty signed at Lisbon defining the boundaries of the British and Portuguese possessions south of the Zambesi, pledging each Power to give the other a preferential right to any of the territory with which it

might propose to part within the sphere of influence thus assigned to it; providing for the transit of goods across the Portuguese territory during 25 years, on payment of a duty not exceeding three per cent. of their value; and arranging for the free navigation of the Zambesi, construction of telegraphs, etc., and also for the construction of the Beira Railway from the coast to the British South Africa Company's territory. [The capital for this line was provided by the British South Africa and the Mozambique Companies. Starting from a point on the Pungwe 12 miles from the mouth of that river, the line runs to the western boundary of Portuguese territory—which forms the eastern boundary of the British South Africa Company's territory—and thence continues as the Mashonaland Railway to Salisbury, the capital of Rhodesia. The line is now complete, but the Beira section is being widened to bring the gauge to the standard of the Cape Railway system. The construction of the line will probably be an important element in the development of Rhodesia, by affording direct communication with the sea on the east—a distance of only 382 miles—as an alternative to the journey of 1,350 miles from Bulawayo to the Cape.]

– JULY 1. **Basutoland enters the Customs Union.**—Admission of Basutoland to the Customs Union entered into between Cape Colony, the Orange Free State, and British Bechuanaland takes effect from this date. [See 1893, July.]

– AUG. **A Boer tax-gatherer on native territories.**—Mr. C. R. Saunders, a magistrate in Zululand, reports that for some years past Mr. J. J. Ferreira—notwith-

standing the refusal of Her Majesty's Government to recognise the treaties alleged to have been made by him—has practically assumed the government of Zambaan's district, forcing taxes from the people, who yield to his threats because they fear there would otherwise be a Boer invasion. He is also said to have the natives flogged, even including women, on the slightest pretence. [An inquiry which was made showed that Ferreira was collecting taxes as described, but was no longer in the service of the South African Republic. See also 1894.]

**1892. The Transvaal National Union.**—The Transvaal National Union formed by professional and mercantile men, with Mr. Charles Leonard, a solicitor at Johannesburg, as Chairman, for the purpose of obtaining, by constitutional means, equal rights for all citizens in the Transvaal, and redress of grievances and abuses, while maintaining the independence of the Republic.

— SEPT.—Extension of the Cape railway system to the Rand completed by the Netherlands Railway Company. [The line was afterwards carried on to Pretoria.]

— — 1. **"Now let the storm burst!"**—Mr. Kruger, at whose invitation seven delegates from the National Union go over to Pretoria respecting the demands for reforms, says to the leader of the deputation:—

"Go back and tell your people that I shall never give them anything. I shall never change my policy. And now let the storm burst!"

— NOV. 29. **Mr. Rhodes is over-confident.**—Speaking

at the second annual meeting of the British South Africa Company Mr. Rhodes says:—

“Our differences with the Portuguese are over, and we are on most friendly terms with Lobengula. The latter receives a globular sum of £100 a month in sovereigns, and he looks forward with great satisfaction to the day when he will receive them. I have not the least fear of any trouble in the future from Lobengula.”

**1893. JUNE 26. Responsible government for Natal.**—A law granting responsible government to Natal receives the royal assent. [Natal's first Ministry appointed Oct. 10.]

—**JULY. The Bechuanaland Protectorate enters the Customs Union.**—Admission to the Customs Union of such portion of the Bechuanaland Protectorate as is under the direct administrative control of the High Commissioner takes effect from this date. [See 1898, Oct. (b).]

—**18. The Matabele War.**—A Matabele impi, 300 in number, enters the township of Victoria, Mashonaland, killing Mashona servants and refugees. [Various similiar outrages had occurred previously, the Matabele king claiming the Mashonas as his subjects, and denying the right of the British to protect them. Unsuccessful attempts were made at a settlement, and fears arose of a general attack on Mashonaland and the Bechuana-land Protectorate. The High Commissioner accordingly authorised Dr. Jameson to take all necessary steps for the safety of the settlers.]

—**OCT. The march on Bulawayo.**—War against the Matabele having been decided on, two columns of the

British South Africa Company's forces, encamped at Fort Charter and Fort Victoria, receive instructions on the 7th to march on Bulawayo, the capital of Lobengula, and on the 11th the Tuli division, with a detachment of the Bechuanaland Police from Macloutsie, move forward in the same direction, being reinforced on the 13th, on their arrival at the Shashi River, by 2,000 auxiliary native troops under the chief, Khama. Constitution of divisions: that from Fort Charter, under Major Forbes, 258 white volunteers and 115 natives; Fort Victoria column, under Major Allen Wilson, 414 white volunteers and 440 natives; Tati column, 225 white volunteers under Commander Raaf, acting in conjunction with 225 Bechuanaland Police, under Col. Goold-Adams. The columns from Fort Charter and Fort Victoria joined on the 16th and did most of the fighting.

- - 24.—Fort Charter and Fort Victoria columns have an engagement on Shangani River with 5,000 Matabele. Latter repulsed with heavy loss.

- Nov. 1.—Fort Charter and Fort Victoria columns, laagered on open ground at Imbembesi River, two days' march from Bulawayo, repel attack by 7,000 Matabele. Machine guns used with terrible effect.

- - 2.—The Tati column defeat small body of natives on Singuesi River.

- - 3. **Bulawayo occupied.**—Troops find Bulawayo in flames and deserted. Lobengula in flight with the remainder of his men.

- - 9.—Ultimatum sent to Lobengula. [See Dec. 3.]

- - 13. **Swaziland under Boer protection.**—As the



final outcome of a conference held in June between Sir Henry Loch and President Kruger, at Pretoria, an agreement is signed by which, should the Queen-Regent and her Council consent, Swaziland is to be placed under the protection and administration of the South African Republic. [The Queen-Regent refused to sign the agreement. See 1894, Oct.-Nov.]

- DEC. **Pondoland.**—During the year the mounted police were kept busy in preventing the rival factions in Pondoland from encroaching on the Colony of Natal. [See 1894, March.]

- - 3. **The death of Major Wilson.**—Major Allen Wilson and 34 others, in pursuit of Lobengula, are surrounded on Shangani River and killed. [The pursuit of Lobengula by a party of picked men under Major Forbes had been continuous since Nov. 14. The King himself had only a few followers, and, as subsequent events showed, was anxious to surrender. See 1894, Jan. 23. Major Wilson had crossed the Shangani, and on Dec. 2 he actually reached the kraal where the King was hiding. He sent word to Major Forbes and Captain Barrow, and a small party went to join him, his intention being to arrest the King in the morning. During the night Wilson and Forbes were surrounded by Matabele. Three of Wilson's men went to the main body to get assistance, but none could be sent, owing to a sudden rise of the Shangani River, and Wilson and his men, fighting to the last, were overpowered and killed.]

1894. **The Boer movement seawards.**—Further reports received respecting the territories of Zambaan

and Umbegesa show that the refusal of the British Government, in 1888 and subsequently, to recognise Mr. Ferreira's treaties with the chiefs has not led the Boers to abate their pretensions in the slightest degree. If they cannot acquire by treaty they will do so by settlement. In this way it is found that a considerable number of Boers have established themselves on the lands in question, putting up both dwellings and factories, while among other buildings erected by them there is a court-house where a Transvaal official acts as magistrate and commissioner. The land of the natives is being steadily appropriated, and the people are intimidated into paying taxes to the Boers, whose resentment they fear too much to make any protest. The Boers, it is added, take the taxes in any shape or form they can get them in, accepting a tiger skin, a monkey skin, or even a cat skin from those of the natives who cannot find any money. [By order of the home Government, a "decided protest" was sent to Mr. Kruger, who was reminded of the provisions of Article 2 of the London Convention, by which the Government of the South African Republic bound themselves to strictly adhere to their boundaries, as therein defined, and to do their utmost to prevent any encroachments by the inhabitants of the Transvaal on lands beyond. Matters went on, however, just the same as before. See 1895, Feb. 20.]

— JAN. 23. **Death of Lobengula.**—Death of Lobengula, from fever, at a place 40 miles south of the Zambesi. [He had handed to two troopers a sum of about £1,000 as a present to the Forbes patrol, asking the men to convey from him his desire to surrender.

The troopers kept the money, and suppressed the message. See May 29.] The British South Africa Company, who had spent £100,000 on the campaign, enter on full possession of Lobengula's territory. General submission of the tribes.

— MARCH. **Pondoland annexed.**—Owing to the prevalence in Pondoland of misrule and cruelties, which the chiefs are unable to check, the whole country is annexed to Cape Colony. Magistrates are sent there to ensure the maintenance of peace and order.

— MAY—JUNE. **Commandeering of British subjects.**—A number of British subjects, resident in the Transvaal, are called upon to join a military expedition, leaving Pretoria May 19, against Malaboch, a Kaffir chief in Zoutpansberg, who has refused to pay taxes to the Boers. [The individuals in question were to provide each his own horse, saddle, and rifle, with 30 rounds of ammunition, and provisions for eight days, while they were to have no remuneration whatever. Others were required to provide money or supplies for the expedition. Great indignation was caused at both Pretoria and Johannesburg, and a strong protest was sent to the Acting High Commissioner at the Cape (Sir Henry Loch being then in England), pointing out that they were “denied all political rights and privileges in the State, while heavily taxed,” and yet were liable to “such ruinous demands on simple verbal notice.” The matter was referred to the Colonial Secretary, and Lord Ripon replied that Her Majesty's Government were not in a position to remonstrate on the strict ground of International Law. The Convention of 1884 protected

from compulsory service only those British subjects who settled in the Transvaal between the annexation and the retrocession, and the persons now concerned did not come under this head. Lord Ripon pointed out, however, that in 1876 President Burgers offered to take steps to arrange a Convention on the subject, and in the meantime promised exemption to all British subjects applying to him; that in the negotiations on the Pretoria Convention of 1881 the Transvaal leaders proposed the exemption of British subjects from military service, the present arrangement being one that had been suggested by Her Majesty's Government; and that the subjects of seven Powers had, by treaty, been exempted. Lord Ripon therefore directed Sir Henry Loch to address, "in moderate and courteous terms, a friendly representation to the Government of the South African Republic on the subject." Meanwhile about 23 British subjects had been commandeered for personal service, and some of them joined the expedition under protest, but five refused. On June 18 the High Court of Pretoria decided that British subjects resident in the Transvaal for over two years were legally bound to serve, and on June 20 the five who still refused to go to the front (saying they would not fight for people who treated them as aliens, and refused them any rights) were arrested, and sent there as military prisoners. See July 25.]

- MAY 23. **The territories of the British South Africa Company: Matabeleland.**—An agreement between Her Majesty's Government and the British South Africa Company defines the territories over which the

operations of that Company may extend as embracing "those parts of South Africa bounded by British Bechuanaland, the German Protectorate, the rivers Chobe and Zambesi, the Portuguese possessions, and the South African Republic." Administrative powers granted by which the supremacy of the Company, as represented by an "Administrator," is effectually secured in Matabeleland, as distinguished from Mashonaland, the eastern portion of their territories, occupied as the result of the Lobengula annexation in 1891, and forming up to this date the western boundary of the Company's area. The agreement, on which the Matabeleland Order in Council of July 18, 1894, was based, expressly excluded the territories defined in a Proclamation by the High Commissioner on Sept. 27, 1892, and known as the Bechuanaland Protectorate. [See further, 1895, Aug. (b)]

— 29. **A breach of trust, and what it led to.**—Two members of the Bechuanaland Police Force are convicted at Bulawayo of having suppressed a message of submission from Lobengula, and appropriated a present from him of £1,000, thereby causing the death of Wilson and his party. Sentenced to 14 years' penal servitude.

— JULY 14. **The law against public meetings.**—Great mass meeting of Uitlanders at Johannesburg demands extension of franchise to all aliens, and amendment of Constitution on more democratic lines. [To this the Volksraad replied by passing, at one sitting, the two readings of a Bill which prohibited outdoor meetings or addresses—an assemblage of six

persons being considered a "meeting"; gave authority to the police to disperse any meeting which they might consider to be against the public peace, and made offenders liable to a fine of £500, or imprisonment for two years with hard labour.]

-- 25. **Sir Henry Loch's visit to Pretoria.**—Sir Henry Loch, High Commissioner (who returned to Capetown from England, June 20), arrives at Pretoria to confer with Mr. Kruger on commandeering and other subjects. [Apart from the matters immediately concerned his visit gave rise to some memorable incidents. He reached Pretoria at nine in the morning, and entered a carriage along with Mr. Kruger and Dr. Leyds, State Secretary, in order to drive to the hotel where he was to stay. Feeling among the British in Pretoria was intense, and the risk of a possible outbreak had only been avoided by the promise of Sir Henry's visit. Some enthusiasts took the horses from the carriage and proceeded to drag it to the hotel, a mile distant; two Englishmen on the box waved the Union Jack immediately over Mr. Kruger's head, while the excited crowd followed up their cheering of Sir Henry Loch, and their hooting of Mr. Kruger, by singing "God save the Queen" and "Rule Britannia" the whole of the way to the hotel. Arrived there the crowd stopped to allow Sir Henry to descend, but refused to pull the carriage any further, and Mr. Kruger, highly incensed at the whole proceeding, had to wait until sufficient of his faithful burghers could be found to drag him home. In the negotiations that followed Mr. Kruger wrote to Sir Henry Loch that

his Government was prepared to propose to the Volksraad to

“amend the London Convention of 1884 (taking into consideration the principle of reciprocity) in such sense that the British subjects (with regard to compulsory military service) shall enjoy the same privileges as are allowed to the subjects of the most favoured nation. Meanwhile,” Mr. Kruger went on to say, “this Government takes the liberty to express the hope and trust that, now that it so readily agrees to give effect to the request of Her Majesty’s Government, that Government will also be prepared, with the desire to meet the wishes of this Government as much as possible, to take into consideration the proposals which this Government proposes to make for amendment of some other articles of the London Convention. It will be desirable that all these amendments be embodied in a new agreement, respecting which further negotiations will be necessary.”

But this attempt by Mr. Kruger to secure a revision of the London Convention was no more successful than others before had been. Sir Henry Loch replied that he had no authority to amend the Convention of 1884, though he had authority to negotiate a separate Convention on the subject of commandeering, and of this he begged to forward a draft. Mr. Kruger found it “impossible to acquiesce” in this suggestion, and in the result Sir Henry secured no more than a document extending “most favoured nation” rights to British subjects in regard to personal military service for the future, though holding them still liable to any war tax or requisition levied on all foreigners and burghers alike. The five military prisoners sent to the front were released. At the urgent request of Mr. Kruger, Sir Henry Loch agreed not to go to Johannesburg,

owing to the state of public feeling, but he received from there a deputation bringing a memorial signed by 14,800 British residents, and representing invested capital to the amount of £20,000,000. The memorial said :—

“Denied the franchise, and having recently been subjected to the indignity of seeing a petition presented by 13,000 residents—mainly subjects of the Queen—praying for some relaxation of the unjust franchise laws, greeted with laughter and scorn by the legislature ; having further been informed by the authorities that not only we, but our children, born in the country, can never hope to participate in the more precious privileges of citizenship, our wrongs have lately been accentuated by the circumstance that the courts and the Government of this State have declared our liability to be called out at any time, without pay or compensation, for compulsory military service for the carrying out of the laws in the making of which we can never have any voice, and in the enforcement of which we have no interest. We beg to assure your Excellency that this position of affairs is to us so intolerable that the situation is fraught with the possibility of serious results ; and we respectfully beg your Excellency to bestow the gravest and most serious consideration upon it.”

— 31. **The fate of Malaboch.**—Malaboch, after making two desperate but fruitless attempts to break through the cordon of troops surrounding the caves in which he and his followers have taken refuge from the Boer commando, surrenders to Gen. Joubert. [He had managed, all the same, to keep 2,000 white men at bay for two months. He and 200 of his followers were taken to Pretoria, and there imprisoned.]

— AUG. **The Glen Grey Act.**—Glen Grey Land and Labour Bill passed by the Cape Parliament. [The



object of this Bill was to secure a re-survey of the Kaffir reservations, the land being divided into eight-acre allotments, to which individual title would be given, with right of descent from father to eldest son by law of entail, a simple system of local government, consisting of village and district councils, being set up, and the natives being encouraged to occupy their minds with such subjects as education, the making of bridges and roads, and various other local questions. In this way it was hoped both to prevent overcrowding and to turn idle men into industrious labourers, who alone would have the franchise. See 1895, May 14.]

— SEPT. **The franchise laws in the Transvaal.**—New franchise law passed in the Transvaal. Any Uitlander desiring franchise rights must first be registered; two years later he can secure naturalization; in another two years he becomes eligible for a seat in the second Volksraad, provided that he is 30 years of age; at the end of a further period of 10 years—making a total of 14—he can secure political rights if the majority of the burghers of his ward give their written approval, and provided the President and Executive assent. [On Oct. 19 Lord Ripon desired Sir H. B. Loch to press upon the Transvaal Government the view of Her Majesty's Government, that the qualifying period of residence for franchise should not exceed five years.] [See 1895, Aug. (a).]

— OCT.—NOV. **Swazi envoys to England.**—A deputation of six Swazi chiefs, sent by the Queen-Regent of Swaziland, arrive at Plymouth Oct. 27, and afterwards have an interview with Lord Ripon, in order to entreat

the Imperial Government to establish a British Protectorate over their country. They are received by the Queen at Windsor on Nov. 15, and leave Southampton on their return home Nov. 17. [As the Imperial Government were pledged under existing treaties not to establish any Protectorate over Swaziland without the consent of the Transvaal, the petition of the envoys had to be refused.]

— OCT. 3.—Railway from Vryburg to Mafeking completed. [See 1897, Nov. 4.]

— 27. **The name “Rhodesia.”**—At a banquet given in his honour at Capetown Dr. Jameson first speaks of Matabeleland and Mashonaland under the name of “Rhodesia.” [The name was officially adopted in 1895.]

— DEC. **A Boer Suzerainty over Swaziland.**—A new Swaziland Convention signed, confirming the Convention of Nov. 13, 1893, and assuring for the Transvaal a limited suzerain power over Swaziland. [The Government of the South African Republic was secured in “all rights and powers of protection, legislation, jurisdiction, and administration over Swaziland and the inhabitants thereof,” a Special Commissioner being appointed to superintend the administration. The young King, Bunu, was recognised as paramount chief, and it was agreed that the native laws, administered by the chiefs, should remain in force in regard to internal affairs, while the natives were guaranteed in their continued use and possession of their land and of all their grazing and agricultural rights. Should the Swazis refuse to sign the Convention it was to come into force without their consent. See 1895, Feb. 19.]

**1895. JAN. 26.—Mr. Kruger, the suzerainty, and the Kaiser.**—Speaking at a banquet given at Pretoria in honour of the German Emperor's birthday, President Kruger says:—

“You all know that in the year 1884 . . . I went to Europe and England in a friendly manner to endeavour to have that Convention altered, and I had that matter of the suzerainty altered. Previously I could not enter into any treaties with other countries without Her Majesty's consent, but they met me in a friendly spirit, and the treaty was altered. They relinquished the suzerainty, and I was free. I was pleased Her Majesty met me in such a friendly spirit, and gave us and our Republic our free pardon. After that I went through Europe, and amongst other places I visited Germany, where I was received by the Kaiser. I always thought before that our Republic was regarded as a child amongst other countries, but the Kaiser received me as the representative of a grown-up Republic. I was courteously treated, and was able to enter into a treaty with Germany. . . . I know I may count on the Germans in future, and I hope Transvaalers will do their best to strengthen and foster the friendship that exists between them. . . . I am very pleased to see you Germans here to do honour to your Kaiser. You have proved law-abiding citizens here, and I feel certain when the time comes for the Republic to wear still larger clothes you will have done much to bring it about. It is my wish to continue those peaceful relations, and I wish, also, to give Germany all the support a little child can give to a grown-up man. The time is coming for our friendship to be more firmly established than ever.”

— FEB. 19. **The Swaziland Convention.**—The Swazis having refused assent to the Convention of Dec., 1894, a proclamation is issued at Pretoria stating that the Transvaal Government now assume the administration of Swaziland. [Following on this proclamation the

young King Bunu was, on March 9, installed by a Transvaal commission Paramount Chief of Swaziland. See 1898, Oct. 6.]

- - 20. **Sir H. B. Loch's despairing cry.**—In a despatch to Lord Ripon, Sir H. B. Loch, who is on the point of leaving the Cape, makes a final effort to stir the home Government into action on the question of Zambaan and Umbegesa's countries. He says:—

“The influence of Her Majesty's Government, which was at one time paramount with these chiefs, is rapidly yielding to the pressure exercised by the representatives of the Republic, and both chiefs and people fully realise the fact that, while Her Majesty's Government is cognisant of what is passing, they have taken no steps to interfere with the authority assumed over them by Ferreira and others. If these countries are not to be entirely lost to Her Majesty's Government, I venture to observe that there should be no delay in taking the preliminary steps requisite for their annexation.”

[See March 22.]

- MARCH. — Reported that 500 squares miles of Mashonaland have been surveyed, and that in Matabeleland 1,070 farms, comprising 6,400,000 acres, have been pegged out and registered.

- - 15. **A Protectorate over Amatongaland.**—Lord Ripon informs Sir H. B. Loch that Her Majesty's Government have resolved to take Amatongaland under their protection. [The Protectorate was formally declared June 11, 1895. See 1896, June 29.]

- - 22. **The end of a long story: Mr. Kruger greatly astonished.**—Lord Ripon, writing to Sir H. B. Loch with respect to the territories of Zambaan and Umbegesa, recalls the fact that they fall exclusively within

the sphere of British influence, and says that "In view of the settlement of the Swaziland question, and in view of the fact that, apparently, some Boers are endeavouring to exercise control in those territories, and to obtain concessions from those chiefs," Her Majesty's Government have decided to annex them, and incorporate them with Zululand. [The formal proclamation was made April 27, when Mr. Kruger telegraphed concerning it:—

"The news is received by this Government with the greatest astonishment and regret. Taking into consideration previous negotiations, and the fact that the two territories are not of the least importance to Her Majesty's Government, this annexation cannot be regarded by this Government otherwise than as directed against this Republic. They must, therefore, regard it as an unfriendly act, against which they hereby protest."

He was told, in reply, that the annexation was irrevocable.]

— MAY 14.—Mr. Rhodes states in the Cape Parliament that the Glen Grey Act [see 1894, Aug.] already applies to 160,000 natives.

— JUNE. (a) **The Transvaal and the Orange Free State.**—Volksraad of Orange Free State passes a resolution declaring its willingness to consider any proposal from the Transvaal in favour of federal union with that State. [Subsequently a commission was appointed to assist the President in negotiating a closer union. See 1897, March 9.]

— (b) **Sir Hercules Robinson at the Cape.**—Sir Hercules Robinson arrives at the Cape as Governor and High Commissioner, in succession to Sir Henry Loch.

- - (c) **German trade through Walfisch Bay.**—In the Cape Assembly Mr. Rhodes opposes a proposal to levy customs on German trade through Walfisch Bay. [It would, he said, cause needless irritation in Germany, but as Damaraland interests were so largely in British hands he hoped that some day Germany would realise the uselessness of the territory to her, and would retire from it.]

- JULY 2. **Mr. Chamberlain Colonial Secretary.**—Mr. Chamberlain becomes Colonial Secretary.

- - 8. **The Delagoa Bay Railway.**—Official opening, at Pretoria, of the extension of the Delagoa Bay Railway from the Portuguese frontier. [At the banquet held on the following day, Mr. Kruger presiding, to celebrate the opening of the railway, Sir Hercules Robinson said Great Britain felt no petty jealousy of the good fortune of the Transvaal in respect of its material development. Great Britain had but one desire, namely, that the Transvaal should employ the powers conferred upon it to work its wealth in the manner which would best conduce to the welfare and happiness of all classes of its inhabitants. Two British ships had been sent to Delagoa Bay to take part in the festivities as a mark of goodwill towards a friendly State, and he had also received a cablegram from Mr. Chamberlain desiring him to convey publicly to the President the expression of his most friendly feeling towards the Government and inhabitants of the South African Republic. In another speech on the same occasion Sir Hercules said the Transvaal must remain a member of the South African family, with none but

family differences with the British colonies. That gathering tacitly acknowledged their community of interests.]

- AUG. (a) **The franchise laws in the Transvaal.**—Petition signed by 35,483 Uitlanders presented to the Volksraad in favour of an extension of the franchise. Request refused, memorialists being referred to the existing laws. [One of the members, Mr. Otto, said in his speech in the House: "He did not consider the Johannesburg people who had signed in that wonderful and fat book on the table were law-abiding, and he would have none of them. The Raad had frequently heard that if the franchise were not extended there would be trouble. He was tired of these constant threats. He would say, 'Come on and fight! Come on!'" ] [See 1897, Feb.]

- - (b) **The annexation of Bechuanaland: British South Africa Company's demand.**—British Bechuanaland Annexation Bill passed by a unanimous vote of the Cape Parliament. [In the course of the discussion on the Bill Mr. Rhodes stated that "the Imperial Government had spent altogether £2,500,000 upon the territory, and now offered it as a free gift with no obligations." He further said he looked forward to the establishment of a Cape Government up to Tanganyika, either by amalgamation or by federation, with one free tariff. The incorporation of British Bechuanaland with the Cape (formally carried into effect on Nov. 16, 1895) had the further important result of leading to a demand from the British South Africa Company that it should be followed up by the concession to them-

selves of the administration of the Bechuanaland Protectorate, which lay between Rhodesia and the now extended boundaries of Cape Colony. This Protectorate had been included in the Company's charter from the beginning, but the Company had not hitherto had there the administrative powers they now asked for. In the autumn of 1895 terms were drawn up and provisionally agreed to, on this basis, between Her Majesty's Government and the Company.

— SEPT. 6. **Bechuana chiefs and the British South Africa Company.**—The Bechuana chiefs, Khama, Sebele, and Bathoen arrive in England. [Their visit was inspired by the arrangements which were being made between the British Government and the British South Africa Company, as narrated under date August. They wished not only to pay their homage to the Queen but to ask that their territories should not be placed under the administration of the Chartered Company. It was eventually arranged that their territories, and those of one or two other chiefs, all lying to the north of the Molopo, should be constituted Native Reserves, and held by the chiefs under the protection of the Queen, an Imperial officer residing with each, and discharging certain judicial and other functions. The importation of liquor into these Reserves was to be prohibited, but hunting and other rights were to be continued. Each chief, however, was to give up sufficient land for the purposes of the Matabeleland Railway. Subject to these conditions the arrangements for transferring the administration of the Bechuanaland Protectorate were proceeded with, but they were



suddenly stopped by the Jameson Raid, and the administration remained, for the time being, in the hands of a Resident Commissioner under the High Commissioner. The next stage will be found under date 1898, Oct. 20.]

— OCT. 1. **The Vaal River Drifts question.** — In accordance with a proclamation by President Kruger, the Viljoens Drift and the Zand Drift, on the Vaal River, in the neighbourhood of Vereeniging, are closed for the importation of over-sea goods. [The leading points in this question, which nearly brought about war between Great Britain and the Transvaal, may be stated thus: In 1891 the Cape Government, by agreement with the Transvaal Government and the Netherlands Railway Company, advanced to the latter £600,000 for the construction of the railway from the Vaal River to Johannesburg, and secured the right to fix the traffic rates until Dec. 31, 1894, or until the completion of the Delagoa Bay-Pretoria line. The Cape Government fixed the rates at about 2'4*d.* per ton per mile; but at the beginning of 1895 (the agreement with the Cape Colony having then expired) the Netherlands Railway Company raised the rates on its 52 miles of railway from the Vaal River to Johannesburg to the practically prohibitive figure of nearly 8*d.* per ton per mile. This, of course, was done with the approval of President Kruger, who, it was alleged, aimed at diverting the over-sea traffic from the Cape Colony to the Delagoa Bay route, so as to injure the former by depriving it of customs, dues, and railway rates, and to benefit the latter by forcing the whole current of trade along it.

To meet these tactics the Rand importers arranged to remove their goods at the Vaal River, place them on wagons, and so bring them across the river to their destination, disregarding the Netherlands Railway altogether. This move was met in turn by the order of Mr. Kruger closing the drifts, and as the railway (apart from the question of rates) could not clear the traffic, a great block occurred, hundreds of wagons accumulating on the banks of the river. The Cape Government protested against the closing of the drifts, alleging an infraction of Article 13 of the London Convention of 1884—

“Nor will any prohibition be maintained or imposed on the importation into the South African Republic of any article coming from any part of Her Majesty’s dominions which shall not equally extend to the like article coming from any other place or country”—

inasmuch as the road was left open from the side of Natal; and they also alleged that the result of the action taken was to threaten the trade of the Colony with annihilation. Unavailing appeals were made to President Kruger, who refused to concede anything. The Imperial Government was then urged to intervene. On Nov. 1 Mr. Chamberlain asked if the Cape Government would bear half the gross cost of an expedition, should one be necessary, furnish a fair contingent of a fighting force, and give full and free use of railways for military purposes. If so a message might be sent to President Kruger that the Imperial Government must regard the closing of the drifts as a breach of the London Convention, and “an unfriendly action” which called for “the gravest remonstrance.” The Cape

Government agreed, the message was sent, the drifts were definitely re-opened on Nov. 5, the Transvaal engaging to issue no further proclamation on the subject without consulting Her Majesty's Government, and so the incident closed.]

- - 14. **Durban to Pretoria.**—Through line from Durban to Pretoria opened.

- Nov. 15.—British Bechuanaland Border Police, no longer required by the Imperial Government, are disbanded at Mafeking and Pitsani Potlogo, near the Transvaal border. [Many of them entered the Chartered Company's service.]

- - 20. **The grievances of the Uitlanders.**—Mr. Lionel Phillips, in his speech at the opening of the new Chamber of Mines at Johannesburg, enumerates the grievances of the Uitlanders, and says:—

“All we want in this country is purity of administration and an equitable share and voice in its affairs. . . . Nothing is further from my heart than a desire to see an upheaval, which would be disastrous from every point of view. . . . But it is a mistake to imagine that this much-maligned community, which consists, anyhow, of a majority of men born of free-men, will consent indefinitely to remain subordinate to the minority in this country, and that they will for ever allow their lives, property, and liberty to be subject to its arbitrary will.”

- DEC. 26. **Mr. Kruger and the tortoise.**—Mr. Kruger visits Bronkhorst Spruit, and, on returning to Pretoria, makes a speech, in the course of which he says:—

“I went off on a pleasure trip, and never on my visits have I met with more law-abiding citizens than my burghers. I was

often asked about the threatened risings, and I said, 'Wait until the time comes. Take a tortoise. If you want to kill it you must wait until it puts out its head; then you can cut it off.'"

- - 27. **Mr. Charles Leonard's manifesto.**—Mr. Charles Leonard, president of the Transvaal National Union, issues a manifesto in anticipation of a public meeting convened for Jan. 6 to discuss the situation in the Transvaal. He says the three objects of the Union are (1) the maintenance of the independence of the Republic; (2) the securing of equal rights; and (3) the redress of grievances. After referring to the contemptuous way in which the demand of the Uitlanders for the franchise has been rejected the manifesto proceeds:—

"We are the vast majority in this State. We own more than half of the land, and, taken in the aggregate, we own at least nine-tenths of the property in this country; yet in all matters affecting our lives, our liberties, and our properties we have absolutely no voice. . . . Taxation is imposed upon us without any representation whatever. That taxation is wholly inequitable (*a*) because a much greater amount is levied from the people than is required for the needs of the Government; (*b*) because it is either class-legislation pure and simple, or, by the selection of the subjects, though nominally universal, it is made to fall upon our shoulders; and (*c*) because the necessities of life are unduly burdened. Expenditure is not controlled. . . . Vast sums are squandered, while the Secret Service Fund is a dark mystery to everybody. . . . The Legislature in this country is the supreme power, apparently uncontrolled by any fixed constitution. The chance will of a majority elected by one-third of the people is capable of dominating us in every relation of life, and . . . those who hold power are, . . . as a rule, not educated men, and their passions are played on by unscrupulous adventurers.

. . . When we look to the debates of the last few years we find all through a spirit of hostility, an endeavour . . . to repress the publication of the truth . . . to prevent us from holding public meetings, to interfere with the courts, and to keep us in awe by force. . . . Coming to the Executive Government, we find there is no true responsibility to the people. . . . The President's will is supreme, and he . . . has been the author of every Act directed against the liberties of the people. . . . President Kruger has expressly supported every Act by which we and our children have been deprived by progressive steps of the right to acquire franchise, by which taxation has been imposed on us almost exclusively, and by which the right and the liberty of the Press and the right of public meeting have been attacked. . . . The administration of justice is producing the gravest unrest. . . . The right to trial by jurymen who are our peers is denied to us. . . . When we come to administration we find that there is the grossest extravagance. . . . The public audit seems a farce. . . . The administration of the public service is scandalous. Bribery and corruption are rampant. . . . We have the President openly stating that acceptance of presents was wholly moral. . . . Enormous sums of money have been spent—some to produce illegitimate results, some to guard against fresh attacks upon vested rights. . . . The administration of native affairs is a gross scandal, and a source of immense loss and danger to the community. . . . The Government has allowed petty tribes to be goaded into rebellion. We have had to pay the cost of the 'wars'; while the wretched victims of their policy have had their tribes broken up, sources of native labour have been destroyed, and large numbers of prisoners have been kept in gaol for something like 18 months without trial. . . . We have had revelations of repulsive cruelty on the part of field-cornets. . . . The Government has set the seal of its approval on the acts of these officials. . . . The great public that subscribes the bulk of the revenue is virtually denied all benefit of State aid in education. . . . Railways are entirely

in the hands of a corporation domiciled in Holland. This corporation . . . is charging us outrageous tariffs. . . . We are liable, as guarantors, for the whole of the debt. Lines have been built entirely on our credit, and yet we have no say and no control. . . . The powers controlling this railway are flooding the country with Hollanders. . . . The policy of the Government in regard to taxation may be practically described as protection without production. . . . No sooner does any commodity become absolutely essential to the community than some harpy endeavours to obtain a concession for its supply. . . . These monopolies tend to paralyse our industries. . . . The country is rich, and under proper government could be developed marvellously, but it cannot stand the strain of the present exactions. . . . The original policy of the Government is based upon intense hostility to the English-speaking population. . . . It seems the set purpose of the Government to repress the growth of industry, to tax it at every turn, to prevent the working classes from settling here. . . . We now have openly the policy of force revealed to us. £250,000 is to be spent on the completing of a fort at Pretoria; £100,000 is to be spent upon a fort to terrorise the inhabitants of Johannesburg; large orders are sent to Krupp's for big guns—Maxims have been ordered, and German officers are coming to drill the burghers. . . . Why should the Government endeavour to keep us in subjection to unjust laws by the power of the sword instead of making themselves live in the heart of the people by a broad policy of justice?"

The manifesto concludes as follows:—

"We want (1) the establishment of this Republic as a true Republic; (2) a Grondwet or Constitution which shall be framed by competent persons selected by representatives of the whole people, and framed on lines laid down by them—a Constitution which shall be safeguarded against hasty alteration; (3) an equitable franchise law and fair representation; (4) equality of the Dutch and English languages; (5) re-

sponsibility of the Legislature to the heads of the great departments; (6) removal of religious disabilities; (7) independence of the courts of justice, with adequate and secured remuneration of the judges; (8) liberal and comprehensive education; (9) efficient civil service, with adequate provision for pay and pension; (10) free trade in South African products."

- - 29. (a) **Mr. Chamberlain's warning.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs to Sir Hercules Robinson:—

"It has been suggested, although I do not think it probable, that an endeavour might be made to force matters at Johannesburg to a head by someone in the service of the Company advancing from Bechuanaland Protectorate with police. Were this to be done I should have to take action under Articles 22 and 8 of the Charter. Therefore, if necessary, but not otherwise, remind Rhodes of these Articles, and intimate to him that in your opinion he would not have my support, and point out the consequences which would follow."

- - - (b) **The Jameson Raid.**—Dr. Jameson, Administrator of the British South Africa Company, starts with 372 officers and men of the Mashonaland Mounted Police from Pitsani Potlogo (in the Bechuanaland Protectorate, three and a half miles from the Transvaal border, 28 miles north of Mafeking, and about 170 miles from Johannesburg), on his raid of the Transvaal. [A rising in Johannesburg had been planned for some months, with the idea of compelling the Transvaal Government to concede the reforms which had been petitioned for in vain. The intention was that Dr. Jameson and a force of about 1,500 men, with 1,000 spare rifles and ammunition, should be on the border awaiting a signal from Johannesburg,

when he should go to the help of the reformers there in getting possession, first of that place, and then of the Pretoria arsenal, where a large supply of arms was stored. A letter had been prepared, signed by Charles Leonard, Lionel Phillips, Francis Rhodes, John Hays Hammond, and George Farrar, and addressed to Dr. Jameson, explaining the critical position of affairs, stating that "public feeling is in a condition of smouldering discontent," that the Transvaal Government "has called into existence all the elements necessary for armed conflict," pointing out the dangers that would arise when "thousands of unarmed men, women, and children of our race will be at the mercy of well-armed Boers, while property of enormous value will be in the greatest peril," and adding:—

"It is under these circumstances that we feel constrained to call upon you to come to our aid should a disturbance arise here. The circumstances are so extreme that we cannot but believe that you and the men under you will not fail to come to the rescue of men so situated. We guarantee any expense that may reasonably be incurred by you in helping us, and ask you to believe that nothing but the sternest necessity has prompted this appeal."

This letter, as subsequent inquiry showed, had been in Dr. Jameson's possession for some weeks, and the date, "December 28," was added when it was telegraphed to London for publication on Jan. 1. The elaborate arrangements miscarried, however, inasmuch as Dr. Jameson started when the reformers in Johannesburg were wholly unprepared for him, having completed neither their plans nor their armament, and he



did so notwithstanding urgent messages from them begging postponement until he was called on.]

— 30. (a) **Dr. Jameson on the way.**—Dr. Jameson is joined at Malmani, about 40 miles within the Transvaal border, by Col. Grey and 122 of the Bechuanaland Border Police from Mafeking. [Jameson's troops, who had all been in the service of the British South Africa Company, were well mounted and armed with Lee-Metford carbines, and had with them 120 rounds of ammunition per man, one 12½-pounder, two 7-pounder field-guns, and eight maxims.]

— (b) **Consternation in Johannesburg.**—News received in Johannesburg that Dr. Jameson has started, and has crossed the border, creates great consternation among the reformers owing to their unpreparedness. Active measures at once taken by Reform Committee for the defence of the town, but it is found that there are fewer than 3,000 rifles for 20,000 men.

— (c) **Sir Hercules Robinson intervenes.**—British Agent at Pretoria, Sir Jacobus de Wet, sends three "very" or "most urgent" telegrams in succession to the High Commissioner, Capetown, saying, among other things, that the President has news of the approach of Dr. Jameson, that he regards it as a serious breach of the Convention, that he is surprised Her Majesty's Government should allow such serious movements to go on unchecked, and he hopes immediate steps will be taken to stop them. In the third message Sir Jacobus says:—

"The President has asked for the intervention of Germany

and France, and the Consuls have cabled the request to their respective Governments."

The High Commissioner replies to the second telegram:—

"Send at once a thoroughly trustworthy mounted express with the following message from me to Dr. Jameson to meet him on the road: 'Her Majesty's Government entirely disapprove your conduct in invading Transvaal with armed force. Your action has been repudiated. You are ordered to retire at once from country, and will be held personally responsible for the consequences of your unauthorised and most improper proceeding.'"

[On being informed by the High Commissioner that he had repudiated the advance, and ordered the force to return immediately, Mr. Chamberlain replied:—

"Your action is cordially approved. I presume that Mr. C. J. Rhodes will co-operate with you in recalling Administrator of Matabeleland. Keep me fully informed of political situation in all its aspects; it is not clearly understood here. Leave no stone unturned to prevent mischief."]

— — — (*d*) **Germans appeal to their Emperor.**—Germans in Pretoria send a telegram to the Emperor William imploring his immediate intervention to avert impending misery and bloodshed.

— — 31. (*a*) **The defence of Johannesburg.**—Defence measures in Johannesburg continued. Relief Committee formed, £80,000 being subscribed in a few minutes.

— — — (*b*) **Negotiations.**—On the instigation of the editor of *Land en Volk* negotiations are opened between the Reform Committee and the Executive Council for a settlement of the difficulties, on the basis of the Transvaal Government making concessions.

— — — (c) **Mr. Kruger's proclamation.**—Proclamation by Mr. Kruger received in Johannesburg. He warns the inhabitants to remain within the pale of the law, promises protection to those who keep the peace, and adds :—

“The Government is still prepared to take into consideration all grievances that may be laid before it in a proper manner, and to submit the same to the people of the land without delay for treatment.”

— — — (d) **Further orders to Dr. Jameson.**—Acting on instructions from Mr. Chamberlain Sir H. Robinson makes further efforts to recall Dr. Jameson.

— — — (e) **Mr. Chamberlain to President Kruger.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs to President Kruger :—

“Regret to hear of Jameson's action. Sir Hercules Robinson has sent messengers to call him back. Can I co-operate with you further in this emergency in endeavouring to bring about a peaceful arrangement which is essential to all interests in South Africa, and which would be promoted by the concessions that I am assured you are ready to make?”

[Mr. Kruger replied :—“Thank you for your friendly telegram. I shall lay it before the Executive Council.”]

— — — (e) **Germany proposes to intervene.**—The Foreign Secretary in Berlin telegraphs to the German Consul in Pretoria that in case of emergency, but then only after consulting President Kruger, and for the sole purpose of protecting the Consulate and the lives and property of German subjects, he should requisition the services of a landing party of not more than 50 men from the German cruiser *See Adler*, their services to be employed as long as the disturbances continue. The German Minister at Lisbon is, at the same time, directed

to inform the Portuguese Government that, in landing these troops at Delagoa Bay, Germany confidently counts on their assent to such measure, as it is intended to serve only humane purposes. [As the "emergency" did not arise, no disturbances occurring, the German troops were not landed. See, however, Jan. 8.]

1896. JAN. 1. (a) **Mr. Chamberlain's attitude.**—Sir Jacobus de Wet telegraphs to the Reform Committee, Johannesburg:—

"I have received a proclamation from His Excellency the High Commissioner, commanding all British subjects to abstain from countenancing or assisting Dr. Jameson in his unlawful proceedings. His Honour the President has this night received a cable from Mr. Chamberlain also expressing strongest disapproval of Dr. Jameson's action, and presumably action of British subjects, against law and order. Reports received here by the Government of armed force marching on Pretoria. As Her Majesty's Agent I call upon you in the name of Her Majesty's Government to desist from armed demonstration and to pause, and in the name of humanity to think of the horrors of a civil war and the shedding of blood and sacrifice of probably many innocent lives by otherwise law-abiding British subjects against the will of their own Government. I desire again to invite your serious attention to the fact that negotiations are going on between Mr. Chamberlain and His Honour the President. I am convinced the Government is prepared to meet any committee or deputation at any time to discuss matters. In view of this and of negotiations with Mr. Chamberlain I advise you to follow a constitutional course."

- - (b) **The negotiations.**—A deputation from Johannesburg meet a Government Commission at Pretoria. They are informed that the High Com-

missioner has offered his services with the view of bringing about a peaceful settlement, that the Government of the South African Republic have accepted his offer, that they will take no hostile steps against Johannesburg if that town will take none against the Government, and that the question of grievances will be earnestly considered. The deputation concur.

— — — (c) **“Jameson must be mad.”**—Sir Hercules Robinson telegraphs to Mr. Chamberlain saying (*inter alia*): “Have seen C. J. Rhodes, who assures me Jameson acted without his authority.” [To this Mr. Chamberlain replied:—

“Glad to hear of Rhodes’ repudiation of Jameson, who must be mad. I see no reason for Rhodes to resign. Telegraph direct to editors of papers in Johannesburg, Pretoria, and Bloemfontein, that you, I, and Rhodes repudiate Jameson’s action.”]

— — (d) **Jameson’s fight with the Boers.**—Declaring that it is now too late to turn back, Dr. Jameson pushes forward with his force and reaches Krugersdorp, 20 miles west of Johannesburg. There he meets a Boer force of about 1,900 men, under General Cronje, sent to oppose his advance, and severe fighting goes on from 3 p.m. to 11 p.m.

— — 2. (a) **Dr. Jameson surrenders.**—In the early morning Dr. Jameson tries to get away from the Boers, and manages to reach Vlakfontein (Doornkop), but is again attacked, and, being overpowered, while his men are exhausted after their prolonged efforts, he surrenders at 9.30 a.m., “on the guarantee that the lives of all will be spared.” He and his companions are taken off as

prisoners to Pretoria. [His casualties had been 16 killed and 30 wounded.]

— — — (b) **The orders to stop.**—Sir Hercules Robinson telegraphs to Mr. Chamberlain, with whom he has been in constant telegraphic communication, that Dr. Jameson received the messages sent to him to stop, but disregarded them.

— — 3. (a) **The German Emperor's congratulations.**—The German Emperor sends the following telegram to President Kruger:—

“I express to you my sincere congratulations that, without appealing to the help of friendly Powers, you and your people have succeeded in repelling with your own forces the armed bands which had broken into your country, and in maintaining the independence of your country against foreign oppression.”

[This telegram excited an intense feeling of indignation in Great Britain. It was regarded as amounting to an act of hostility, as well as an encroachment on British rights, while it begged the whole and much-discussed question as to the independence of the Transvaal. The Government significantly announced that they would maintain the Convention of 1884, which reserved to them the foreign relations of the Transvaal, they ordered two regiments of troops to South Africa, and took the further measures referred to under date Jan. 8.]

— — — (b) **The hour of victory.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs to Mr. Kruger:—

“It is rumoured here that you have ordered the prisoners to be shot. I do not believe it, and rely on your generosity in the hour of victory.”

— — — (c) **Disclaimer from Mr. Rhodes.**—Mr. Rhodes telegraphs to the British South Africa directors in London:—

“Mr. Rhodes says Dr. Jameson started without his knowledge or consent. Dr. Jameson had strongly-worded letter from inhabitants of Johannesburg. . . . Dr. Jameson took bit in mouth and bolted off.”

— — 4. (a) **The High Commissioner at Pretoria.**—Sir Hercules Robinson arrives at Pretoria in order to negotiate a settlement.

— — — (b) **Mr. Chamberlain and the grievances.**—Mr. Chamberlain sends a long telegram to Sir H. Robinson on the grievances, directing that they shall be pressed on Mr. Kruger’s attention. [This telegram was followed on the same day by an exceptionally long despatch to Sir Hercules from Mr. Chamberlain, dealing with the recent course of events in the Transvaal, discussing in detail the subject of grievances, and offering various suggestions—to be laid before Mr. Kruger—for their proper settlement.]

— — 5. (a) **Mr. Kruger’s reply to the German Emperor.**—Announced from Berlin that President Kruger has sent the following telegram to the Emperor:—

“I testify to your Majesty my very deep and heartfelt thanks for your Majesty’s sincere congratulations. With God’s help we do hope to do everything further that is possible for the holding of our dearly-bought independence and the stability of our beloved Republic.”

— — — (b) **The execution of Jameson demanded.**—Sir Hercules Robinson telegraphs to Mr. Chamberlain:—

“Boers show a tendency to get out of hand and to demand execution of Jameson.”

— 6. (a) **“Johannesburg must lay down arms.”**—  
Sir Hercules Robinson telegraphs:—

“President of South Africa Republic announced decision of Government to be that Johannesburg must lay down arms unconditionally as a precedent to any discussion and consideration of grievances.”

Ultimatum states disarmament must take place within 24 hours.

— — — (b) **Mr. Rhodes and the Premiership.**—Mr. Rhodes resigns the Premiership of Cape Colony. [He was succeeded by Sir J. Gordon Sprigg.]

— 7. **Why Johannesburg surrendered.**—The Reform Committee pass the following resolution:—

“The Reform Committee in Johannesburg, having seriously considered the ultimatum of the Government of the South African Republic conveyed to them through Her Britannic Majesty’s Agent at Pretoria, in a telegram dated 6th instant, to the effect that Johannesburg must lay down its arms as a condition precedent to a discussion and consideration of grievances, have unanimously decided to comply with this demand, and have given instructions to the citizens employed by this Committee for maintaining good order to lay down their arms. In coming to this determination the Committee rely upon the Government that it will maintain law and order and protect life and property in this town at this critical juncture. The Committee have been actuated by a paramount desire to do everything possible to ensure the safety of Dr. Jameson and his men, to advance the amicable discussion of terms of settlement with the Government, and to support Her Majesty’s High Commissioner in his efforts in this respect. The Committee would draw the attention of the Government of this Republic to the presence of armed burgher forces in the immediate vicinity of this town, and would earnestly desire that these forces be removed in order to avoid all risk of any disturbance of the public peace.”



Buller reads to Sir Charles Warren's force a message from the Queen expressing admiration of the work of the troops during the past trying week.

— — — (b).—Lord Carrington, speaking at Maidstone, says the nation has set its teeth in grim earnest, and will not rest until the invading Boers have been driven out of South African England.

— — 30. (a) **Parliament and the war.**—Parliament re-assembles. [In the Lords, Lord Kimberley urged that it was the duty of the Government to ensure the efficiency of the defences of the Empire, and to bring about a speedy termination of the conflict. Lord Salisbury said he was glad no immediate inquiry had been proposed, as he did not think such investigation should take place until those concerned were in a position to come forward. In the Commons, Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman announced the resolve of the Opposition to support the vigorous prosecution of the war, in order that the integrity of the Queen's dominions might be vindicated. Mr. Balfour said the Government had no desire to conceal their shortcomings, but they would endeavour to discharge their responsibilities so long as they retained the confidence of the House and the nation.]

— — — (b).—States of Jersey vote £5,000 for purchase of battery of six field guns to be presented to British Government for use in South Africa. [Later on it was found the battery could not be provided in time, and, by arrangement with the War Office, the gift was altered to one of £5,000 for the purchase of machine-guns and carriages.]

— FEB. 1. **The defence of Natal.**—A Blue Book issued to-day throws light on the reasons why the plan originally fixed upon by the military authorities for concentrating a force on the Orange River, with a view to the invasion of the Free State, was changed, for political considerations, to one of defending Natal from invasion, with the consequent concentration there, instead; the engagement at Glencoe, and the locking up of Sir George White and his 10,000 men in Ladysmith. The correspondence shows that on May 25 Sir A. Milner telegraphed to Mr. Chamberlain that Natal was uneasy at the Boer preparations, and that Sir W. F. Hely-Hutchinson had told the Prime Minister that the Natal Government ought to give the British Government an unwavering support. The Prime Minister had replied that this support would gladly be given, but he feared the consequences to Natal should the British Government draw back after all. Sir A. Milner, on learning this, telegraphed to the Governor:—

“You can tell Minister from me that it is out of the question that any invasion of Natal should be tolerated by Her Majesty’s Government. Such an event is highly improbable, I think; but Natal would be defended with the whole force of the Empire, if it occurred, and redress would be exacted for any injury to her.”

This answer was approved by Mr. Chamberlain on May 28. On June 17 the Natal Ministry passed a minute in which they said that, should war break out, Natal would probably become the field of operations, and as the Colony would, of course, give its loyal and active support to Her Majesty’s Government, it

“would thereafter be regarded by the South African Republic and the Orange Free State with suspicions and unfriendly feelings.”

The Ministry therefore thought that South Africa ought not to be exposed to war by any act of Her Majesty's Government without their opinions having been heard. On June 26 Sir Alfred wrote :—

“I can assure Ministers that Her Majesty's Government are entirely alive to the situation, and will exhaust every peaceable effort to bring about a satisfactory settlement.”

On July 25 the Ministry adopted another minute in which, referring to a communication received by them on the previous day, they expressed “extreme surprise” at learning that in the event of a sudden outbreak of hostilities

“it would not be possible for the military authorities in Natal, with the garrison and Colonial forces now available, to effectually defend the northern portion of the Colony. Ministers cannot regard the defence of the Dundee and Navigation Collieries and other collieries in the vicinity, and the holding of the line of railway as far as the Ingagane Bridge, as being a fulfilment of the promise that Natal would be defended with the whole force of the Empire. Ministers therefore ask that, if Her Majesty's Government have any reason to fear that the present negotiations may not result in a peaceful settlement, such steps may be at once taken as may be necessary for the effectual defence of the whole of the Colony.”

Mr. Chamberlain asked whether, if Laing's Nek were occupied, Colonial troops would be sent with British ; and the Ministers, on Aug. 8, welcomed the decision to reinforce the troops, but strongly deprecated the calling out of the Colonial forces prior to any outbreak of hostilities. On Sept. 6 the Ministers sent an urgent

message asking that sufficient troops should be despatched to Natal immediately, and speaking of a seizure of Laing's Nek and the destruction of the northern portion of the railway as a "catastrophe." On Sept. 9 Mr. Chamberlain informed the Governor that 5,700 troops from India would arrive in five weeks' time, and reinforcements from England in six. On Sept. 13 the Governor telegraphed to Mr. Chamberlain that Sir W. P. Symons thought the occupation of Laing's Nek and the locking up of troops for defensive purposes would be injudicious, and that he could occupy with safety only as far as Glencoe Junction with his then forces, or Newcastle after the arrival of the Manchester Regiment. The Ministers thought it extremely unlikely the Boers would commence hostilities, and they were, on Sept. 22, averse to calling out the Volunteers to occupy Newcastle; but on learning of the tenor of the Boer replies they agreed to the advance to Glencoe on the 25th. Sir W. P. Symons was, on the 24th, doubtful about the expediency of occupying Newcastle. The High Commissioner agreed with him. The Governor of Natal telegraphed on the 25th that he would not press for the occupation of Newcastle, but if it were taken by the Boers the effect on the Natal Dutch might be serious. On Oct. 9 (the day of the Boer ultimatum) there was an interview between the Governor and Sir George White about the occupation of Glencoe. The General thought it a dangerous position, and that, from a military point of view, the troops should be withdrawn to Ladysmith. On being consulted, Sir A. Hunter and Col. Duff (Assistant

Military Secretary) agreed, but Sir Penn Symons was said to be quite confident about the troops at Glencoe while the Governor, whose primary object in occupying Glencoe—with the concurrence of Sir P. Symons—had been to make sure of the coal supply, thought withdrawal, now the troops were there, would involve grave political results. Finally—

“Sir A. Hunter, on being again consulted, said that, whilst retained his opinion as to the military situation, it was (Glencoe having been occupied) a case of balancing drawbacks, and advised that under the circumstances the troops be retained at Glencoe. Sir G. White decided to adopt this course.”

— 3. (a) **Mafeking greets the Queen.**—The Queen receives from the Mayor of Mafeking the following telegram, dated Jan. 27, forwarded by runner:—

“Mafeking, upon the hundredth day of the siege, sends loyal devotion to your Majesty, and assurance of continued resolve to maintain your Majesty’s supremacy in this town.”

— (b).—The Honourable Artillery Company’s contingent of the City Imperial Volunteers—7 officers and 120 men—leave London for the front.

— 4.—Gen. MacDonald crosses Modder River and occupies Koodoosberg, forming entrenchments.

— 5.—Lord Roberts telegraphs to the Lord Mayo heartily welcoming as comrades the City Imperial Volunteers, who are, he says, a valuable addition to our force.

— 5-7. **The third try for Ladysmith.**—Gen. Buller’s third attempt to relieve Ladysmith. Gen. Lyttelton crosses the Tugela at the same time that a frontal attack is made. He attacks and occupies Vaal Kranz.

but the position is found to be untenable, and the British are withdrawn across the river.

- - 7.—Announced that Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener have left Capetown for the front.

- - 8. (a) **The strength of the British forces.**—In the House of Commons Mr. Wyndham states that within the next two or three weeks there would be a total of 194,000 effective troops in South Africa. There were 2,283 officers and men missing.

- - - (b).—Unsuccessful attack by Boers on Koodoosberg.

- - 9. (a) **Rhodesia.**—North-Eastern Rhodesia Order in Council published. It brings under the administration of the British South Africa Company the north-eastern portion of British Central Africa adjoining the British Protectorate of Nyassaland.

- - - (b).—Lord Roberts arrives at Modder River.

- - - (c).—Gen. MacDonald's force recalled from Koodoosberg.

- - - (d').—Supplementary estimates issued for the additional number of men and the money required for the operations in South Africa; £13,000,000 and 120,000 men asked for.

- - 15. (a) **The relief of Kimberley.**—Relief of Kimberley by Gen. French. [Summoned from the southern frontier on Feb. 11, Gen. French marched across country, and, on the following day, with his Cavalry Division, successfully seized the crossing of the Reit River at Dekiel's Drift, being followed by the Sixth and Seventh Divisions, which encamped on the

east bank. On the 13th Gen. French, leaving Dekiel' Drift with three Brigades of Cavalry, Horse Artillery and Mounted Infantry, including several Colonial contingents, started to seize a crossing on the Modd River 25 miles distant. He forced a passage at Klip' Drift, and occupied the hills on the north of the river capturing three of the enemy's laagers. In the meantime Col. Gordon, of the 15th Hussars, who, with his Brigade, had made a feint on Rondeval Drift, 5 miles west of Klip's, had seized it and another adjoining drift, and captured two more of the Boer laagers. Gen. French's performance was afterwards described by Lord Roberts as a brilliant one, considering the prevalence of excessive heat and a blinding dust storm, while owing to the rapidity of his movements, he met with very slight resistance. Kimberley was reached on the 15th, and the siege, which had lasted since Oct. 1, was brought to an end, Gen. French and his men being received with immense enthusiasm. Gen. French afterwards cleared off the Boers on the south of Kimberley. [Mr. Cecil Rhodes was in Kimberley throughout the whole period of the siege, taking an active part in the defensive measures, and doing much to encourage the garrison and people.]

- - - (b) **Pursuit of Cronje.**—Taken completely by surprise by the rapidity of Gen. French's movements the Boers under Gen. Cronje evacuate Magersfontein and Spytfontein on the 15th, and retreat toward Bloemfontein with their 1,000 wagons. [They were at once hotly pursued by Gen. Kelly-Kenny, and the pursuit was followed up by the main body of Lord

Roberts's army. On the 20th Cronje and his men laagered near Paardeberg, where they were surrounded and subjected to a terrible bombardment by the British, who also stopped the enemy's reinforcements.]

- - 17. **The struggle for Ladysmith.**—Gen. Buller advances on Monte Cristo Hill.

- - 18.—Gen. Buller moves round Boers' left flank and captures Monte Cristo Hill, driving enemy across the Tugela.

- - 19.—Gen. Buller takes Hlangwane Hill.

- - 20.—Colenso occupied.

- - 21.—Fifth Division cross the Tugela.

- - 22. (a) **Canada and the war.**—Lord Roberts telegraphs from Paardeberg to Lord Minto, Governor of Canada, speaking of the "admirable service" done by the Canadian Regiment since its arrival in South Africa, and of its "conspicuous gallantry."

- - - (b).—Gen. Buller advances on Grobler's Kloof. Heavy fighting.

- - 23. **Mr. Rhodes on the war.**—Speaking at a meeting of the De Beers Company, at Kimberley, Mr. Rhodes says that Europeans considered it a puzzle how the war had arisen. In his opinion the Transvaal and Orange Free State were not Republics, but oligarchies, and there had long been a conspiracy to seize British South Africa. He continued:—

"Each of the two Governments constitutes a small political gang, who have humbugged the poor Dutchmen by appealing to their patriotism, and who divide the spoils among their coteries. The Afrikanders for 20 years have been working for an independent South Africa, and Mr. Reitz, years and



years ago, avowed that the only ambition of his life was drive England out of Africa."

- - 24.—Attack by Gen. Buller on Railway Hill repulsed by Boers.

- - 25-6.—Finding the passage of Langewach Spruit commanded by strong entrenchments, Gen Buller decides on another passage. He relays pontoon bridge, and once more crosses. Reported that enemy occupy strongly entrenched positions, and that severe fighting may be expected before Ladysmith is reached.

- - 26. **India and the war.**—Lumsden's Horse—the force of Volunteers, 250 strong, raised in India for service in South Africa—sail from Calcutta amid scene of great enthusiasm. The Viceroy attends in state, and delivers a stirring speech, in which he says :

"I doubt not that had we been willing to enrol 1,000 instead of 250, they would have been forthcoming; that had not one thousand, but many thousand, Volunteers been called for from the native races, who vie with us in fervent loyalty to the same Sovereign, they would have sprung joyfully to arms from the Hindu or Mussulman chief of ancient lineage and great possessions to the martial Sikh or fighting Pathan. You, however, are the 250 who have been chosen, the first body of Volunteers from India that has ever had a chance of fighting for the Queen outside these shores. . . . You carry a great responsibility with you; for it will fall to you, in the face of great danger, perhaps even in the face of death, to sustain the honour of the country which is now sending you forth, and of the race from which you have sprung. . . . But you will have this consolation, that you are engaged on a glorious and, as I believe, a righteous mission, not to aggrandise an Empire, nor merely to repel an unscrupulous invasion of the Queen's territory, but to plant liberty, justice, and equal rights upon the soil of a South Africa henceforward to be united under the British and no other flag."

- - 27. (a) **Surrender of Cronje.**—Lord Roberts telegraphs from Paardeberg announcing the unconditional surrender, at daylight, of General Cronje and all his force, and adding: "I hope Her Majesty's Government will consider this event satisfactory, occurring as it does on the anniversary of Majuba." [Cronje's force represented 4,300 men.]

- - - (b) **The storming of Pieters Hill.**—Gen. Buller storms Pieters Hill, the main Boer position between Ladysmith and the Tugela. It is "magnificently carried," as he states in his despatch, "by the South Lancashire Regiment, while the enemy are scattered in all directions."

- - - (c) **Canada and the war.**—The Governor of Canada receives the following telegram from Mr. Chamberlain with respect to the fighting at Paardeberg:—

"Her Majesty the Queen desires you to express to the people of the Dominion her admiration of the gallant conduct of her Canadian troops in the late engagement, and her sorrow at the loss of so many brave men."

- - 28. **Relief of Ladysmith.**—Lord Dundonald, with 300 men of the Imperial Light Horse and the Natal Carabineers, marches on Ladysmith, finding that since the engagement of the previous day the enemy has retreated. They enter Ladysmith in the evening, and are received there with intense delight by garrison and people. [It was stated that Ladysmith might have held out another month or six weeks, but the four months' siege had led to privations which were all the more severe by reason of the terrible prevalence of

disease. Since Jan. 15 there had been over 200 deaths from disease alone. Altogether as many as 8,424 passed through the hospitals, including 1,710 cases of enteric fever, and the daily average under treatment was between 1,500 and 2,000. The news of the relief of Ladysmith was the occasion of great rejoicing throughout the British Empire. Among the messages of congratulation received by the Queen was one from the Emperor of Japan. So complete had been Gen. Buller's final success that he was subsequently able to report that the surrounding country was clear of Boers.]

— MARCH 1. **The Queen's congratulations.**—Announced that the Queen has despatched the following telegrams:—

To Lord Roberts: "Accept for yourself and all under your command my warmest congratulations on this splendid news."

To Sir Redvers Buller: "I have heard with the deepest concern of the heavy losses sustained by my brave Irish soldiers. I desire to express my sympathy and my admiration of the splendid fighting qualities which they have exhibited throughout these trying operations."

[This gracious message respecting the Irish troops was followed on March 8 by the following special Army Order:—

"Her Majesty the Queen is pleased to order that in future, upon St. Patrick's Day, all ranks in Her Majesty's Irish regiments shall wear, as a distinction, a sprig of shamrock in their headdress, to commemorate the gallantry of her Irish soldiers during the recent battles in South Africa."]

— 3. **The colonies invited to help.**—Premier of New South Wales announces receipt of a message from Mr. Chamberlain stating that Her Majesty's Govern-

ment require from the Australian colonies an additional force of 2,000 men similar to the Bushmen, for general service anywhere in South Africa. The new force will "probably be employed outside Natal and Cape Colony." [The peculiar significance of this intimation lay in the fact of the Australian colonies being now invited to send help to South Africa. When, on Oct. 8, the offers of assistance from the colonies were accepted to a limited extent there was, in the circumstances of the acceptance, a suggestion almost of an act of maternal condescension on the part of Great Britain, rather than of any serious conviction that such assistance was really needed. But in the six months that have since elapsed the conditions have entirely changed. Not only has the real gravity of the campaign been fully realised, but the splendid bravery and the great practical value of the Colonial forces have been repeatedly and most conspicuously proved, whilst the idea of the unity of the Empire has been strengthened by the campaign to an extent that the most sanguine and the most imaginative of English or Colonial patriots could not have dreamed of half a year previously. Thus, in helping to do the Empire's work in South Africa, Australasia and Canada have brought about, also, a complete revolution in their own relationship to the Mother Country, and enabled Great Britain to stand on quite a different footing among the nations of the world. The request now made for help was taken up with a renewed outburst of enthusiasm, as shown by the fact that in Victoria alone there were soon 4,000 applications for enrolment, although only 2,000 men had been asked for from

the whole of Australia. New Zealand had previously arranged to supply 500 rough-riders, forming her fifth contingent, and increasing her total contribution to the forces in South Africa to nearly 1,600 men and horses. Victoria's total contribution of £67,000 to the various war funds, up to March 11, may be regarded as a fair sample of the further outpouring of Colonial generosity in the cause of the Empire.]

- - 4.—Gen. Brabant captures the Boer position Labuschagne's Nek, and thereby breaks the back of the rebellion in the Jamestown district of Cape Colony. Reported that both there and at Burghersdorp large numbers of the rebels are anxious to surrender.

- - 6. **Mr. Kruger at Bloemfontein.**—Mr. Kruger arrives at Bloemfontein, where he is received by President Steyn. [On leaving Pretoria he had announced that he was going to the Free State to arrange a compromise.]

- - 7. (a) **The enemy routed.**—Lord Roberts, continuing his advance towards Bloemfontein, finds the enemy in a position at Poplar Grove which he describes as "extremely strong," and "cunningly arranged, with a second line of entrenchments." Our troops make a flank movement, in preference to any direct attack, and completely rout the enemy, who, in a state of panic, are soon in full retreat. [Lord Roberts telegraphed on March 9 that Mr. Kruger and Mr. Steyn were both present at this fight, and "did all in their power to rally their troops. The rout, however, was complete, the men declaring that they could not stand against British Artillery and such a formidable force of Cavalry."]

— — — (b).—Gen. Gatacre occupies Burghersdorp.

— — — (c).—Lord Kitchener at Victoria Road, making arrangements to deal with the rebellion in that district.

— — 8.—Jamestown occupied.

— — 9. (a) **A National War Loan.**—Prospectus issued of a National War Loan of 30 millions, bearing interest at  $2\frac{3}{4}$  per cent. per annum, to be redeemed at par on April 5, 1910. The issue price is  $98\frac{1}{2}$ . [The Chancellor of the Exchequer stated in the House of Commons, on March 19, that the total number of applications for allotment was 39,800, and the total amount applied for £335,500,000.]

— — — (b). **Sir George White on the war.**—Sir George White arrives at Pietermaritzburg, where he is received with “unparalleled enthusiasm.” [In the course of a speech acknowledging an address presented by the Mayor he said the only possible chance of the Boers gaining Ladysmith was the actual starvation of the garrison. From the commencement of the campaign, however, he had recognised the fact that the enemy’s army desired to secure the town, as the fall of Ladysmith was to be the signal of a general rising of Colonial Dutch, which the Boers had anticipated, all over South Africa. In their presumption the enemy had actually brought trucks down for the conveyance of the Ladysmith garrison to Pretoria. Those trucks, thank God, had gone back without them.]

— — 10. (a) **The advance to Bloemfontein.**—Lord Roberts to-day meets with active opposition from the enemy, who give what he describes as “considerable

trouble," but the British, all the same, reach their destination at Driefontein. The Boers leave behind them 102 dead and 20 prisoners. Our casualties: 32 wounded men, and about 60 or 70 killed or missing. Lord Roberts addresses to the Presidents a strongly worded protest against a further gross abuse of the white flag, and against the use of explosive bullets.

— (b) **Casualties to date.**—A War Office list of casualties from the outbreak of the war to this date gives the following totals of casualties in action: Killed: officers, 194, non-commissioned officers and men, 1,847; wounded: officers, 601, non-commissioned officers and men, 8,755; died of wounds (included in wounded): officers, 40, non-commissioned officers and men, 365; missing and prisoners: officers, 150, men (including missing men of Royal Irish Fusiliers, estimated at 442), 3,372; total killed, wounded, missing and prisoners: officers, 945, non-commissioned officers and men, 13,974, making a grand total of 14,919. Excluding from these figures the sick and wounded men now in British hospitals in South Africa, but including 26 officers and 904 men who have died from disease, 2 officers and 23 men who have met with accidental deaths, and 103 officers and 2,771 men sent home as invalids, the total "losses" to the field forces in South Africa since the outbreak of the war have been 515 officers and 9,282 men, or a net total of 9,797.

— 11 (a).—Lord Roberts's force continues its march unopposed, and reaches Aasvogel Kop.

— (b).—Barkly East occupied.

- - 12. (a) **General French at Bloemfontein.**—Making a wide détour, and thus outflanking the enemy, Lord Roberts's force marches, without further opposition, 16 miles to Venter's Vlei, which is 18 miles from Bloemfontein. Under the direction of Lord Roberts, Gen. French pushes on and occupies two hills close to the railway station and commanding the town. He is entertained for the night by President Steyn's brother, on his farm. President Steyn himself leaves Bloemfontein secretly at 6.30 in the evening for Kroonstadt, to which place he has announced the "transfer" of the capital. He makes no reply to a demand from Gen. Roberts that he shall surrender the town within 24 hours. The fighting components of the Boer force leave for the north, the Free Staters declining to remain, notwithstanding the threats of the Transvaal Boers to turn their guns on the town.

- - - (b) **Relief funds to date.**—Up to this date the total amount contributed to the Mansion House War Fund, from every quarter of the globe, has been £769,189. Of this £354,766 has been designated by the donors for the widows and orphans (Royal Patriotic Fund), £77,407 for the sick and wounded (British Red Cross Society), £83,495 for the disabled soldiers and sailors (Lloyd's Patriotic Fund), and £140,047 for the wives and families (Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association), leaving £113,474 to be applied by the Lord Mayor at his discretion. These sums are exclusive of nearly £140,000 contributed to the *Daily Telegraph* Shilling Fund for widows and orphans, £87,000 contributed to the *Daily Mail* Kipling Poem



Fund, the local funds of the Soldiers' and Sailor Families Association, and of the funds raised by the Lord Mayors of cities like Liverpool and Manchester and the Lord Provosts of Edinburgh and Glasgow, and by various provincial newspapers and other agencies. The total contributions to the Mansion House Transvaal Refugees Fund amount to £175,500. A meeting at Marlborough House decides to form a central committee, with the Prince of Wales as Chairman, for the better distribution of the war relief funds and to prevent overlapping, etc.

- - 13. (a) **Occupation of Bloemfontein.**—Lord Roberts breakfasts with Mr. Steyn's brother, and then leading a cavalcade a mile in length, descends the southern slope towards Bloemfontein. Two miles from the town he is met by the mayor and leading officials who give him the keys of the Government buildings and appear greatly relieved at the course that events have taken. Entering the town "in state," Lord Roberts has a very cordial reception from the inhabitants, who cheer vigorously and sing "God save the Queen." He takes possession of Bloemfontein in the name of the Queen, raising over the Presidency a Union Jack which had been specially made by Lady Roberts. In addressing the Guards Brigade Lord Roberts says that owing to a slight mistake he had not been able to march into Bloemfontein at the head of the Brigade as he had intended, but he adds, "I promise I will lead you into Pretoria." The correspondent of the *Times*, telegraphing under to-day's date, says of the advance on Bloemfontein:—

“The marching of the Army Corps throughout has been superb. The Guards Brigade marched from 3 p.m. yesterday to 1 p.m. to-day with two and a half hours’ sleep, but every man in the force is willing to work till he drops for Lord Roberts. Every march, every movement, and every victory increases his popularity and strengthens the Army’s confidence in him. All the troops realise that they are taking part in the most famous march of recent times.”

— — — (b) **The Presidents seek peace.**—Lord Salisbury reads in the House of Lords a telegram from the Presidents of the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, dated Bloemfontein, March 5, making overtures for peace, and his own reply thereto. The Presidents said in the course of their message:—

“This war was undertaken solely as a defensive measure to safeguard the threatened independence of the South African Republic, and is only continued in order to secure and safeguard the incontestable independence of both Republics as sovereign international States, and to obtain the assurance that those of Her Majesty’s subjects who have taken part with us in this war shall suffer no harm whatsoever in person or property. On these conditions, but on these conditions alone, are we now, as in the past, desirous of seeing peace re-established in South Africa, and of putting an end to the evils now reigning over South Africa ; while, if Her Majesty’s Government is determined to destroy the independence of the Republics, there is nothing left to us and to our people but to persevere to the end in the course already begun.”

In his reply, on March 11, Lord Salisbury said:—

“In the beginning of October last peace existed between Her Majesty and the two Republics under the Conventions which then were in existence. A discussion had been proceeding for some months between Her Majesty’s Government and the South African Republic, of which the object was to

obtain redress for certain very serious grievances under which British residents in the South African Republic were suffering. In the course of these negotiations the South African Republic had, to the knowledge of Her Majesty's Government, made considerable armaments, and the latter had, consequently taken steps to provide corresponding reinforcements to the British garrisons of Capetown and Natal. No infringement of the rights guaranteed by the Conventions had, up to that point, taken place on the British side. Suddenly, at two days' notice, the South African Republic, after issuing an insulting ultimatum, declared war upon Her Majesty; and the Orange Free State, with whom there had not even been any discussion, took a similar step. Her Majesty's dominions were immediately invaded by the two Republics, siege was laid to three towns within the British frontier, a large portion of the interior colonies was overrun, with great destruction to property and life, and the Republics claimed to treat the inhabitants of extensive portions of Her Majesty's dominions as if those dominions had been annexed to one or other of them. In anticipation of these operations the South African Republic had been accumulating for many years past military stores on an enormous scale, which, by their character, could only have been intended for use against Great Britain.

"Your Honours make some observations of a negative character upon the object with which these preparations were made. I do not think it necessary to discuss the questions you have raised. But the result of these preparations, carried out with great secrecy, has been that the British Empire has been compelled to confront an invasion which has entailed upon the Empire a costly war and the loss of thousands of precious lives. This great calamity has been the penalty which Great Britain has suffered for having in recent years acquiesced in the existence of the two Republics.

"In view of the use to which the two Republics have put the position which was given to them, and the calamities which their unprovoked attack has inflicted upon Her Majesty's dominions, Her Majesty's Government can only answer you

Honours' telegram by saying that they are not prepared to assent to the independence either of the South African Republic or of the Orange Free State."

— (c) **German non-intervention.**—Reported from Durban that, the Transvaal Government having appealed to Germany for the latter's mediation or intervention, the German Government replied that it must decline to interfere, as it considered that it was in no way concerned in the conflict.

— (d) **Canada and the war.**—Canadian House of Commons passes a resolution approving the action of the Dominion Government in despatching a Canadian contingent to assist the justice of the Imperial cause in South Africa. In the course of a great speech Sir Wilfrid Laurier, Prime Minister, says:—

"It will be to the eternal glory of England that instead of preparing for war last summer that war found her practically unprepared. Mr. Kruger had been preparing for years for war—buying munitions, accumulating provisions, importing European officers, and drilling his people—and when the time came and he thought he was ready, and he issued his insolent ultimatum calling upon England to give up her possessions in South Africa, England was found absolutely unprepared, and consequently had to submit at the outset to successive defeats. What we did we did of our own free will, and as to future wars, I have only this to say, that if it should be the will of the people of Canada at a future stage to take part in any war of England, the people of Canada will have their way. . . . When our young Volunteers sailed from our shores to join the British Army in South Africa, great were our expectations that they would display on those distant battlefields the same courage which had been displayed by their fathers when fighting in the last century. In many breasts there was a fugitive sense of uneasiness at the thought that the first facing of

musketry by raw recruits was always a severe trial. But when the telegraph brought us the news that such was the good impression made by our Volunteers that the Commander-in-Chief had placed them in the post of honour in the first rank, to share the dangers with that famous corps the Gordon Highlanders; when we read that they had justified fully the confidence placed in them, that they had charged like veterans, that their conduct was heroic and had won for them the encomiums of the Commander-in-Chief and the unstinted admiration of their comrades, who had faced death on a hundred battlefields in all parts of the world, was there a man whose bosom did not swell with pride—that noblest of all pride, that pride of pure patriotism, the pride of consciousness of our rising strength, the pride of consciousness that that day it had been revealed to the world that a new Power had been born in the West?”

— 14. (a) **The position at Mafeking.**—A *Times* telegram from Mafeking, dated Feb. 23, says:—

“We are reduced to horseflesh and bread made from horse forage, while the water-supply is no longer free from parasitical contamination. Typhoid, dysentery, and diphtheria are epidemic. . . . The sufferings of the women and children are terrible. Deaths of women in the laager are of daily occurrence. . . . The native population is starving. The mortality among them is five a day.”

— (b) **Occupation of Boshof.**—Announced from Kimberley that the troops under Lord Methuen have returned from the occupation of Boshof, where the Landdrost was placed under a guard. The guns and 79,000 rounds of ammunition were seized, and a strong garrison was left.

— (c).—Reported from Ladysmith that the enemy are occupying several strong positions at the junction of the Drakensberg and the Biggarsberg.

- - - (a) **A record to be proud of.**—Lord Roberts issues an Army Order in which he says :—

“On Feb. 12 this force crossed the boundary of the Free State; three days later Kimberley was relieved; on the 15th day the bulk of the Boer army under one of its most trusted generals was made prisoner; on the 17th day news came of the relief of Ladysmith; and on March 13, 29 days from the commencement of the operations, the capital of the Free State was occupied. This is a record of which any army would be proud—a record which could not have been achieved except by earnest, well-disciplined men, determined to do their duty, whatever the difficulties and dangers. Exposed to the extreme heat of the day, bivouacking under heavy rain, marching long distances, often on reduced rations, all ranks have displayed an endurance, cheerfulness, and gallantry which is beyond all praise.”

- - - (e).—Reported that Col. Plumer—who for some time has been pushing steadily forward from the north, in spite of enormous difficulties, to secure the relief of Mafeking—occupied Lobatsi on March 5. [See March 23.]

- - 15 (a).—Reported that march of Gen. Joubert on Bloemfontein, with 3,000 men, has been prevented by blowing up of railway by Major Hunter-Weston.

- - - (b).—The total number of Australian troops now at the front or *en route* is 4,237. In addition to the Canadians who have gone to the front the Dominion is raising a force of 1,000 Militia for home service, to allow of the departure from Canada of the Leinster Regiment for South Africa. This makes a total of 3,900 troops contributed by Canada to the Empire since the beginning of the war.

- - - (c).—In the course of a speech at Kimberley Lord Methuen says that if President Kruger had done nothing else they would have to thank him for uniting the various portions of the Empire.

- - - (d) **No intervention by Foreign Powers**  
**New Colonial departure.**—Mr. Balfour announces in the House of Commons that the President of the United States, having been asked by the two Republics to intervene with a view to a cessation of hostilities, had intimated that "he would be glad to aid in any friendly manner to bring about so happy a result." Lord Salisbury, in reply, had expressed sincere acknowledgments for the friendly tone of the communication, but stated that "Her Majesty's Government does not propose to accept the intervention of any Power in the South African War." [With reference to this declaration the Governor of New Zealand (the Earl of Ranfurly) sent the following message to Mr. Chamberlain on March 18:—

"People of New Zealand wish to express their endorsement of the position taken up by the Imperial Government declining to allow the intervention of any foreign Power in the settlement to be arrived at with the Transvaal Republic and Orange Free State, and not to assent to either State being independent. My Government assures Her Majesty's Government that New Zealand will support to the last the Mother Country, as far as lies in their power, in maintaining that position, which has been taken up irrespective of consequences. I am desirous to add there are large numbers of men volunteering who are good riders and shots willing to go to South Africa for reinforcement of Imperial forces, if the services of the latter will be required elsewhere."

The special significance of this message lay in the fact

that it presented, for the first time in the history of our colonies, an official statement of the views which one of those colonies expected the Imperial Government to maintain. The new departure in the rights and privileges already so enthusiastically claimed and discharged in regard to assistance in Imperial defence was thus followed by a further new departure in a tacit claim to present Colonial views on Imperial policy. So there was brought about, as the result of the war, still another important development in the relationship between the colonies and the Mother Country. On March 27 it was announced that the Australian Premiers had jointly cabled to Mr. Chamberlain to the effect that it was "undesirable that peace should be concluded except on terms providing for the absolute supremacy of British rule in South Africa." The Presidents also endeavoured to secure the intervention of Holland, Russia, Italy, and France, but these, in view of Lord Salisbury's statement, declined to take any action.]

— (e).—Major-Gen. Pole-Carew and 2,000 men of the Guards and Mounted Infantry leave Bloemfontein in three trains to join hands with Gen. Gatacre and Gen. Clements on the Orange River. They reach Springfontein unopposed. In the meantime the Orange River is crossed at both Norval's Pont and Bethulie by our troops. [At the former place the Berks and Worcester Battalions were taken over in boats, and in the afternoon a pontoon bridge had been built over which Clement's whole force passed. At Bethulie the bridge was saved from destruction by two young



officers, and Gatacre's force crossed and occupied the town.]

- - 16.—Announced that, following on a proclamation issued by Lord Roberts, 400 Free Staters have laid down their arms and are returning to their farms.

- - 17.—Gen. Gatacre's whole force, with artillery and transport, encamp two miles north of Bethulie.

- - 18. **The rebel movement.**—Lord Kitchener occupies Prieska without opposition, the rebels laying down arms. Reports received from Barkly East, Bethulie, Burghersdorp, Herschel, Lady Grey, Aliwal North, and other places on the frontier, show that the rebel movement in both the north and west of Cape Colony has collapsed.

- - 20 (a).—Announced that Col. Peakman, advancing with mounted troops from Kimberley, for the relief of Mafeking from the south, has had an engagement near Fourteen Streams. Royal Artillery scattered enemy with shrapnel.

- - - (b).—Reported from Pretoria that everyone available is being ordered to proceed to Kroonstad on pain of death.

- - 21.—Free State burghers from southern districts are surrendering arms in considerable numbers.

- - 22.—Reported that Pretoria Federal commandos at Kroonstadt are awaiting advance of Lord Roberts towards the Transvaal, and that Mr. Kruger has made an impassioned appeal to them to maintain the fight for freedom. Mr. Steyn told them the war was really now commencing.

-- 23.—Announced that Col. Plumer's force, being attacked by Boers in greatly superior numbers, retired from Lobatsi on March 16, and was at Crocodile Pools on the 19th.

-- 24. (a) **The Colonies and the war.**—The fourth New Zealand contingent, numbering 440 men (picked from 1,000 who offered), leaves Otago for South Africa. The whole community, numbering about 80,000 people, witness the departure. The procession of volunteers and citizens is fully two miles long. Fifteen hundred children sing patriotic songs, and the display of enthusiasm is most demonstrative. In his speech on the occasion Lord Ranfurly, Governor of New Zealand, spoke of the crisis through which the Empire had just passed as having displayed the unanimity of the Anglo-Saxon people. To the consternation of their opponents the reverses had but given them occasion to display the splendid qualities of their troops, officers, and men.

--- (b).—Death of Major-Gen. Sir E. Woodgate from the effects of wounds received at Spion Kop.

-- 25. **India's contribution to the war.**—An official report issued at Calcutta shows that India's contributions to the war have been as follows:—8,000 officers and men, 3,000 natives for non-combatant services, 6,700 horses, 1,600 mules and ponies, 100,000 warm coats, 40,000 haversacks, 5,000 spurs, 40,000 suits of khaki, 45,000 helmets, 70,000 pairs of boots, 2,650 sets of mounted infantry saddlery, 460 muleteers and artificers, and 2,000 water-carriers. A further 2,650 horses for the mounted infantry have been provided by the native cavalry and Imperial Service regiments.

' - - 27. (a) **Boer losses during the war.**—A *Times* telegram from Capetown says trustworthy informants agree that the Boers have lost about 2,000 killed in action since the outbreak of the war, and that, adding wounded, sick, and prisoners, their total loss must exceed 15,000.

- - - (b) **Sir George White on the war.**—Sir George White, *en route* for England, is presented at Capetown with an address by the Mayor and Corporation. In his reply he says:—

“As the enemy closed round Ladysmith I determined to try to beat them in the open at Lombard’s Kop. I thought I had located the enemy’s position, but I had always been hampered by the splendid system of Boer intelligence. I could not move a gun at midnight without the enemy’s knowing it before daybreak. I took all responsibility for the disaster at Nicholson’s Nek. Afterwards I felt the responsibility for Natal behind me, Ladysmith being the shield to protect her. I hoped to uphold the shield long enough to enable the sleepy giant John Bull to wake up and have his own. I am proud to acknowledge the help of the Naval Brigade. Jack came in the nick of time, as he generally does. During the attack on Cæsar’s Camp a remote corner was held by 16 men of the Manchester Regiment, who fought from three in the morning until dusk, when the Devonshires reinforced them. Fourteen of the little band lay dead, and of the two survivors one was wounded, but they still held their position. On the same day the sergeant of one of the guns had one leg and one arm shot off. As he fell across the trail of the gun he said, ‘Roll me out of the way. Go on working the gun.’ England, that little dot on the map, always comes out best in the end. That little England, the heart of the whole Empire, so brave and strong, sent her lifeblood into the furthest corner of the Empire and appears before the world an unconquerable whole. The dark hours are past. I

glory in being a lieutenant of Lord Roberts, who is England's greatest soldier and possesses the heart of the whole nation."

- - - (c).—Gen. Clements occupies Fauresmith.

- - 28 (a).—Death of Gen. Joubert from peritonitis.

- - - (b).—Messages from Mafeking suggest that the garrison has been able to secure new sources of food supply.

- - 29. (a) **Delagoa Bay Arbitration.**—Award of Delagoa Bay Railway Arbitration Tribunal published. [For history of question, see 1889, June 29.] The award, which is unanimous, orders Portugal to pay to the United States of America and Great Britain, in addition to the £28,000 sterling paid to them on account in 1890, the sum, in Swiss currency, of 15,314,000 francs (equivalent to £612,560), with interest at the rate of 5 per cent. per annum from June 25, 1889 to the day of payment. The total amount to be paid over represents close on £950,000.

- - - (b).—Owing to activity of enemy near Bloemfontein, and their hostile action towards burghers who have surrendered, Lord Roberts attacks and drives them from some kopjes south of Brandfort. British loss: 2 officers killed, 8 wounded; 10 (? 19) rank and file killed, 159 wounded, 3 missing.

- - 30. **Cape views on the final settlement.**—Enthusiastic meeting of the constituents of Mr. Rose-Innes, at Claremont, passes a resolution in support of the refusal of Her Majesty's Government to allow the maintenance of the independence of the Republics, and urging their incorporation in the dominions of the

Queen. [Mr. Rose-Innes said the agitation which was on foot to secure the retention of their independence by the Republics had compelled many who would otherwise remain silent to speak out. The resolution meant that two flags which had been wont to fly in South Africa in the past should fly there no more. It meant, also, that the two States would cease to exist. The British would be charged with having made war to take those territories, but it was absolutely false, as shown by the complete unpreparedness with which Great Britain embarked on the war. Nobody wanted another such war, and therefore he and those who thought with him said, "Give us peace, in Heaven's name, after a settlement, but make no settlement not calculated to secure permanent peace." It was useless to attempt to piece together china broken in ten thousand fragments. What the Transvaal Boer meant by independence was the continued domination of the ruling caste. No independence could be given which would not be a sham, and which would not afford the Republics an opportunity to arm again and menace once more the peace of South Africa. The lines that worked before the war were now impossible and impracticable. The British flag must fly over the Republics, and these must first be brought under direct British rule, the fullest possible measure of self-government being afterwards granted on Colonial lines. In Canada perfect loyalty had, in spite of past rebellion, been secured by free institutions. Let them hope that the same results would follow the adoption of a like course in South Africa.]

# INDEX

## Afrikander movement :

- Afrikander Bond : Aims of originators . . . April 7, 1882
- A proposed Afrikander Republic . . . June, 1891
- Afrikander Ministry at the Cape . . . April, 1899
- "Joy and satisfaction": Transvaal "reasonable"  
conditions . . . July 22 ,,
- Mr. Steyn and the "Afrikander nation" . . . Jan. 9, 1900
- Mr. Rhodes on Afrikander aims . . . Feb. 23 ,,
- Albany Settlement . . . 1811-12, 1820-1
- Aliens Expulsion Law . . . Oct. 14, 1896 ; July 15, 1898
- Aliens Immigration Laws :
  - Orange Free State . . . May 19, 1897
  - Transvaal . . . Nov. 26, 1896 ; May 6 ,,
- Aliwal North, Treaty of . . . Feb. 12, 1869
- Amatola district, *see* . . . 1850-3
- Amatongaland :
  - Queen Zambele seeks protection . . . June, 1887
  - Mr. Kruger makes an offer . . . May 4, 1889
  - British Protectorate, *see* . . . March 15, 1895
  - The Administration of . . . June 29, 1896
  - Annexed to Zululand, *see* . . . Nov. 22, 1897
- Anstruther, Col., *see* . . . Dec. 20, 1880
- Appelbe, Mrs., Murder of . . . April 28, 1899
- Arbitration question . . . May 31-June 5, Aug. 19, 28 (a), Oct. 9 ,,
- Australia and the War . . . July 11, Oct. 3 (b), Dec. 18 (b, c), 21 (a, b) ,,  
Jan. 1 (b), 3 (b), March 3, 15 (b), 1900
- Baden-Powell, Col. . . . Oct. 12 (a), Nov. 7 (b), 1899
- Banjailand (Limpopo) Trek . . . June, 1891
- Barkly, Sir Henry, on Boer treatment of natives . . . Dec. 18, 1876
- Basutoland :
  - Rise of the Basuto under Moshesh . . . 1824
  - Encroachments on Basuto territory forbidden . . . 1842
  - Basutoland created a Treaty State . . . Oct. 5, 1843 (a)
  - Basuto defeat British and Boers . . . June 30, 1851

Basutoland—*continued*.

Moshesh as diplomatist, <i>see</i>	Dec., 1852
Boer raids and Basuto troubles	1861 ( <i>a</i> )
Boers and Basuto: Arbitration	1864 ( <i>a</i> )
Renewed troubles: British Commissioner	1865 ( <i>a</i> )
Moshesh submits to the Free State	April, 1866
Britain comes to the rescue	March 12, 1868
Treaty of Aliwal North: Boer compensation	Feb. 12, 1869
Basutoland annexed to Cape	Aug., 1871
Moirosi causes trouble	March, 1879
Cape Disarmament Act: Revolt	April, 1880 ( <i>b</i> )
Peace restored	Dec., 1882
Self-government leads to further discord	Feb., 1883
Imperial administration, <i>see</i>	Nov. 29,,
Basutoland a British colony	March 13, 1884
Basutoland enters the Customs Union	July 1, 1891
Basuto grateful to British, <i>see</i>	April, 1898 ( <i>b</i> )
Expresses loyalty	Oct. 26, 1899 ( <i>b</i> )
Battles, etc.:	
Boers defeat Moselekatze	Nov., 1837
Dingaan massacres Retief's party	Feb. 6, 1838
"Dingaan's Day"	Dec. 16,,
Boers and Panda defeat Dingaan	Jan. 4, 1840
Natal Boers defeat Capt. Smith	May 23, 1842
Skirmish of Zwart Kopjes	Feb., 1846
Battle of Boomplaats	Aug. 29, 1848
Viervoet	June 30, 1851
Gen. Cathcart and Basuto	Dec., 1852
FIRST BOER WAR	
Bronkhorst Spruit	Dec. 20, 1880
Laing's Nek	Jan. 28, 1881
Ingogo River	Feb. 8,,
Majuba Hill	„ 27,,
MATABELE WAR	
Shangani River	Oct. 24, 1893
Imbembesi River	Nov. 1,,
Singuesi River	„ 2,,
Bulawayo occupied	„ 3,,
SECOND BOER WAR	
Time fixed by Boer ultimatum expires	Oct. 11, 1899 ( <i>a'</i> )
Free State's first act of war	„ 11,, ( <i>a'</i> )
First shot fired: Mafeking isolated	„ 12,, ( <i>a</i> )
Natal invaded	„ 14,, ( <i>b</i> )

Battles, etc.—*continued*.

Dundee evacuated : Kimberley isolated .	. Oct. 16, 1899
British success at Talana Hill .	. „ 20 „
„ „ Elandslaagte .	. „ 21 „ (a)
Gen. Yule retires on Ladysmith .	. „ 22 „ (b)
Death of Gen. Symons .	. „ 23 „ (a)
Dundee occupied by Boers .	. „ 23 „ (b)
Action at Rietfontein .	. „ 24 „ (a)
Fighting at Kimberley .	. „ 24 „ (b)
Gen. Yule joins Gen. White at Ladysmith .	. „ 26 „ (a)
Enemy closing round Ladysmith .	. „ 28 „ (b)
Nicholson's Nek mishap .	. „ 29-30 „ (b)
Ladysmith isolated .	. Nov. 2 „ (c)
First transport arrives .	. „ 9 „ (c)
General attack on Ladysmith repulsed .	. „ 9 „ (e)
A Fifth Division .	. „ 11 „ (b)
Boers occupy Aliwal North .	. „ 14 „ (c)
Armoured train wrecked : Chieveley .	. „ 15 „ (a)
Engagement at Belmont .	. „ 23 „ (a)
Boers repulsed at Tugela Drift .	. „ 23 „ (b)
Skirmish at Willow Grange .	. „ 23 „ (c)
Battle of Enslin (Graspan) .	. „ 25 „ (a)
„ Modder River .	. „ 29 „ (b)
A Sixth Division .	. Dec. 4 „
Sortie from Ladysmith : Gun Hill .	. „ 8 „ (b)
Reverse at Stormberg .	. „ 10 „
„ „ Magersfontein .	. „ 11 „
„ on the Tugela .	. „ 15 „ (a)
Mobilisation of Seventh Division ordered .	. „ 15 „ (b)
Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener to go out .	. „ 18 „ (a)
Militia, Volunteer, and Colonial reinforcements .	. „ 18 „ (b)
Eighth Division preparing .	. „ 25 „
Sunnyside .	. Jan. 1, 1900 (b)
Colesberg .	. „ 1 „ (c)
Kuruman surrenders .	. „ 2 „
Heavy fighting at Ladysmith .	. „ 6 „ (a)
Rensburg .	. „ 6 „ (b)
„ .	. „ 15 „
Crossing at Trichard's Drift .	. „ 17-18 „
Spion Kop .	. „ 23-25 „
Thebus occupied .	. „ 26 „
Koodoosberg occupied .	. Feb. 4 „
Vaal Krantz .	. „ 5-7 „
Koodoosberg attacked .	. „ 8 „ (b)
„ abandoned .	. „ 9 „ (b)



German Emperor gave him an audience on March 11, in reference, as was understood, to the passage through German East Africa of the proposed through line of telegraph, and also of the proposed line of railway, from the Cape to Cairo. On March 21 Herr von Bülow announced that the Trans-African Telegraph Company, Limited (represented by Mr. Rhodes), had received permission to construct a telegraph line across German East Africa from south to north at their own cost, the work to be completed in five years, and the Company being further required to erect, also at their own cost, a telegraph line joining Rhodesia and British East Africa across German territory. This latter line would be the property of the German Government and be used for the service of German East Africa. With regard to the Cape to Cairo railway, it was reported that in Germany Mr. Rhodes had arrived at an understanding on this subject, though no definite agreement; and that in London his efforts to obtain the help of the British Government for the proposed extension of the Bechuanaland Railway north from Bulawayo had not been successful. He asked for a Government guarantee of the interest on the requisite capital, so that the money could be raised at 3 per cent.; but the terms offered by the Government were such as he could not accept. In this contingency the companies holding claims in Rhodesia subscribed £500,000, at 3 per cent., for an immediate extension of 150 miles, and on May 2 Mr. Rhodes stated at a meeting in London of the British South Africa Company that the Bechuanaland Railway Company (the Rhodesia Railways, Limited) would raise

£3,000,000 at 4 per cent., guaranteed by the Chartered Company, in five equal annual instalments. In this way the construction of the remaining 750 miles up to the boundary of German East Africa would be carried out.]

- - 9. **The dynamite monopoly.**—Replying to Mr. Chamberlain's despatch of Jan. 13, the Transvaal State Secretary affirms that his Government have exclusively the right to specify on what conditions the manufacture of explosives shall take place, that other considerations of State interest than simply pecuniary benefit have prevailed with the Volksraad and the Government, and that Her Majesty's Government "are not entitled to a protest such as now formulated." [To this Mr. Chamberlain replied, on April 21, that "Her Majesty's Government adhere to their protest, and reserve their rights in this matter."]

- - 24. **The Uitlander petition to the Queen.**—A fresh petition, signed by 21,000 British subjects in the Transvaal, is handed to the British agent in Pretoria for presentation to Her Majesty. It says that for a number of years prior to 1896 considerable discontent existed amongst the Uitlanders; that after the Jameson Raid Mr. Kruger issued a proclamation in which he held out hopes of substantial reforms, but instead of admitted grievances being redressed the position had been made more irksome than before, while the main recommendations of the Industrial Commission were ignored. Complaint is made of the attack on the independence of the High Court, and of the conduct of the police, who are described as "absolutely a

danger to the community at large.” The petition proceeds:—

“The condition of your Majesty’s subjects in this State has become well-nigh intolerable. The acknowledged and admitted grievances of which your Majesty’s subjects complain prior to 1895 not only are not redressed, but exist to-day in an aggravated form. They are still deprived of all political rights, they are denied any voice in the Government of the country, they are taxed far above the requirements of the country, the revenue of which is misapplied and devoted to objects which keep alive a continuous and well-founded feeling of irritation, without in any way advancing the general interest of the State. Maladministration and peculation of public monies go hand in hand, without any vigorous measures being adopted to put a stop to the scandal. The education of Uitlander children is made subject to impossible conditions. The police afford no adequate protection to the lives and property of the inhabitants of Johannesburg; they are rather a source of danger to the peace and safety of the Uitlander population.”

The petitioners further refer to the denial of the right of public meeting, and conclude by asking that Her Majesty will cause an inquiry to be made into their complaints and grievances, and will direct that measures be taken to obtain substantial guarantees from the Transvaal Government for a recognition of their rights as British subjects. [See May 10.]

— APRIL. **Parties at the Cape.**—Elections at the Cape confirm the Afrikaner Ministry of Mr. Schreiner in office, giving them a majority of eight over both the Progressives and the Independents.

— 28. **Murder of Mrs. Appelbe.**—Murder, at Langlaagte, of Mrs. Appelbe, wife of a Wesleyan missionary at Johannesburg who had been active in exposing the

illicit liquor trade carried on by a low class of Boers with the connivance of the police.

— MAY 4. **Sir A. Milner states the case for the Uitlanders.**—In a long despatch, telegraphed to Mr. Chamberlain, Sir Alfred Milner gives his views on the Uitlanders' grievances. Among other things he says :—

“The present crisis undoubtedly arises out of the Edgar incident. But that incident merely precipitated a struggle which was certain to come. . . . There is no grievance that rankles more in the breasts of the mass of the Uitlander population than the conduct of the police, who, while they have proved singularly incompetent to deal with gross scandals like the illicit liquor trade, are harsh and arbitrary in their treatment of individuals whom they happen to dislike. . . . It is impossible to overlook the tremendous change for the worse which has been effected by the lowering of the status of the High Court of Judicature. . . . The public meeting of 14th January was indeed broken up by workmen, many of them poor burghers, in the employment of the Government . . . and instigated by Government officials, and it is impossible at present to hold another meeting of great size. . . . But smaller meetings are being held almost nightly along the Raad, and are unanimous in their demand for enfranchisement. The movement is steadily growing in force and extent. With regard to the attempts to represent that movement as artificial, the work of scheming capitalists or professional agitators, I regard it as a wilful perversion of the truth. . . . The political turmoil in the Transvaal Republic will never end till the permanent Uitlander population is admitted to a share in the Government, and while that turmoil lasts there will be no tranquillity or adequate progress in Her Majesty's South African dominions. . . . The case for intervention is overwhelming. . . . The spectacle of thousands of British subjects

kept permanently in the position of helots, constantly chafing under undoubted grievances, and calling vainly to Her Majesty's Government for redress, does steadily diminish the influence and reputation of Great Britain and the respect for the British Government within the Queen's dominions."

-- 9. **"A sovereign international State."**—In continuation of the controversy on the suzerainty question [see 1898, April 16] Mr. Reitz sends a despatch to Mr. Chamberlain in which he asserts that

"the now existing right of absolute self-government of the Republic is not derived from either the Convention of 1882 or that of 1884, but simply and solely follows from the inherent right of this Republic as a sovereign international State."

[To this contention Mr. Chamberlain replied, on July 13, that "the claim was not warranted either by law or history, and was wholly inadmissible."]

-- 10. **Mr. Chamberlain suggests a Conference.**

In a despatch to Sir Alfred Milner Mr. Chamberlain states that the Queen has been graciously pleased to receive the petition of the Uitlanders. He deals seriously with the various grievances, and adds:—

"With the earnest hope of arriving at a satisfactory settlement, and as a proof of their desire to maintain cordial relations with the South African Republic, Her Majesty's Government now suggest for the consideration of President Kruger that a meeting should be arranged between his Honour and yourself for the purpose of discussing the situation in a conciliatory spirit, and in the hope that you may arrive, in concert with the President, at such an arrangement as Her Majesty's Government can accept and recommend to the Uitlander population as a reasonable concession to their just demands,

and the settlement of the difficulties which have threatened the good relations which Her Majesty's Government desire to see constantly exist between themselves and the Government of the South African Republic."

- - 15. (a) **The bogus "conspiracy" at Johannesburg.**—Sensation caused by a number of arrests at Johannesburg for high treason. [It was soon found that the persons arrested included two Transvaal detectives who had acted as *agents provocateurs*, the alleged conspiracy being a bogus one got up for the evident purpose of casting discredit on the Reformers. The hollowness of the affair was so thoroughly exposed that the charges were withdrawn, and the men arrested were liberated.]

- - - (b) **Rhodesia.**—Newly-constituted Southern Rhodesia Legislative Council meets at Salisbury. [See Dec.]

- - 19. **A Conference arranged.**—Announced that, on the invitation of President Steyn, Sir Alfred Milner and President Kruger will meet in conference at Bloemfontein. [In the House of Commons Mr. Chamberlain spoke of the Conference as an "endeavour to arrive at such an arrangement as Her Majesty's Government could accept and recommend to the Uitlander population as a reasonable concession to their just demands, and a settlement of the difficulties which have threatened the good relations that Her Majesty's Government desires should constantly exist between themselves and the Government of the South African Republic."]

- - 31-JUNE 5. **The Bloemfontein Conference.**—Conference between Sir Alfred Milner and President Kruger held at Bloemfontein. [The subjects for con-

sideration were as follows:—The franchise question, the dynamite monopoly, the incorporation of Swaziland by the Transvaal, the indemnity for the Jameson Raid and the adoption of the principle of arbitration for the settlement of any future differences. The actual discussions, however, turned upon the franchise and arbitration questions. Sir Alfred Milner demanded an irreducible minimum that the full franchise should be given to every foreigner who had been resident in the Transvaal for five years, and he asked, also, for modification of the oath, and the concession of a certain fixed minimum of representation. Mr. Kruger's offer was: That new-comers should obtain naturalisation in two years on complying with a list of eight conditions; and that five years later they should secure full franchise on the basis of a fresh lot of conditions; that resident before 1890 should become naturalised within six months, and obtain full franchise in two years, subject to conditions, those not becoming naturalised within six months to be on the same footing as new-comers; those resident for two years or more to be allowed immediate naturalisation with full franchise in five years and those already naturalised to have full franchise in five years from date of naturalisation, again subject to conditions. Sir Alfred Milner acknowledged that Mr. Kruger's proposals were a considerable improvement on the existing law, but he regarded them as inadequate and the conditions as altogether impracticable, while President Kruger further stipulated that his offer should be subject to the acceptance by the British Government of the principle of arbitration in the

settlement of future differences. He had first wanted arbitration by a foreign Power, the acceptance of which by Great Britain would have put the Transvaal on an equality with herself as a Sovereign International State; but he now modified this by asking that a foreigner should be president of the court. See July 27. The Conference broke up without result.]

— JUNE 10. **South African views on the Conference.**  
—Enthusiastic meeting of 5,000 Uitlanders at Johannesburg passes resolutions declaring that no solution will be satisfactory which does not provide for equal political power; that the President's proposals at the Conference are wholly inadequate; recording a deep sense of obligation to the High Commissioner, and accepting his proposals as an irreducible minimum. [Similar meetings were afterwards held at Capetown, Port Elizabeth, Grahamstown, Bulawayo, Durban, Pietermaritzburg, and many other places in South Africa.]

— 12. (a) **Proposed new franchise law.**—New franchise proposals, in the form of a draft law, laid upon the table of the Transvaal Volksraad. [They contained some alterations of the Bloemfontein scheme, but followed along the main lines of the President's proposals.]

— (b) **Sir A. Milner explains his policy.**—Addressing a deputation which waits upon him at Government House, Capetown, to support his action at Bloemfontein, Sir Alfred Milner says :—

“It seemed best to strike straight at the root of the evil by giving the people whose interests Her Majesty's Government is bound to defend such a share of political power as would



enable them gradually to redress their grievances themselves, and to strengthen, not to weaken, the country of their adoption in the process. But just because I was relying on a single remedy it was absolutely essential that that remedy should be a radical one. It was useless, indeed, worse than useless, and would only have led to worse trouble later on, to have accepted a scheme so framed—I do not say so designed—as not to bring people in, but to keep them out; a scheme hedged in with restrictions of the most elaborate kind, and hampered with a condition which I knew that numbers of people would never accept, and which one could not reasonably urge them to accept. . . . There is another aspect of the case which has been forced upon me as High Commissioner, having to bear in mind the interests of South Africa as a whole. Is it consistent with the position of Great Britain, in regard to this country—nay, is it consistent with the dignity of the white race—that a large, wealthy, industrious, and intelligent community of white men should continue in that state of subjection which is the lot of the immigrant white population of the Transvaal? . . . I see it is suggested in some quarters that the policy of Her Majesty's Government is one of aggression. I know better than any man that their policy, so far from being one of aggression, has been one of singular patience."

— 14. **Mr. Kruger on the franchise.**—In the adjourned debate on the Franchise Bill Mr. Kruger said the franchise period had been reduced from fourteen years to seven. He did not know what would happen. Perhaps their enemies would not be satisfied, and perhaps they would make war. Their enemies had not given them anything, while they themselves had given away half their rights. If they had given away any more they would have given away their independence. Let them assist everybody in the country, irrespective of nationality; but there were murderers

and thieves among those who would benefit by the laws. He did not want war, but he did not want to give away his rights. The Lord had protected their independence in the past, and He would not let them lose it.

- - 17. **"Nothing to justify . . . even military preparations."**—Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman, speaking at Ilford on the Transvaal crisis, says :—

"I think it right to say plainly that I, for my part, can discern nothing in what has occurred to justify either warlike action or even military preparations. . . . Although the conference failed, considerable concessions have been made since it broke up. And why should we despair of obtaining all that is necessary by the pressure of peaceful negotiations?"

- - 23. **Free State war preparations.**—The Free State Raad votes money for military preparations.

- - 26. **Mr. Chamberlain says, "We will see it through."**—Mr. Chamberlain, speaking at Birmingham, says :—

"In the course of the past 15 years we have been four times on the verge of war with the Transvaal. Once in 1885, when the Warren expedition was carried through; again in 1894, . . . when President Kruger attempted forcibly to enlist British subjects; . . . in 1895, when the Cape Government asked our assistance to prevent the arbitrary action of the Government of the Transvaal in closing the roads to the passage of Cape merchandise; and again in 1897, when the present Government had to protest against the Alien Immigration Law, which was declared to be a distinct breach of the Convention. . . . President Kruger's proposals are a policy of delay. . . . They do not constitute even a fair instalment of reform. . . . No amendment of these proposals can be acceptable to Her Majesty's Government which

does not give to the Uitlanders at once some appreciable representation. . . . We are, and we have been, absolutely unanimous as to the policy which is to be pursued. . . . Those fall into a grievous error who think that there is a party within the Government who, having put their hands to the plough, will now draw back. . . . Having undertaken this business, we will see it through."

— JULY 1. (a) **British Indians in the Transvaal.**—This is the date fixed for the coming into operation of an edict for compelling British Indian merchants settled in Pretoria (and occupying premises there of an annual rental of nearly £20,000) to leave the city, and remove to quarters on the outskirts—such quarters being, in effect, great dunghills used "to deposit the refuse of the town," and, according to the British Agent, "without any water except polluted soakage in the gully between the location and the town." The intervention of Great Britain, however, leads to the execution of this decree being formally delayed for three months. [The edict in question brought to a climax a grievance in regard to British Indian subjects which had been growing in acuteness for many years. In addition to the Indians introduced into South Africa by Natal colonists, for the cultivation of the sugar-cane plantations, and known as coolies, a number of merchants from India had, after the Convention of London, established themselves at Pretoria and Johannesburg, where, by their industry and perseverance, they worked up more or less prosperous businesses for themselves. These individuals belonged mostly to the class of persons who are among our best subjects in India, but their presence and their commercial success alike excited great hostility among the Boers.

Article XIV. of the London Convention had laid down that "all persons, other than natives," conforming themselves to the laws of the South African Republic, were to have full liberty of travel, residence, trade, and so on; and it was assumed from the British and Indian point of view that the word "natives" did not include British Asiatic subjects resident in the South African Republic, and that Indian settlers would, therefore, have the same rights as English-born people. In 1885, however, at the request of the Transvaal, Her Majesty's Government waived their right to insist on a strict interpretation of the Convention to the extent of allowing the Transvaal Government to pass an Ordinance which provided, *inter alia*, that Asiatics settling in the Republic should be registered, that they should not be allowed to acquire property or the rights of citizenship, and that the Transvaal Government should have the right to fix the streets, wards, or locations where they should reside. Difficulties soon arose because Her Majesty's Government had thought these regulations were to refer only to coolies, and not to traders or merchants, whereas the Transvaal Government applied them to all alike. The latter Government, however, represented that their action was based on "sanitary" grounds, and in 1886, by arrangement with Her Majesty's Government, amendments were passed setting forth, by means of repeated statements, that the regulations respecting the Asiatics were to be "for sanitary purposes." But the Indian merchants soon found that the Transvaal Government, under the pretence of "sanitary purposes," were even more active than before in not only subjecting them to

a variety of penalties and inconveniences, but also in banishing them to quarters where they could do no trade at all—in fact, putting an Indian merchant, however high his position in the commercial world, on just the same level as a Zulu, a Basuto, or a Hottentot. They appealed alike to the Indian and to Her Majesty's Government, alleging that the real motive of their Boer oppressors was trade jealousy; and eventually, in March, 1895, the matter was submitted to the arbitration of His Honour Melius de Villiers, Chief Justice of the Orange Free State. The claim then advanced for Her Majesty's Government was (*a*) That the Indians and other Asiatic traders, being British subjects, be allowed to reside in the towns of the South African Republic, in some quarter (wards and streets) which, for sanitary reasons, may be assigned to them; (*b*) that they be allowed to carry on their trade or business in shops or stores in any part of the town. The Government of the South African Republic argued, on the other hand, (*a*) That the South African Republic has full liberty to make such regulations as it may think fit respecting coolies, Arabs, Malays, and Mahomedan subjects of the Turkish Empire; (*b*) that Her Majesty's Government has no ground for objection if the Government of the South African Republic forbids coolies, Arabs, Malays, and Mahomedan subjects of the Turkish Empire to have places of business in villages or towns at places other than those pointed out by the Government. The Arbitrator's award was that the South African Republic was "bound and entitled in its treatment of Indian and Asiatic traders, being British subjects, to give full

force and effect" to the laws mentioned above, subject, in case of objections being raised, "to sole and exclusive interpretation in the ordinary course by the tribunals of the country." This left everything almost as vague as before, and the Transvaal Government continued their policy of interference with Indian traders alike in Pretoria and Johannesburg, so that in the latter town, as Mr. Rider Haggard pointed out in a letter to the Press, people of India who had relied on our protection were "kennelled like dogs without an owner."]

— (b) **The Uitlander Council's Bill of Rights.**—The Uitlander Council resolve to publish a declaration in which they say it is essential to fix the conditions under which (1) All duly qualified persons can get the franchise without any unnecessary expense, trouble, or delay, and without being subjected to any kind of intimidation; (2) those who have got the franchise shall be able to use it effectively; (3) redistribution of seats shall take place periodically, by automatic arrangement, and representation shall bear some definite relation to the number of electors. There should, also, be a Reform Act embracing the following among other provisions: No burgher or alien to have privileges or immunities which upon the same lines shall not be granted to all burghers; no disability on account of creed; English to be recognised equally with Dutch as an official language; independence of the High Court to be safeguarded; legislation by simple resolution of the Volksraad to be abolished; the right of public meeting and freedom of speech and of the Press to be assured; forts and other measures intended to intimi-

date white inhabitants to be declared unconstitutional; existing monopolies to be cancelled or expropriated on equitable conditions; all elections to be by ballot, with stringent provisions against bribery and intimidation; local government for towns with a population of 1,000; a full and comprehensive system of State education under the control of local boards; complete reorganisation of the Civil Service; treasury payments strictly according to approved Budget proposals, with full and open publication of accounts. [This declaration was the more significant because it showed that there were many points at issue besides the question of franchise, to which the greater share—and, as was thought in some quarters, an undue share—of public attention was being devoted.]

-- 7. **Britain preparing.**—Military preparations by the home authorities announced.

-- 8. **Views of the Cape Government.**—In a letter to the *South African News* Mr. Schreiner says:—

“While anxious and continuously active with good hope in the cause of securing reasonable modifications of the existing representative system of the South African Republic, this Government is convinced that no ground whatever exists for active interference in the internal affairs of that Republic.”

The same paper also states that it is authorised to publish the following respecting the latest reform proposals:—

“We are at liberty to say that this Government regards these proposals as adequate, satisfactory, and such as should secure a peaceful settlement.”

[The publication of this letter and statement led to a great outburst of indignant protests.]

- - 11. **Colonial contingents offered.**—The Governor of Queensland telegraphs to Mr. Chamberlain:—

“Should hostilities against Transvaal break out, Queensland offers services of 250 mounted infantry, with machine guns.”

[Offers of troops from other Colonies followed, Mr. Chamberlain replying that Her Majesty's Government highly appreciated the loyalty and patriotism shown, and that the offers would be placed on record at the War Office. See Oct. 3.]

- - 13. **Further franchise proposals.**—Text of a draft franchise law presented to the Volksraad of the South African Republic. Sir Alfred Milner telegraphs concerning it:—

“Main lines of Bill are: (1) Provision as to naturalisation after two years and full franchise five years later maintained; but there is alternative whereby a person can postpone naturalisation till end of seven years, and be naturalised then, obtaining full franchise at once. (2) Retrospective clause allows person to obtain naturalisation, with full franchise after nine years' residence, or in the alternative five years after passing of law, provided he has seven years' residence. Thus all persons who entered country before middle of 1895 must have nine years' residence, those who entered between middle 1895 and middle of 1896 eight years, and later immigrants seven years. These are main principles, and are certainly considerable advance on President's proposals at Bloemfontein. But . . . my proposal would have admitted at once persons who came to country during 1891, 1892, 1893, and portion of 1894. These were years of great immigration. These persons are now postponed for between one and four years, so that body of Uitlanders immediately admitted far smaller than that contemplated by me. . . . Speaking generally, the formalities requisite in applying for enfranchisement are



cumbersome, and calculated to cause difficulty and delay. This is a very serious matter as affecting number likely to obtain franchise at an early date. There is, moreover, a very objectionable provision which makes the seven years for franchise in case of new-comers date, not from the commencement of their period of residence, but from the time of their giving notice of intention to become naturalised.”

— 18. **The franchise law amended and passed.**—Transvaal Franchise Bill amended so as to make the residential qualification seven years retrospective instead of nine. [It passed the following day without further amendment.]

— 19. **Feeling in Natal.**—A resolution expressing full approval of the action and policy of the Imperial Government in reference to the Transvaal is unanimously carried by the Legislative Assembly of Natal.

— 22. **The views of the Afrikanders.**—The Afrikander Bond at the Cape passes resolutions expressing joy and satisfaction at the reasonable and liberal conditions conceded by the Transvaal Government.

— 26.—Great meeting of Uitlanders at Johannesburg condemns the new franchise law as wholly inadequate.

— 27. **Mr. Chamberlain on Boer promises.**—In a long despatch to Sir Alfred Milner Mr. Chamberlain recalls the assurances given by Mr. Kruger to the British Commissioners on May 10, 1881 (which see), and proceeds:—

“In spite of these positive assurances, all the laws which have caused the grievances under which the Uitlanders labour, and all the restrictions as to franchise and individual liberty under which they suffer, have been brought into existence subse-

quently to the Conventions of Pretoria or London. Not only has the letter of the Convention of 1884 been repeatedly broken, but the whole spirit of that Convention has been disregarded by this complete reversal of the conditions of equality between the white inhabitants of the Transvaal which subsisted, and which, relying on the assurances of the Boer leaders, Her Majesty believed would continue to subsist, when she granted to it internal independence in the preamble of the Convention of 1881, and when she consented to substitute the Articles of the Convention of 1884 for those of the previous Convention."

- - 28. **President Kruger's "one effort."**—Lord Salisbury says in the House of Lords:—

"Throughout the whole of the period that has elapsed since 1881 his (President Kruger's) one effort has been to separate the English and Republican Governments; to draw the two nations into two camps; to give to the Dutch a superiority to which their numbers gave them no title; and to reduce the English to a condition, almost of a conquered, certainly of a subjugated, race."

- - 31. **Mr. Chamberlain proposes a Joint Commission.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs to Sir Alfred Milner authorising him to invite President Kruger to appoint delegates to discuss with British delegates the question whether the reforms which the Volksraad has passed will give immediate and substantial representation of Uitlanders, and, if not, what additions and alterations will be necessary in order to secure this result.

- AUG. 1. **Rhodesia and the Customs Union.**—Up to this date no duties have been charged on goods imported into Rhodesia. Duties are now imposed on certain articles with the view of raising an estimated

sum of £60,000 a year, but they are not to be put on goods produced or manufactured within the South African Customs Union, or on those specified in the free list of the Customs Union tariff.

- - 9. **Reinforcements for Natal.**—Officially announced that the Government will send reinforcements to Natal. [On this point see 1900, Feb. 1, for official correspondence.] Special officers to be sent to Bechuanaland and Rhodesia to organise defence of frontier.

- - 16. **The command at the Cape.**—Major-Gen. Butler, commanding the British troops at the Cape, is recalled, being succeeded by Lieut.-Gen. Sir F. W. E. Forestier-Walker.

- - 19. **Fresh proposals by the Transvaal.**—Replying to Mr. Chamberlain's proposal of a joint commission the Transvaal Government offer, as an alternative scheme, a five years' retrospective franchise; eight new seats in the First Volksraad, and, if necessary, also in the Second Volksraad, for the population in the gold fields; and that new as well as old burghers shall vote for State President and Commandant-General. The despatch adds:—

“In putting forward the above proposals the Government assumes (a) that Her Majesty's Government will agree that the present intervention shall not form a precedent for similar future action, and that in the future no interference in the internal affairs of the Republic will take place; (b) that Her Majesty's Government will not further insist on the assertion of the suzerainty, the controversy on the subject being allowed tacitly to drop; (c) that arbitration (from which foreign element other than Orange Free State is to be excluded) will be conceded as soon as the franchise scheme has become law.”

[In a supplementary despatch the Transvaal Government stated that the acceptance of their proposals must be "expressly conditional" on the consent of Her Majesty's Government to the three points given above.]

-- 28. (a) **Mr. Chamberlain further explains the British position.**—Replying to the Boer proposals of Aug. 19, Mr. Chamberlain says Her Majesty's Government assume the proposals will not be hampered by conditions which would impair their effect, and that the South African Republic Government intend to grant immediate and substantial representation of the Uitlanders. That being so, Her Majesty's Government are unable to appreciate the objections to a Joint Commission of inquiry into the complicated details and technical questions upon which the practical effect of the proposals depends. Her Majesty's Government agree that the British Agent and such persons as the South African Republic may appoint shall make the necessary investigation on these points. Respecting intervention, Mr. Chamberlain says:—

"Her Majesty's Government hope that the fulfilment of the promises made, and the just treatment of the Uitlanders in future, will render unnecessary any further intervention on their behalf; but Her Majesty's Government cannot of course debar themselves from their rights under the Conventions, nor divest themselves of the ordinary obligations of a civilised Power to protect its subjects in a foreign country from injustice."

The position with respect to suzerainty is maintained, and in regard to arbitration Her Majesty's Government agree to a discussion of the form and scope of a Tribunal

of Arbitration from which foreigners and foreign influence are excluded. The despatch adds:—

“Her Majesty’s Government also desire to remind the Government of the South African Republic that there are other matters of difference between the two Governments which will not be settled by a grant of political representation to the Uitlanders, and which are not proper subjects for reference to arbitration. It is necessary that these should be settled concurrently with the questions now under discussion, and they will form, with the question of arbitration, proper subjects for consideration at the proposed conference.”

— — (b) **“The sands are running down.”**—Speaking at Highbury, Mr. Chamberlain says:—

“Mr. Kruger procrastinates in his replies. He dribbles out reforms like water from a squeezed sponge, and he either accompanies his offers with conditions which he knows to be impossible, or he refuses to allow us to make a satisfactory investigation of the nature and character of these reforms. . . . I do not think it will be denied by anyone . . . that we have been very moderate, very conciliatory in all we have written, in all that we have said, and that we have exhibited a patience which is really unparalleled in the relations between a paramount and a subordinate State. . . . The issues of peace and of war are in the hands of President Kruger and his advisers. Four years ago, if he had accepted the friendly advice which in all sincerity I tendered to him, none of this difficulty would have arisen. . . . Three months ago, if he had accepted the offer of a compromise by Sir A. Milner, we should not find ourselves in our present critical position. . . . The sands are running down in the glass. The situation is too fraught with danger, it is too strained, for any indefinite postponement. . . . If we are forced to make further preparations, and if this delay continues much longer, we shall not hold ourselves limited by what we have already offered.”

— — 31. **The results of suspense.**—Sir Alfred Milner telegraphs to Mr. Chamberlain that he is receiving

representations from many quarters to urge Her Majesty's Government to terminate the state of suspense, and he is satisfied that the distress is now really serious. He proceeds:—

“The most severe suffering is at Johannesburg. Business there is at a standstill; many traders have become insolvent, and others are only kept on their legs by the leniency of their creditors. . . . The purport of all the representations made to me is to urge prompt and decided action. . . . British South Africa is prepared for extreme measures, and is ready to suffer much in order to see the vindication of British authority. It is prolongation of the negotiations, endless and indecisive of result, that is dreaded.”

— SEPT. 1. **A Boer raid on editors.**—Arrest of Mr. Pakeman, editor of the *Johannesburg Leader*, on a charge of high treason, and unsuccessful attempt to arrest Mr. Monypenny, editor of the *Johannesburg Star* and correspondent of the *Times*, the latter getting away. [The charge against Mr. Pakeman was reduced to one of an offence against the Press Laws, and he was admitted to bail, but afterwards failed to appear. The State Attorney emphatically denied that he had issued the warrants, but it was affirmed with equal emphasis that he had telegraphed instructions concerning them. The incident had the effect of greatly increasing the uneasiness in Johannesburg, from which there was a continued exodus. On Sept. 4, Sir Alfred Milner spoke of this exodus, in a telegram to Mr. Chamberlain, as “taking formidable proportions.” He also said:—

“There is no doubt that the arrest of both editors was decided by the Government, and other arrests contemplated, intimidation of Uitlanders being the object.”]

— 2. **The Boers withdraw their five years' offer.**—

In answer to Mr. Chamberlain's despatch of Aug. 28 the South African Republic express the deepest regret that their offer of Aug. 19, "with the conditions attached thereto," has not been accepted, and say that their proposal "has now lapsed in consequence of the non-acceptance by Her Majesty's Government of these stipulations." The despatch discusses at considerable length the points at issue, and intimates acceptance, on conditions, of the invitation of Her Majesty's Government to form a Joint Commission of Inquiry.

— 7. **The Boers and the "massing" of troops.**—

The State Secretary asks for information "with reference to the alleged massing of troops round the borders of the Republic." [To this the High Commissioner replied :—

"I do not know what State Secretary refers to when he speaks of massing of troops. The British troops in South Africa are here to protect British interests and to provide against eventualities. Their number and position is no secret, but a matter of common knowledge."]

— 8. (a) **A plain intimation.**—Mr. Chamberlain replies to Boer despatch of Sept. 2 that Her Majesty's Government are still prepared to accept the proposals of Aug. 19, "taken by themselves" (*i.e.* without the three conditions), and says :—

"They earnestly press for an immediate and definite reply to their present proposal. . . . If, however, as they most anxiously hope will not be the case, the reply of the South African Republic Government is negative or inconclusive, Her Majesty's Government must reserve to themselves the right to reconsider the situation *de novo*, and to formulate their own proposals for a final settlement."

— (b) **Additional troops for Natal.**—A meeting of the Cabinet Council decides on sending to Natal 10,000 additional troops, of whom about 7,000 are to be furnished by India.

— (c) **Public feeling at Capetown.**—The following telegram is sent to Mr. Chamberlain :—

“Open-air meeting Capetown citizens implores prompt termination by Imperial Government of present tension, which is causing grave distress, bringing community face to bankruptcy, alienating moderate element here and Transvaal, and sapping British prestige. Considers further negotiations absolutely futile. Records unabated confidence in Sir Alfred Milner.—HAANS, Chairman.”

— 12. **Distress among the British.**—Terrible distress reported from Johannesburg. Relief Committee giving continuous help to 3,000 people. At Durban 1,100 refugees arrive during 48 hours.

— 16. (a) **The Transvaal insists on the conditions.**—Replying to Mr. Chamberlain's message of Sept. 8 the Transvaal Government, in a long despatch, decline to allow their proposals of Aug. 19 to be taken by themselves, “omitting the conditions on the acceptance of which alone the offer was based.”

— (b) **Sir George White.**—Lieut.-Gen. Sir George White, appointed to the chief command in Natal, leaves Southampton on the *Tantallon Castle*.

— (c) **The language question.**—In reference to the language question the Transvaal State Secretary says, in the course of a telegram to Sir A. Milner :—

“This Government has noticed with surprise the assertion that it had intimated to British Agent that the new members



to be chosen for South African Republic Volksraad should be allowed to use their own language. If it is thereby intended that this Government would have agreed that any other than the language of the country would have been used in the deliberations of the Volksraad, it wishes to deny same in the strongest manner. Leaving aside fact that it is not competent to introduce any such radical change, they have, up to now, not been able to understand the necessity or even advisability of making a recommendation to the Volksraad in the spirit suggested."

-- 19. **British troops near Free State borders.**—Sir Alfred Milner sends a despatch to President Steyn informing him that to protect the line of communication with the north a British force will be stationed near the Orange Free State borders, but this movement is in no way directed against the Free State. He adds that Her Majesty's Government hope for a friendly settlement of the differences with the Transvaal, but if this hope should be disappointed they look to the Free State to preserve strict neutrality, in which case the integrity of the territory will be respected under all circumstances.

-- 22. (a) **The situation to be considered afresh.**—Following on a meeting of the Cabinet held to-day, Mr. Chamberlain sends a despatch in which he expresses the profound regret of Her Majesty's Government that their moderate and conciliatory offer of Sept. 8 has been refused; repeats the assurance that they have no desire to interfere with the independence of the Republic, provided the conditions on which it was granted are honourably observed; absolutely denies and repudiates the right of the Republic to be a Sove-

reign international State; reasserts that the only object of Her Majesty's Government is to secure for the Uitlanders substantial and immediate representation, with the fair and just treatment formally promised in 1881, and proceeds:—

“The refusal of the Government of the South African Republic to entertain the offer thus made, coming as it does at the end of nearly four months of protracted negotiations, themselves the climax of an agitation extending over a period of more than five years, makes it useless to further pursue a discussion on the lines hitherto followed, and Her Majesty's Government are now compelled to consider the situation afresh, and to formulate their own proposals for a final settlement of the issues which have been created in South Africa by the policy constantly followed for many years by the Government of the South African Republic. They will communicate the result of their deliberations in a later despatch.”

— (b) **An Army Corps to be mobilised.**—The Cabinet Council decides on the mobilisation of an Army Corps for service in South Africa.

— 23. **Feeling in England.**—Peace demonstration in Trafalgar Square turned into one in favour of the Government. [A similar result followed the convening of other pro-Boer meetings in various parts of the country.]

— 27. **The attitude of the Orange Free State.**—The Orange Free State Volksraad passes a resolution in which it declares its opinion

“that there exists no cause for war, and that if a war is now begun or occasioned by Her Majesty's Government against the South African Republic this would morally be a war against the whole of the white population of South Africa, and would in its results be calamitous and criminal; and,

further, that the Orange Free State will honestly and faithfully observe its obligations towards the South African Republic arising out of the political alliance between the two Republics, whatever may happen."

- - 28.—Announced that a large contingent of the Army Service Corps will be at once sent to South Africa.

- - 30.—Transvaal troops reported to be moving towards the Natal frontier.

- OCT. 2. (a) **Chaos.**—Reported that chaos prevails in Pretoria. All business at a standstill; English newspapers suspended; flight of editors and correspondents to Natal. Volksraad adjourns *sine die*. The President, in an excited speech, declares war inevitable. "England had shown that she wished to fight, and his people would now show that they would fight under the eyes of the Lord." In Johannesburg general turmoil, shops barricaded, commandeering of men, horses and supplies, and "mad rush" of Uitlanders to leave the country. Continuous movement of troops to the frontier.

- - - (b) **President Steyn seeks a friendly settlement.**—Following up other messages to the same effect the President of the Orange Free State, in the course of a telegram to Sir Alfred Milner, says:—

"I am still strongly and sincerely desirous of seeing, and, if possible, aiding in, a friendly settlement of the differences between Her Majesty's Government and the South African Republic being arrived at."

- - - (c) **The Boer preparations.**—Reported that the Boer mobilisation is proceeding vigorously, and that a

complete plan of campaign has been arranged with the Orange Free State.

-- 3. (a) **Growing worse: seizure of gold by the Boers.**—Sir Alfred Milner telegraphs:—

“The situation is growing steadily worse. The Orange Free State is expelling British subjects, and has closed its borders; practically the whole body of burghers is being commandeered. There is now a very large number of refugees in the colony. Bar gold, estimated at over half a million, which was about to be exported in the usual course, has been seized by the South African Republic at its frontier.”

[Deplorable stories were told as to the ill-treatment and the sufferings of the refugees during their flight.]

--- (b) **Colonial contingents accepted: Infantry preferred.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs accepting offers of Colonial contingents. [In his messages to Canada, New South Wales, Victoria, and South Australia there occurred the words:—

“Units should consist of about 125 men; may be Infantry, Mounted Infantry, or Cavalry; in view of numbers already available Infantry most, Cavalry least, serviceable.”

This was in accordance with the views then entertained by the official military experts, who had not realised that one of the greatest wants of the campaign was likely to be just such cavalry as the Colonies were well able to provide. In the same way, also, these first Colonial contingents were restricted by the home authorities to smaller numbers than the Colonies were prepared to supply, the final arrangements being as follows:—New South Wales—one unit (125 men) Infantry, one unit (125) Mounted Infantry, a half-unit Medical Staff Corps, with one field hospital, 50

beds, ambulance horses and wagons, etc., and also a detachment of New South Wales Lancers from Aldershot; Victoria—two units; Queensland—two units; Western Australia and South Australia—one unit, each of 125 infantry; Tasmania—one unit of 80; New Zealand—250 Mounted Rifles; Canada—1,000 Infantry, with medical and surgical equipment, doctors and nurses sufficient for a hospital for the Canadians, a second Canadian contingent to follow in case of need. Offers also came to hand from the Federated Malay States, Lagos, and Hong Kong, but these were declined. The despatch of the contingents from the different Colonies was made the occasion of enthusiastic demonstrations of patriotic feeling. The prevailing sentiment throughout the Colonies was well expressed by the Governor of Victoria, Lord Brassey, who, in addressing the Victorians and Tasmanians, on their leaving Melbourne for South Africa, Oct. 29, said:—

“It was under the irresistible impulse of popular feeling that the resolve was taken to offer to Her Majesty the services of her citizen soldiers dwelling beneath the Southern Cross. On the shores of South Africa you will wheel into line with a Canadian contingent. All this marks an epoch—I would rather say a turning point—in British history. It speaks the firm resolve of the people of an empire on which the sun never sets to stand together, and in the hour of stress and strain to rally round the old flag. It is a noble and a wise resolve. It makes us all from this time forward and for ever absolutely secure against foreign aggression.”]

— 4. **Peace negotiations continued.**—Further exchange of long telegrams between President Steyn and Sir Alfred Milner (with the knowledge and approval

of Mr. Chamberlain) as to the possibilities of a peaceful settlement. Sir Alfred Milner had been authorised to say, "While intending shortly to put forward new proposals of their own, Her Majesty's Government is prepared to listen even at the eleventh hour to definite suggestions from the President of the Orange Free State for the termination of crisis which are not inconsistent with attainment of objects steadily avowed and pursued by them." President Steyn, however, asked for "an assurance by Her Majesty's Government that all further despatch and increase of troops will at once and during negotiations be stopped, and that those now on the water should either not be landed, or, at least, should remain as far removed as can be from the scene of possible hostilities." [There was a further exchange of telegrams on these and kindred points on Oct. 6 and 7, and even on Oct. 9, the day when the South African Republic issued its ultimatum, Sir Alfred Milner received still another telegram from the President of the Free State, expressing the hope that it was "not too late to rectify misunderstanding by mutual agreement to withdraw forces on both sides, and an undertaking by Her Majesty's Government to stop further increase of troops."]

- - 7. **Parliament: Reserves: Field Force.**—Royal Proclamations issued summoning Parliament to meet on Oct. 17, calling out a portion of the First Class Army Reserve, and requiring time-expired men, who would be entitled to be transferred to the Reserve, to continue in the Army service. [These proclamations were followed up by the issue of Army orders notifying

the mobilisation of a Field Force for South Africa. This Field Force was to consist of an Army Corps of three Divisions, with Line of Communication troops, and a Cavalry Division, representing altogether about 50,000 men. Gen. Sir Redvers Buller was appointed Commander-in-Chief in South Africa, with Major-Gen. Sir Archibald Hunter Chief of the Staff. The Infantry Divisions were to be commanded by Lieut.-Gen. Lord Methuen, Lieut.-Gen. Sir Francis Clery, and Lieut.-Gen. Sir William Gatacre; the Line of Communication troops by Lieut.-Gen. Sir F. Forestier-Walker; and the Cavalry Division by Lieut.-Gen. J. D. P. French. Sir George White would hold the separate command of the Field Force in Natal, with Lieut.-Gen. Sir W. P. Symons under him in command of an Infantry Division.]

- - 9. **Boer ultimatum.**—The Government of the South African Republic present to the British Agent at Pretoria a note in which they say that under the provisions of the Convention of London the exclusive right of that Government and of the Volksraad for the regulation of the franchise and the representation of the people is indisputable, but the friendly discussion they have entered into has assumed a more and more threatening tone on the part of Her Majesty's Government, so that a condition of extreme tension has been created; while the Transvaal Government can only see in the action of Her Majesty's Government in breaking off all friendly correspondence, and in intimating that they must now proceed to formulate their own proposals for a final settlement, a new violation of

Convention of London. No such proposals have yet been received, and even while friendly correspondence was still going on an increase of British troops on a large scale was introduced on the borders. "Having regard to occurrences in the history of this Republic which it is unnecessary here to call to mind," the Transvaal Government feel obliged to regard this military force as a threat against their independence. "Her Majesty's unlawful intervention in the internal affairs of this Republic, in conflict with the Convention of London, 1884, caused by the extraordinary strengthening of troops in the neighbourhood of the borders of this Republic, has caused an intolerable condition of things," and the Transvaal Government "feels itself called upon and obliged to press earnestly and with emphasis for an immediate termination of this state of things," and to request Her Majesty's Government to give it the assurance—

"(a) That all points of mutual difference shall be regulated by the friendly course of arbitration or by whatever amicable way may be agreed upon by this Government with Her Majesty's Government.

"(b) That the troops on the borders of this Republic shall be instantly withdrawn.

"(c) That all reinforcements of troops which have arrived in South Africa since the 1st June, 1899, shall be removed from South Africa within a reasonable time, to be agreed upon with this Government, and with a mutual assurance and guarantee on the part of this Government that no attack upon or hostilities against any portion of the possessions of the British Government shall be made by the Republic during further negotiations within a period of time to be subsequently agreed



upon between the Governments, and this Government will, on compliance therewith, be prepared to withdraw the armed Burghers of this Republic from the borders.

“(d) That Her Majesty’s troops which are now on the high seas shall not be landed in any port of South Africa.

“This Government must press for an immediate and affirmative answer to these four questions, and earnestly requests Her Majesty’s Government to return such an answer before or upon Wednesday, the 11th October, 1899, not later than 5 o’clock p.m., and it desires further to add that in the event of unexpectedly no satisfactory answer being received by it within that interval [it] will with great regret be compelled to regard the action of Her Majesty’s Government as a formal declaration of war, and will not hold itself responsible for the consequences thereof, and that in the event of any further movements of troops taking place within the above-mentioned time in the nearer directions of our borders this Government will be compelled to regard that also as a formal declaration of war.”

— 10. (a) **British reply to the ultimatum.**—Mr. Chamberlain telegraphs to Sir Alfred Milner :—

“Her Majesty’s Government have received with regret the peremptory demands of the Government of the South African Republic conveyed in your telegram of 9th October. You will inform the Government of the South African Republic, in reply, that the conditions demanded by the Government of the South African Republic are such as Her Majesty’s Government deem it impossible to discuss.”

— (b) **The refugees.**—A telegram from Capetown says :—

“It is calculated that 45,000 persons have left the Rand since the beginning of the present crisis, and more are still coming. With each train come further harrowing recitals of the misery endured by the women and children during the long journey in crowded carriages and trucks. . . . Heartrending scenes of misery and wretchedness are of daily occurrence.”

-- 11. (a) **Mr. Balfour's views.**—Mr. Balfour, speaking at Haddington, says the people of this country have come round to the view that the Government, if they have erred at all, have erred on the side of patience.

-- (b) **A Mansion House Fund started.**—The Lord Mayor opens a fund at the Mansion House for the relief of the refugees.

-- (c) **President Steyn denounces the British.**—President Steyn issues a proclamation in which he denounces the British Government as an unscrupulous enemy who is attacking the sister Republic, and has long sought a pretext to annihilate the Afrikanders. He calls on the Free State burghers to “stand up as one man against the oppressor and violator of right.”

-- (d) **A state of war.**—The time fixed by the Boers for compliance with their ultimatum expires at 5 p.m. The first act of war is the seizure by Free State Boers of a train, belonging to the Natal Railway Company, on the Free State borders.

-- 12. (a) **The first shot.**—At Kraaipan, about 40 miles south of Mafeking, the Boers attack and derail an armoured train which is proceeding with two 7-pounders and ammunition for Col. Baden-Powell at Mafeking. [The result of this operation was to at once isolate Mafeking.]

-- (b) **Mr. Kruger will “stagger humanity.”**—Telegram from Mr. Kruger to the *New York World* published. In it he says:—

“War is certain. The Republics are determined, if they must belong to England, that a price will have to be paid which will stagger humanity.”

- - - (c) **Boers advance on Natal.**—Boer commandos move in force towards Natal and occupy Laing's Nek.

- - - (d).—All available British troops from the garrison in the Cape district moved northward to De Aar.

- - - (e).—Mansion House Fund for refugees amounts to £25,000.

- - - (f).—Mr. Conyngham Greene, British agent, leaves Pretoria for British territory.

- - 14. (a).—Sir Redvers Buller and Staff leave Waterloo for South Africa.

- - - (b).—Boer commando crosses into Natal and occupies Newcastle.

- - 15. (a) **Further Boer advance.**—Boers advance from Newcastle to Hattings Spruit, within easy striking distance of British advanced position at Glencoe.

- - - (b) **Cape Volunteers called out.**—All the Volunteer regiments in Cape Colony called out for active service.

- - 16. (a).—British military authorities order the evacuation of Dundee.

- - - (b).—Kimberley isolated.

- - - (c).—Great and enthusiastic meeting at the Guildhall in support of the Government.

- - 17. (a) **Parliament.**—Meeting of Parliament to discuss Government demand for supplies for carrying on war. Lord Salisbury says he has no doubt of the future, which would finally determine the supremacy of British influence in South Africa. Opposition leaders in both Houses support the demand for supplies.

- - - (b).—Armoured train in action at Spytfontein, near Kimberley.

- - - (c).—Boers destroy bridges at Modder River and Fourteen Streams.

- - 18. (a) **War supplies wanted.**—The War Office intimates that it will want another £10,000,000, and an additional 35,000 men. Mr. Balfour announces that the Militia is to be embodied, and the Militia Reserves called out. [The modesty of these requests for money and men was in striking contrast with the actual requirements of the situation as subsequently developed. As time went on there was a superabundance of proof that there had been a most serious failure either to realise the possible gravity of the war, or to make adequate preparations for the carrying of it on.]

- - - (b) **Boer annexations.**—Transvaal issues a proclamation declaring British Bechuanaland and Griqualand West part of its territory; and the Orange Free State also proclaims an annexation of territory, including the Kimberley district. [See Oct. 28 (a).]

- - - (c).—Mansion House Fund for the refugees amounts to £107,000 at the end of the first week. [This total included a donation of 500 guineas from the Queen.]

- - 19. **Mr. Chamberlain's defence of the Government.**—Speaking in the Commons Mr. Chamberlain makes a vigorous reply "to the accusations and insinuations which have been made against Her Majesty's Govern-

ment during the past few months." [Among other things he said:—

"Having most carefully considered all the circumstances in the light of the most recent events—in the light of the ultimatum and in the light of recent speeches of President Kruger and others—I have now come to the conclusion that war was always inevitable. . . . From the first day I came into office I hoped for peace, I strove for peace. At that time, and at an earlier period, down even to the most recent period, I have believed in peace. . . . We are going to war in defence of principles—the principles upon which this Empire has been founded, and upon which alone it can exist. . . . If we are to maintain our existence as a great Power in South Africa we are bound to show that we are both willing and able to protect British subjects everywhere when they are made to suffer from oppression and injustice. . . . In the interests of South Africa, and in the interests of the British Empire, Great Britain must remain the paramount Power in South Africa. These are the two principles, and we are at war now because the oligarchy at Pretoria, aided and abetted by President Steyn and advisers outside the Republic, has persistently pursued, from the very day of the signing of the Convention of 1881 down to now, a policy which tended to the evasion of its obligations; a policy by which it has broken its promises; by which it has placed, gradually, but surely, British subjects in the Transvaal in a position of distinct inferiority; by which it has conspired against and undermined the suzerainty, the paramountcy which belongs to Great Britain. . . . The animosity, the racial animosity, which has been the curse of South Africa, is based upon contempt. . . . These animosities are bitter, are increasing, and will increase as long as one white race in South Africa has contempt for the other. . . . In my opinion there will never be an end to racial animosity until both the white races have learnt, I will not say to love each other, but, at all events, to respect each other. . . . The treatment of the natives of the Transvaal has been disgraceful; it has been brutal; it has been unworthy of a civilised Power. . . . My opinion is

that the independence of which we hear so much, and which the Boers are said to value so highly, is a free right to treat as they like the people under their control. . . . The suzerainty was never buried, never abolished, from 1884 down to the present time. . . . It matters little what is the word, provided we have the substance."

- - 20. **The Battle of Talana Hill.**—Defeat of Boers at Dundee. [Newcastle had been evacuated by the British, but in order that we should hold as much of northern Natal as possible Gen. Sir William Penn Symons was sent to Craigside Camp, between Glencoe and Dundee, with 3,000 men, Sir George White remaining at Ladysmith with 9,000. The Boers planned to surround Symons's troops by a simultaneous combination of three separate columns—one under Gen. Joubert, from the main body, advancing on the road from Newcastle to Glencoe; one under Gen. Erasmus, which, coming from Hattings Spruit, was to attack in front; and a third, under Lucas Meyer, marching from Vryheid. At the same time the Free State Boers were to engage Gen. White's attention at Ladysmith, while Viljoen, at Elandslaagte, was to cut off the line of communication between Glencoe and Ladysmith. Lucas Meyer, posted on Talana Hill, near Glencoe, opened fire, however, at 5.30 a.m., before Joubert or Erasmus had come up. The 13th, 67th, and 69th Batteries replied vigorously, and then, after the Boer guns had been silenced, the 1st King's Royal Rifles, the 2nd Dublin Fusiliers, and the 1st Royal Irish Fusiliers began to advance across two miles of broken ground, the British artillery fire being maintained all the time. When half-way up the hill the regiments made a final rush for the

top, under a deadly hail from the Boers. Our artillery ceased firing, and then our men reached the summit, driving the enemy before them in headlong flight. The cavalry pursued them, but one squadron of the 18th Hussars went too far, and were taken prisoners. Gen. Symons was mortally wounded. Heavy British losses: 8 officers killed, 11 wounded; 40 non-commissioned officers and men killed, and 84 wounded; 331 of all ranks captured or missing. Though the British had gained the victory it was found desirable to retire to Ladysmith, the position being untenable owing to the large reinforcements of the Boers.]

-- 21. (a) **Battle of Elandslaagte.**—Further British victory at Elandslaagte. [It was essential that a large party of Boers, under Viljoen, who had taken up their position between Dundee and Ladysmith, should be driven out to ensure the safety of the troops from Glencoe, returning under Gen. Yule, now in command. The Boers were in strong position, but were completely routed by British, under Gen. French. Boer camp, with two guns, taken after three hours' fighting, and communication with Glencoe reopened. British loss: 5 officers killed, 30 wounded; 50 non-commissioned officers and men killed, 169 wounded; 10 missing. Gen. Viljoen killed; Gen. Kock and Col. Schiel made prisoners.]

--- (b) **A Mansion House War Fund.**—The Lord Mayor opens a Transvaal War Fund for (1) widows and orphans, (2) sick and wounded, (3) disabled soldiers and sailors, and (4) wives and children; any donations not otherwise specified to be devoted to the benefit of

widows and orphans. The four branches of the Fund will be administered as follows: (1) Royal Patriotic Fund; (2) British Red Cross Society; (3) Lloyd's Patriotic Fund; (4) Soldiers and Sailors' Families Association. [See Dec. 8 (a).]

— 22. (a) **The Queen's sympathy.**—The Queen telegraphs from Balmoral to the Secretary for War:—

“My heart bleeds for these dreadful losses. Again to-day a great success, but fear very dearly bought. Would you try and convey my warmest heartfelt sympathy with the near relations of the fallen and wounded, and admiration of the conduct of those they have lost?”

— (b) **Gen. Yule's retirement on Ladysmith.**—Boers having assembled at Dundee in overwhelming numbers, rendering further stay of British impossible, Gen. Yule begins his retirement to Ladysmith, leaving wounded in charge of medical attendants, and proceeding by way of the Helpmakaar Road. [When the British left Joubert was shelling Dundee.]

— (c).—Promotion of Col. (local Lieut.-Gen.) Symons to the rank of Major-General “for distinguished service in the field.”

— 23. (a) **Gen. Symons.**—Death of Gen. Symons.

— (b).—The Boers occupy the town of Dundee.

— 24. (a).—To facilitate Gen. Yule's retirement Sir George White attacks and defeats a party of Boers who, with one gun, are in a position of exceptional strength at Rietfontein, seven miles from Ladysmith.

— (b).—Defenders of Kimberley have a sharp fight with a Boer force of 700 to the north of the town and defeat them.



-- 25.—Speaking at Glasgow, Sir Edward Grey says the attitude and aims of the Governments of the Boer Republics had made war inevitable, and though mistakes had doubtless been committed by our Government in the course of the negotiations, they did not affect the real issues.

-- 26. (a) **Gen. Yule at Ladysmith.**—Gen. Yule's column reaches Ladysmith, having marched the last 32 miles without a halt. [The retirement had been effected in a most masterly manner. Between 11 p.m. on the 23rd and 3 a.m. on the 24th the column marched across the Biggarsberg Mountains, going through a defile which 50 or 60 men could have held against them. When the column reached Ladysmith some of the men had had practically no sleep for a week.

--- (b).—Basuto chiefs, at a great meeting attended by the British Resident, enthusiastically declare their loyalty to the Queen.

-- 27. **Lord Rosebery's views.**—Lord Rosebery, speaking at Bath, says:—

“It will be time enough when the war is over to examine the question of correspondence and of preparations that may then present themselves. To my mind all these questions were wiped out by the ultimatum received from the Boers. . . . The Transvaal question . . . is the effort of a nation or a community to put back the hands of the clock. . . . Mr. Gladstone thought that Great Britain could afford to do things, owing to her overpowering might and dominion, which other nations could not afford to do without a risk of misunderstanding. . . . So far from the Boers taking the magnanimity as it was intended, they regarded it as a proof of weakness on which they could encroach. . . . With the money derived from the gold the Transvaal Government was gradually piling

up a great military power, armed to the teeth. That was a standing menace to our dominion. If it had continued we should have had to consider whether we, who rule so many nations, were to become a subject nation in our turn in South Africa; and had we become a subject nation, or remained even in the position in which we were, it is scarcely possible to doubt that we should have lost South Africa itself."

- - 28. (a).—Sir Alfred Milner and Mr. Schreiner issue a proclamation declaring the Boer "annexations" of portions of Cape Colony null and void.

- - - (b).—Commandos, estimated to comprise from 16,000 to 18,000 men, under Gen. Joubert, closing in around Ladysmith.

- - 29. **The mishap of Nicholson's Nek.**—The Boers having made a further advance, Sir George White sends out from Ladysmith a column under Col. Carleton, consisting of Gloucesters, Royal Irish Fusiliers, and the 10th Mountain Battery, to turn the enemy's right flank at Nicholson's Nek. During the night, and when the column was only two miles from its destination, some boulders rolled down the hill and some shots were fired, with the result that the mules carrying the guns and spare ammunition stampeded, running into the enemy's lines. Our men marched on and occupied a hill, which they prepared to defend. [The enemy kept up a dropping fire all night, and at 9.30 a.m., receiving strong reinforcements, made repeated vigorous attacks. The British defended the position until three in the afternoon, when, their ammunition being exhausted, they were obliged to surrender.]

- - 30. (a) **The Battle of Farquhar's Farm.**—As

part of the movement of the previous day Gen. White orders a reconnaissance in force in the direction of a position taken up by the enemy, who have placed guns there for the assault on Ladysmith. British troops outnumbered, but at the critical moment Capt. Hedworth Lambton and a party of bluejackets from Durban arrive with some 12-pounders, which they set to work with such good effect that the Boers are driven back several miles, and the British return to Ladysmith. [The total casualties for the two days were:—Officers, killed 6, wounded 9; non-commissioned officers and men, killed 54, wounded 231; missing and prisoners, officers 43, non-commissioned officers and men 906 (including the missing men of the Royal Irish Fusiliers, whose number was not known, but was estimated at 442).

— (b).—Telegram published stating that Mr. Rhodes, who is with the besieged garrison at Kimberley, has mounted and equipped a town guard of 400 men at a cost of £15,000. Mr. Rhodes had informed the garrison that there was one man in Kimberley the Boers wanted to get, and that was himself, but he felt quite safe.

— (c).—Announced that the German Emperor, who is Colonel-in-chief of the Royal Dragoons, has sent the following telegram to the Lieutenant-Colonel: “Bid my farewell to the regiment. May you all return safe and well.”

— 31. (a).—Sir Redvers Buller arrives at Capetown.

— (b).—Special Army Order issued calling out the first-class Reserves of three regiments.

- NOV. 1. "We have got to see this thing through."  
—Lord Rosebery, speaking in Edinburgh, refers to the reverse in South Africa, and says:—

"I do not think it is in the nature of Britons to take much notice of things of this kind. We are accustomed to them. We have had a good many of them, and we generally muddle out right in the end. But, whatever happens, there can be no mistake about this—we have got to see this thing through."

- - 2. (a).—The Princess of Wales gives to Central British Red Cross Committee the £9,000 balance of a Sudan War Fund at her disposal, the money to be spent on the fitting out and equipment of a hospital ship to bring sick and wounded troops home from South Africa.

- - - (b).—Mansion House War Relief Fund, £103,000; Refugees Fund, £153,000. Large number of local funds being opened in the provinces.

- - - (c).—Town of Ladysmith completely isolated by Boers.

- - - (d).—Death of Lieut. Egerton, wounded in the action at Farquhar's Farm.

- - - (e).—Gen. French captures a Boer camp at Tatham's Farm.

- - - (f).—Colenso evacuated by British.

- - 3. (a).—Army Order directs the embodiment of the Militia Infantry units connected with 35 regular regiments.

- - - (b).—Gen. Joubert addresses a protest to Sir George White against the use of lyddite.

— — — (*c*).—Second contingent of New South Wales troops leave Sydney for South Africa.

— — — (*d*).—The 6th Dragoon Guards, 73rd Battery of Royal Field Artillery, and other regiments leave England for South Africa.

— — — (*e*).—Fighting at Estcourt. Boers in force driven from all their positions, and three of their guns shelled into silence.

— — — (*f*).—Colenso evacuated.

— — — (*g*).—Martial law proclaimed in the northern districts of Cape Colony, and the garrison of Stormberg and other stations withdrawn.

— — 4.—Large number of troops leave Southampton for South Africa. [From this date the departures were almost continuous.]

— — 6. (*a*) **Royal contributions to the War Fund.**—The Queen contributes £1,000 to the Transvaal War Fund, desiring that £400 should be allotted to the branch for wives and children, and £200 to each of the three other branches. [See Oct. 21.] The Prince of Wales sends 250 guineas for the wives and families, the Duke and Duchess of York £100, and the Grand Duchess of Mecklenburg-Strelitz £100.

— — — (*b*).—A special Mincing Lane list opened at the Commercial Sale Rooms, and another by the members of the wine and spirit trade.

— — — (*c*).—Speaking in London, Lord Wolseley refers to the smoothness and success with which the mobilisation of the South African Field Force has been carried out.

- - - (d).—British garrison withdrawn from Estcourt. Troops retire from Stormberg, in the north of Cape Colony, on the order of Sir Redvers Buller, and, with all stores, fall back on Queenstown.

- - 7. (a).—Bombardment of Ladysmith and Kimberley continued.

- - - (b).—News received from Col. Baden-Powell at Mafeking says that fighting goes on daily, but all the engagements result in favour of the garrison.

- - 9. (a) **Lord Salisbury and foreign interference.**—Lord Salisbury, speaking at the Mansion House, says:—

“What was the cause of the war and of the ultimatum? It was not caused by any demand that we made. It so happened that at the moment the ultimatum was issued we had withdrawn our demands, and there was none before the Transvaal Government. It was because we had taken measures to increase the amount of our forces in that part of Her Majesty’s dominions. But if that had been done a month or two months sooner exactly the same result would have taken place. . . . The evil dates further back. It dates from those unfortunate arrangements of 1881 and 1884. I have seen it suggested . . . that other foreign Powers will interfere in this conflict, and will, in some form or other, dictate to those who are concerned in it what its upshot should be. Do not let any man think that it is in that fashion that the conflict will be concluded. We shall have to carry it through ourselves. The interference of nobody else will have any effect upon it. . . . We seek no gold fields. We seek no territory. What we desire is equal rights for all men of all races and security for our fellow-subjects and for the Empire.”

On the same occasion Lord Wolseley says:—

“Up to the present moment we have only mobilised one Army Corps. To-day orders were sent out for the mobilisation

of another division of Her Majesty's Army, and I can assure you of this, that should the Prime Minister call upon us to mobilise a second Army Corps we are quite prepared to do it, and in the same manner as the first. . . . Speaking broadly, there have been mobilised in the last month—since October 9, the first day of mobilisation, up to the present moment—over 53,000 men, and of these 53,000 44,000 are now on the sea on their way to South Africa. I think that is a very creditable operation for both the Army and the Navy."

— (b) **Sir H. H. Fowler on the war.**—Speaking at Wolverhampton, Sir H. H. Fowler describes the Boer ultimatum as "unparalleled in the history of diplomacy," and says the objects of the war are to defend the dominions and the subjects of the Queen from foreign attack, for the defence of the white races of South Africa, and for securing their equality, and for the defence, also, of "the supremacy, the paramountcy, the predominance—let them call it by what term they liked—of the British power in South Africa."

— (c) **The first transport.**—Arrival of the first of the transports, the *Roslin Castle*, at the Cape. [The *Roslin Castle* was followed by others in rapid succession, as many as four, or even five, sometimes landing their troops in the course of a single day.]

— (d) **The German Emperor and the war.**—Reported that the German Emperor has caused an order to be issued expressing His Majesty's wish that no Prussian officers, whether on active service or on furlough, should at present be granted leave to go to South Africa, and that everything possible should be done to prevent former Prussian officers from taking part in the war, so as to preserve a strict neutrality.

- - - (e).—In a general attack on Ladysmith the Boers are driven back with a loss of from 700 to 800 men.

- - 10.—Skirmish near Belmont. Lieut.-Col. Keith Falconer, Northumberland Fusiliers, killed.

- - 11. (a) **The Queen and the troops.**—The Queen inspects the Composite Regiment of Household Cavalry, and, addressing them through Col. Neeld, commanding officer, says:—

“I have asked you, who have always served near me, to come here that I may take leave of you before you start on your long voyage to a distant part of my Empire, in whose defence your comrades are now so nobly fighting. I know that you will always do your duty to your Sovereign and country wherever that duty may lead you, and I pray God to protect you and bring you back safely home.”

- - - (b).—Orders given for the mobilisation of a Fifth Division.

- - 13.—Up to this date eleven transports have arrived at Capetown, with nearly 8,000 of the Army Corps, the majority being sent on to Durban to mobilise under Gen. Hildyard for the relief of Ladysmith.

- - 14. (a) **The reasons for the retrocession of 1881.**—Lord Kimberley, speaking at Newcastle-on-Tyne, says:—

“It was perfectly natural that there should be in the minds of many men the idea that the real origin and cause of the present unhappy state of things in South Africa was the Convention of 1881, for which he and the Government of the day were responsible. So far as he was concerned, and to a great extent Mr. Gladstone, their reason was not, as some people thought, a mere sentimental reason. They found



themselves in this position: the Free State was then very friendly. There was at its head President Brand—as good a friend of ours as any man in South Africa. President Brand used his utmost influence with the people of the Free State to keep them back from joining the Transvaal Republic in the event of the war going on. At last Mr. Brand sent a message in which he said he had done his utmost, that he had gone to the end of his tether, and could not hold his burghers in any more, and that if England went on she would have the Free State against her. More than that, the Government had plain indications from the Colony itself that there was sympathy there which might give rise to an extreme and serious difficulty; and the conclusion they came to, whether it was wise or not, was that, painful to the last degree as it was for them to make peace under such circumstances, they were taking the right course to avert the calamity they saw impending.”

— (b).—Lieut.-Gen. Sir Charles Warren appointed to command the Fifth Division.

— (c).—Boers enter Aliwal North, 600 strong, hoist the Free State Flag, and declare town and district part of the Orange Free State.

— (d).—In a reconnaissance from Ladysmith the British drive back the Boers, their lyddite shells having a terrifying effect on the enemy.

— 15. (a).—Armoured train from Estcourt reconnoitres on the road to Colenso. Two trucks in front of the engine overturn. Party then attacked by Boers. Engine and tender get back to Estcourt with 15 men. One hundred men of the Dublin Fusiliers and Natal Light Infantry reported missing.

— (b).—Speaking in Manchester Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman says the Liberals could have no hesitation in supporting the Government after the affront of the

Boer ultimatum, the invasion of two colonies, and the impudent annexation of slices of Her Majesty's dominions. Still the first duty of the Government had been to keep out of war, and they had convinced everyone that they meant war all the time.

- - 18.—Sir W. Gatacre arrives at Queenstown. Sir C. F. Clery assumes command of troops south of Ladysmith.

- - 20. (a).—Stated from Capetown that the Boers have been completely disconcerted by the failure of their plans for "rushing" Natal.

- - - (b).—London Stock Exchange contributes £23,664 to the Transvaal War Fund, which now stands at £270,000.

- - 21. **The Queen's present of chocolate.**—Announced that the Queen will, as soon as possible, send a "little personal present," in the form of chocolate, packed in a specially designed tin, to each of her soldiers serving in South Africa. Stated that 100,000 of these gifts will be required.

- - 23. (a) **Battle of Belmont.**—Lord Methuen's column, organised in the north of Cape Colony for the relief of Kimberley, finds the Boers in a strong position near Belmont, north of the Orange River. British carry three ridges in succession, and a complete victory is obtained. Our losses: 3 officers killed, 25 wounded; 50 rank and file killed, 220 wounded.

- - - (b).—Fighting at Tugela Drift. Body of from 200 to 300 Boers driven off by 140 Natal troops after a two hours' engagement.

— — — (c).—Skirmish at Willow Grange between Gen. Hildyard's force and the Boers surrounding Estcourt. Enemy compelled to retire from the high ground they occupied. British loss: about 14 killed and 50 wounded.

— — 25. (a) **The Battle of Enslin (Graspan).**—Continuing his advance towards Kimberley Lord Methuen is opposed at Enslin, near Graspan, by a force of 2,500 Boers, with six guns and two machine-guns. Enemy show great stubbornness, and the Naval Brigade, which acts with the greatest gallantry, loses heavily, including Commander Ethelston, of the *Powerful*. Enemy's position carried after four hours' fighting. Naval Brigade losses: 4 officers and 10 seamen and marines killed; 2 officers, 13 petty-officers and seamen, and 76 marines wounded.

— — — (b).—Gen. Buller at Durban.

— — — (c).—British force moves up to Frere.

— — 28. (a) **Mr. Balfour on the war.**—Mr. Balfour, speaking at Dewsbury, says:—

“I now believe this—that the declaration of war by the Transvaal Government and the Orange Free State was not any despairing struggle for liberty but a bold bid for empire. I now believe that it was not to preserve what they had, but to get what they had not, that they went to war. I now believe that nothing less than to make themselves—these two Republics as a nucleus and what additions they could obtain to them—the centre of a Dutch-speaking paramount Power in South Africa, and to exclude for ever the hated Britisher from any dominating influence in the future of that part of the world—that is the only explanation which fits the facts; that is the only explanation which, amongst other things, makes the policy of the Orange Free State credible. . . . Never again

shall we allow to grow up within our midst communities of our own creation in a position to use the liberties that we have granted them to turn their country into a place of arms to be used against us. Never again shall we see the spectre of an English colony being invaded, of English farmers being raided, of the Queen's dominions being annexed by these insolent Republics. Whatever else be done, whatever other arrangements are come to, however the future policy be worked out, the people of this country are unalterably determined that the paramount Power in South Africa shall be the paramount Power indeed, and that the *Pax Britannica* shall be supreme over all the regions in which the Queen now has territorial rights or paramount rights arising from her position."

— (b).—Message from Kuruman, published to-day, says that on Nov. 13 the place was attacked by 500 Boers, who, after continuous fighting for six days and nights, were driven off, having lost 30 killed and 28 wounded, as against a British loss of one killed and one wounded. [See 1900, Jan. 2.]

— 29. (a) **The Queen and the troops.**—The Queen inspects the 1st Battalion Grenadier Guards at the Victoria Barracks, Windsor, and sees the wives and children of some of the men now serving at the front.

— (b) **The Battle of Modder River.**—Lord Methuen, resuming his march, finds the enemy, 11,000 strong, in extensive and skilfully made trenches, and with ten guns, on the Modder River, 24½ miles from Kimberley. Desperate battle follows, lasting 10 hours. Our men without food or water, and in a burning sun all the time. Enemy compelled to quit their position, and a small British force gets across the river. Boer entrenchments impregnable to rifle fire, but our superior

artillery wins the day. British losses: 4 officers and 66 men killed; 20 officers and 393 men wounded.

— — — (c) **Mr. Chamberlain explains what we are fighting for.**—Mr. Chamberlain, in a speech at Leicester, says:—

“We are fighting for justice to our fellow-countrymen; we are fighting for good government and freedom from oppression, fighting for the due performance of sacred promises, for the observance of solemn conventions, fighting also to resist an attack upon the Queen’s dominions, and insult and injury to her loyal subjects. . . . British skill, British valour, and British resolution will carry the matter through to a successful issue. We have seen how it has been possible to perform a feat which has never been performed before, and which no other nation in the civilised world would even now attempt to accomplish—to place a great force of 50,000 men—soon, I hope, to be increased to 80,000, or it may be 90,000 men—to place this force without an accident, without confusion, almost without a hitch, in a country distant nearly 7,000 miles from these shores. . . . The Boers, by their own acts and not by ours, have created an entirely new situation. They, and not we, have brought us out of the region of conferences and compromises. They have made for us a clean sheet upon which we can write what we please. They have torn up the conventions to which they owed their independence, they have scattered them to the winds. We look back upon the past 18 years—those troubled years in which we have always been on the verge of a crisis—we see what terrible sacrifices we have to bear now that the crisis has actually come. We see that the favoured position which they owe to our grace has been made, and has proved capable of becoming, a serious danger to the Empire and to our position in South Africa, and has been made a means of oppressing our fellow-subjects; and a Government which, in view of this experience, ignored these facts and placed it once more in the power of the two Republics, who have so abused their opportunities, to

renew their intrigues against the paramount Power, to threaten again the peace of South Africa, to continue the attempt to place one white race in subjection under the heels of the other—any Government which did this would betray the interests of the Empire, and would deserve the condemnation of every right-thinking man.”

– DEC. **An expansion of Rhodesia.**—North-Western (Barotseland) Rhodesia Order in Council grants to the British South Africa Company administrative powers over the whole of Barotseland—a country as large as the German Empire. [See 1900, Feb. 9.]

– – 1.—Australian and Canadian contingents leave Cape Town for the front.

– – 4.—Announced that Major-Gen. Kelly-Kenny will command a Sixth Division.

– – 8. (a) **The Mansion House War Fund.**—At a conference held at the Mansion House the Lord Mayor says that of the £386,685 thus far subscribed to the War Fund, £257,364 has been either earmarked for the widows and orphans’ fund (Royal Patriotic Fund), or placed to its credit, where no directions have been given, in accordance with the original terms of the appeal; £31,427 has been given for the sick and wounded (British Red Cross Society), £38,150 for disabled soldiers and sailors (Lloyd’s Patriotic Fund), and £59,744 for the Soldiers’ and Sailors’ Families Association. In future he will exercise a discretion as to the distribution of funds not specially earmarked.

– – – (b) **A sortie from Ladysmith.**—Gen. Hunter, with 500 Natal Volunteers and 100 Imperial Light Horse, makes a sortie from Ladysmith and surprises

Gun Hill. He captures the hill, destroys by gun-cotton a 6-inch gun and a 4·7-inch howitzer, and brings a Maxim back to Ladysmith.

- - - (c).—A force of 1,000 Free State Boers attack our line of communications at Enslin, but are driven back and chased by Cavalry.

- - 10. **A reverse at Stormberg.**—Gen. Gatacre, with about 2,500 men, attacks Boer position at Stormberg. Owing to errors of the guides, an underestimate of the distance, and other accidents, the attack is delivered against the wrong part of the position, which is found impregnable. Troops obliged to return, which they do in good order, notwithstanding great fatigue from a long night march. Casualties: killed, 31 non-commissioned officers and men; wounded, 7 officers, 51 non-commissioned officers and men; missing and prisoners, 13 officers, 620 non-commissioned officers and men.

- - 11. **A reverse at Magersfontein.**—Lord Methuen attacks the Boers, 12,000 strong, on the heights of Magersfontein, a few miles north of Modder River. Artillery shell for several hours the enemy's position, which is a very strong one, and at daybreak the Highland Brigade attack the south end of the height, but fail, meeting with a terrible fire from an unsuspected Boer entrenchment, and they retire with heavy loss. Attack afterwards made on left by Cavalry, Mounted Infantry, and Howitzer Battery, while Guards advance on right and centre, also supported by Howitzer and Field Artillery. Gordons sent to support Highlanders, and attack renewed. [Our troops maintained their position for the night, but next day Lord Methuen, finding the

enemy in great force in the trenches on his front, withdrew in perfect order to Modder River, where he occupied a secure position.] British casualties: 23 officers and 148 non-commissioned officers and men killed; 45 officers and 647 non-commissioned officers and men wounded; missing or taken prisoners, 107. Among those killed was Gen. Wauchope, in command of the Highland Brigade.

-- 14. **The Duke of Devonshire on the war.**—The Duke of Devonshire, speaking at York, says:—

“The longer the struggle lasts, and the more arduous the efforts which we may be called upon to make in order to bring it to a conclusion, the more fixed will be our determination that never again shall our South African colonies be called upon to bear the indignities, the sufferings, and the loss which they have experienced in this struggle, nor shall our people be called upon for the expenditure of the best and the bravest among us in the assertion of our elementary rights. But there is a question which is still more important than the future of South Africa itself; it is the maintenance of our Colonial Empire. It is a prize worth fighting for. . . . Though the effort we are called upon to make is undoubtedly a great one, greater far than any of us had expected, or, I think, had reason to expect, yet, when we have passed through the ordeal—which, I believe, with the aid of a good and a just cause, supported by the endurance which the British people have in still greater difficulties shown before now—if we pass through the ordeal with honour and success, men will say in after times that the great South African War of the close of the nineteenth century was one of the greatest of the causes which led to the consolidation, the union, and the power of the great Colonial British Empire in the world.”

-- 15. (a) **Repulse of Gen. Buller on the Tugela.**—With the view of forcing the passage of the Tugela



River, near Colenso, where there are two fordable places two miles apart, Gen. Buller advances from Chieveley, and directs Gen. Hart's brigade to attack on the left, and Gen. Hildyard on the right, while Gen. Lyttelton, with a central brigade, is to be prepared to support either. Seeing early in the day that Hart would be unable to force the passage, Buller directs him to withdraw, but in the meantime Hart has attacked with great gallantry. Buller then orders Hildyard to attack, and Hildyard's force carry Colenso village at the point of the bayonet under a raking fire. But two batteries of Artillery which advance close to the river bank without any cover are suddenly overwhelmed by a terrific fire from the enemy's masked batteries and rifle-pits at close range, and eventually, after a desperate struggle, Gen. Buller orders a retirement to Chieveley Camp, 11 guns being left behind. Casualties: 7 officers and 129 non-commissioned officers and men killed; 43 officers and 722 non-commissioned officers and men wounded; 21 officers and 203 non-commissioned officers and men missing and prisoners. [With this further disaster there was brought to an end the first stage of the war—the stage during which it had been thought that the war would be a comparatively easy matter for our troops. The fact was at length realised that there lay before us a formidable task which would require all our energies, and tax all our resources.]

— — — (b).—Mobilisation of Seventh Division ordered.

— — 16. (a) **Mr. Asquith's view of the situation.**—Speaking near Newcastle-on-Tyne Mr. Asquith says:—

“The week closing to-night has been, in some respects, one of the blackest weeks within the memory of every living man among us. Three British forces, fighting in each case upon British soil, have sustained successive disasters, with the result that our advance upon each of our possible lines has been, for the moment, arrested, if not paralysed. . . . But . . . I would beg of you to maintain your sense of proportion, and not unduly to exaggerate the reverses and disasters of to-day, which may become the victories and the triumphs of to-morrow. . . . It has become something much wider and deeper than a mere question of asserting and maintaining our position in South Africa. It is our title to be known as a world-Power which is now upon trial. For the moment our duty as a nation is to be united, resolute, calm, and to concentrate all our resources, both material and moral, upon a task which we cannot lay down or leave incomplete without dealing a heavy blow alike at the honour and the safety of our Empire.”

— (b).—Five thousand more troops leave for the Cape.

— (c).—The Duke and Duchess of Connaught and Princess Louise, Marchioness of Lorne, visit the American hospital ship, *Maine*, in the West India Dock, and the Duke of Connaught, on behalf of the Queen, presents a Union Jack to the ship.

— 18. (a) **Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener.**—Announced that as the campaign in Natal is likely to require the presence and undivided attention of Sir Redvers Buller, it has been decided to send Lord Roberts to the Cape as Commander-in-Chief in South Africa, with Lord Kitchener as his Chief of the Staff.

— (b) **Militia, Volunteer, and Colonial Reinforcements.**—The following further measures announced:

all the remaining portions of the Army Reserve to be called up; the Seventh Division to proceed without delay, as well as reinforcements of Artillery, including a Howitzer Brigade; further local mounted corps to be raised, and a considerable mounted force sent from home; in addition to the battalions of Militia which have already volunteered for service (two at Malta, and one in the Channel Islands), nine more will be allowed to volunteer for service out of the United Kingdom, an equivalent number being embodied for service at home; strong force of volunteers selected from Yeomanry regiments to go out; also a strong contingent of carefully-selected Volunteers; patriotic offers from the Colonies to be accepted as far as possible, preference being given to mounted contingents.

— (c) **Feeling in the Colonies.**—Telegram from Ottawa says:—

“Canada is afire with patriotic fervour, Press and people being united in the conviction that, in spite of reverses, Great Britain must and will win, and that Canada must loyally bear her share of the burden. Offers of military service said to be pouring in from all directions. The Dominion Cabinet met during the day, and decided that as the home authorities were fully apprised of the readiness of Canada to send a second contingent they would await further communications from the Imperial Government, but pledged itself to do all in its power to assist the Imperial Government in a moment of trial.”

— 19. (a) **The Volunteers and the war.**—Reported that Volunteers in London and in all parts of the country are eagerly offering their services, and that the same spirit is being displayed by the Yeomanry. [At a Volunteer prize distribution on Dec. 18, Mr.

Goschen said the Volunteers now had the chance, for which they had been longing for 20 or 30 years, of showing that they were not merely a paper force, but able and willing to take their part in the grim realities of war.]

— (b) **The Colonies and the war.**—Announced that the Australian Colonies are joining to send a federal contingent of 1,000 mounted troops. New South Wales, in addition to her share in this contingent, will contribute a battery of Artillery and a field hospital, fully equipped. Magnificent response from all parts of Canada to the call for volunteers for a second Canadian contingent, which the Imperial Government accepts.

— (c) **Imperial Yeomanry.**—War Office announces that the Government have decided to raise for service in South Africa a force of mounted infantry to be called the Imperial Yeomanry. It will be recruited from the Yeomanry, but Volunteers and civilians possessing the necessary qualifications will be specially enrolled in the Yeomanry for that purpose.

— (d) **Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman on the situation.**—Speaking at Aberdeen, Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman says:—

“The recent reverses—grave, disappointing, and deplorable as they are—will be met by the British people with dignity and composure. The gravity of the situation, the formidable character of the campaign as now disclosed, its inevitable vicissitudes and occasional mishaps and failure which must mingle with its successes—these furnish no ground for doubt or for despondency. They will only make us brace ourselves more earnestly to the task before us. There may be, doubtless there will be, lamentable loss of life, but the end cannot be

doubted. We have in the field the largest army that ever left these shores. It can be readily reinforced. We have a united people in this country and in every part of the Empire, and with these forces on our side—moral and material—success is certain.”

— 20. (a) **City of London Imperial Volunteer Force.**—

At a special meeting of the Court of Common Council the Lord Mayor states that the War Office has approved a scheme for raising a City of London Imperial Volunteer Force of 1,000 men for service in South Africa, the entire cost to be borne by the Corporation of the City of London and the City Livery Companies. He announces subscriptions amounting to £20,000, and adds that Messrs. Wilson, of Hull, have placed at the disposal of the City a fitted transport for three months—an offer equal to a subscription of something like £15,000. [The Court decided to contribute £25,000 out of the City's cash towards the fund, and to give the freedom of the City to every volunteer joining the force. After these resolutions had been passed the aldermen and councillors rose in their places and sang “God save the Queen.” See Dec. 23.]

— — — (b) **Roman Catholics and the war.**—Cardinal Vaughan issues a circular letter to the Roman Catholic clergy directing the offering up of prayers for our Army and for speedy success to the British arms. Among other things he says:—

“There can be no doubt now that we have been forced into war, and that justice is on our side. . . . It is now a question of something more than of what is lawful. The question is, Shall the British Empire be allowed to fall to pieces by supineness and by want of determination and

self-denial? The answer is, No. . . . At the present moment countless millions in the Dark Continent depend for their temporal and external salvation upon the establishment of that reign of law which usually follows British supremacy."

- - - (c) **A suggestion to Lords Lieutenants.**—Mr. Balfour writes to the Earl of Haddington, Lord Lieutenant of Haddingtonshire, pointing out the utility of the force of irregular mounted infantry proposed to be raised by the Government from the Volunteers and Yeomanry, and suggesting the formation of local funds to assist in the equipment of those who join. [This letter produced an excellent effect, the Lords Lieutenants of many different counties taking action along the lines suggested.]

- - 21. (a) **Canadian feeling.**—The Ottawa correspondent of the *Times* telegraphs in reference to the mobilisation of the second Canadian contingent:—

"From all important centres information comes that tremendous enthusiasm prevails. Ten times more men are offering than are required."

- - - (b).—In the course of a message sent to the American and Canadian people through the Associated Press Lord Roberts says:—

"For the friendly interest and sympathy exhibited by many Americans I am most deeply grateful. . . . I cannot too warmly express my admiration of the spirit which prevails in our colonies. The action of Canada will always be a glorious page in the history of the sons of the Empire."

- - - (c) **Australasia's response.**—Telegrams from Australia and New Zealand show that a strong patriotic feeling has been evoked in all the colonies. The new Australian Mounted Infantry will consist of 1,151 men,

made up as follows:—New South Wales, 506; Victoria, 300; Queensland, 150; South Australia, 100; West Australia, 50; Tasmania, 45. In addition to these New South Wales contributes half a field hospital (60 men) and a field battery of 180 men. The contingent from New Zealand will number 234, making a grand total of 1,625. The approximate cost to New South Wales will be £60,000, to Victoria £40,000, to South Australia £13,000, and to Queensland £15,000. All the colonies have started patriotic funds to provide means for the support of the men's families.

— 23. (a) **Yeomanry and Volunteers.**—Announced that owing to the numerous offers received the Lord Mayor has suggested to the War Office that the strength of the City regiment should be raised to 1,400 men. Of the £100,000 required, over £65,000 has already been subscribed. [See 1900, Jan. 1.] Also stated that many more Yeomanry and Volunteers throughout the country have offered their services than can possibly be accepted.

— (b) **Departure of Lord Roberts.**—Lord Roberts leaves Waterloo station for Southampton amid much enthusiasm. Among those who see him off are the Prince of Wales, the Duke of Connaught, the Duke of Cambridge, Lord Wolseley, and Mr. Balfour.

— 24.—Detachment from Gen. Gatacre's force occupies Dordrecht.

— 25. **An Eighth Division.**—Announced that all preparations for mobilising an Eighth Division have now been completed at the War Office.

-- 27. (a) **Assisting the enemy.**—A Royal Proclamation, published in a supplement to the *London Gazette*, warns British subjects not to enlist or engage themselves in the military service of either of the Boer Republics, in any way to aid or abet them in the prosecution of hostilities, to carry on any trade with them, or to carry any goods destined for either of them. [This Proclamation was made on account, mainly, of reports as to supplies being sent to the Boers *viâ* Delagoa Bay.]

--- (b).—Lord Kitchener, coming from Egypt, joins Lord Roberts at Gibraltar.

-- 28. **The Canadian contingent.**—From Ottawa it is reported that the Canadian contingent will consist of four squadrons of Mounted Rifles and three batteries of Field Artillery—in all 1,247 men.

1900. JAN. 1. (a) **The City of London Imperial Volunteers.**—Enrolment at the Guildhall of the first draft of the City of London Imperial Volunteers. [The ceremony attracted great and enthusiastic crowds to the streets through which the first 500 of the volunteers passed. The Lord Mayor, sheriffs, and civic dignitaries attended in state, and the Lord Mayor, in addressing the volunteers, said it was a vexed question whether that day inaugurated a new century, but it was beyond doubt that they were inaugurating a new era in our national history. This country had been forced to the arbitrament of war, and would not sheathe the sword until her supremacy in South Africa was established. Their splendid patriotism was duly appreciated; to them belonged signally the honour of leading a move-



- - - (b) **The colonies and the war.**—Announced from New South Wales that the Australian colonies have started a movement for equipping corps of mounted bushmen for South Africa. [The movement was carried through with the greatest enthusiasm.]

- - - (c).—Attack by 3,000 Boers on British camp between Molteno and Cyphergat repulsed. Dordrecht evacuated by British and Molteno by Boers.

- - 4. (a).—Sixteen additional battalions of the Militia to be embodied.

- - - (b).—A scene of “unparalleled enthusiasm” at Montreal on the departure of the second Canadian contingent for Quebec, *en route* for South Africa.

- - 6. (a) **Fighting at Ladysmith.**—Repeated attacks by Boers on Gen. White’s position at Cæsar’s Camp, south of Ladysmith, are repulsed after heavy fighting lasting 13 hours. At one time Gen. White reported he was “very hard pressed.” [Our losses were:—Officers, killed 14, wounded 31; non-commissioned officers and men, killed 143, wounded 228.]

- - - (b).—First Suffolk Regiment attack Boer position near Rensberg. Order for their retirement, given by enemy, is obeyed by most of the men, but 100 continue fighting, and are surrounded and taken prisoners.

- - - (c) **Comforts for the troops.**—Lady White states that the result of an appeal made by her on behalf of the Ladysmith garrison has been the receipt of £4,227 10s. in money, and 45,151 presents in kind. This has enabled her to send for each combatant in the Ladysmith garrison, whether soldier or sailor,

exclusive of officers, two pairs of socks, a cardigan jacket or jersey, a muffler, cap, pipe, and half a pound of tobacco. She has also been able to extend the benefits of the fund to all the forces in Natal, estimated, at the date of the closing of the fund, at some 20,000 more men. [This is a sample of the great outpouring of practical public sympathy towards the troops at the front. At first gifts were asked for on behalf only of the sick and wounded. It was soon announced that more than enough had been supplied, and then almost innumerable funds were started for "comforts" for the ordinary troops—clothing, tobacco, stationery, etc., being collected and sent out in enormous quantities.]

- - 7. **Queen's Sunday.**—Collections in churches in the United Kingdom, as directed by the Queen's royal letters, in aid of the funds for the soldiers and their families. [The amount raised, £73,377, was, in virtue of the authority and discretion given to them, divided by the Archbishops of Canterbury and York between the Red Cross Society, Lloyd's Patriotic Fund, and the Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association.]

- - 9. **President Steyn's New Year address.**—Reported that President Steyn has addressed to the Free State burghers a New Year's message, which concludes with the announcement that

"next year the Afrikaner nation will enjoy peace and rest, and peace will be established on the basis that the enemy who has oppressed and persecuted us during the whole of the last century shall no longer be in a position to spill innocent blood."

-- 17. (a) **The Imperial Yeomanry.**—Reported that 5,000 men have attested for the Imperial Yeomanry, of whom a large proportion have passed the necessary standards. A special corps of sharpshooters in association with the Imperial Yeomanry will be raised. [The first contingent of about 1,000 of the Imperial Yeomanry left on Jan. 27, others following at later dates.]

--- (b).—Great demonstration at Sydney on the departure of second New South Wales contingent, which includes 44 officers, 644 men, hospital nurses, a medical corps, and 756 horses. [In a send-off speech to the men, Mr. Lyne, the Premier, said :—

“Great Britain is finding that her colonies form a valuable nursery-ground, and we, on our part, are prepared to supply Great Britain with a force which is rapidly becoming a powerful adjunct of the British arms.”]

-- 17-18.—Gen. Lyttelton crosses the Tugela, and holds position on Zwart's Kop. Sir Charles Warren's Division cross at Trichard's Drift, five miles further west, throwing a pontoon bridge over the river.

-- 19. **An Eighth Division.**—Orders given for the mobilisation of an Eighth Division for service in South Africa.

-- 22. **Danish sympathy.**—Announced that Danish farmers have presented 12,000 boxes of Danish butter to the Princess of Wales for the troops in South Africa.

-- 23-5. **Spion Kop.**—As the result of the flanking movement set on foot by Gen. Buller, Spion Kop, which commands the Boer entrenchments, is captured and held during the 24th against severe attacks and heavy shell fire. Hill found very difficult to hold,

and water deficient. It was abandoned on night of Jan. 24-5. [On the same night Sir C. Warren's Division recrossed the Tugela unmolested. Our casualties between Jan. 17-24, the period covered by the Spion Kop movement, had, however, been exceptionally severe. They were:—Killed: officers, 27; non-commissioned officers and men, 246. Wounded: officers, 53; non-commissioned officers and men, 1,056. Died of wounds (included in wounded): officers, 4; non-commissioned officers and men, 30. Missing and prisoners: officers, 7; non-commissioned officers and men, 340. Total killed, wounded, missing, and prisoners: officers, 87; non-commissioned officers and men, 1,642.]

— 26.—Gen. Kelly-Kenny occupies Thebus, on the railway between Steynsburg and Rosmead Junction.

— 27. (a) **India and the war.**—Meeting in Calcutta decides to promote war relief fund. Speeches full of enthusiastic loyalty delivered by several prominent natives. [It was announced at the meeting that horses and gifts for Lumsden's Horse continued to arrive daily, accompanied by many touching letters from the native donors expressive of loyalty and devotion to the Queen and Empire. A few days later it was reported that the Indian Government had decided to accept a number of horses from each prince. As showing the enthusiasm that prevailed, it may be mentioned that the Maharajah of Marwan placed every horse in his State at the disposal of the Government. See March 25.]

— (b).—Three more battalions of Militia to be embodied.

— 29. (a) **The Queen's compliments.**—Sir Redvers

- - 10. (a) **Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener at Capetown.**—Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener arrive at Capetown.

- - - (b) **India and the war.**—Reported that sanction has been given to the raising in India of a force of 250 mounted volunteers for service in South Africa. [See Feb. 26.]

- - - (c) **Canada and the war.**—Announced that Lord Strathcona will raise and maintain 400 men for service in South Africa, distinct from the Canadian Government contingents.

- - 12. (a) **A Ceylon contingent.**—Ceylon will send 125 mounted men to South Africa at the expense of the colony.

- - - (b).—Lord Lovat will raise a body of 100 or more Highland gillies for service as scouts.

- - 13. **The colonies and the war.**—Victorian portion of the second Australian contingent, representing 262 Victorians and 300 horses, have an enthusiastic send-off from Melbourne. [In the other colonies contributing to the further Australian contingent, and also in New Zealand, the same spirit of enthusiasm prevailed. Not only did offers to join either the contingent or the Bushmen's Corps pour in, but those who could not go to the front themselves readily subscribed to the equipment or the patriotic funds. The general feeling throughout Australasia may be illustrated by a speech delivered by Mr. R. J. Seddon, Premier of New Zealand, on Dec. 30, when he said :—

“Nominally only were we fighting the Boers, for they were in fact being aided and abetted by those who were jealous of

the growing power of the British nation, and who rejoiced at our reverses. These reverses were only temporary, and would be followed by the usual success of our arms. New Zealand had already sent one contingent, another would leave about Jan. 15, and there were more to follow. The people of New Zealand were determined that the prestige of the British Empire, to which they belonged, should be maintained at all hazards. Funds were being raised voluntarily to defray the cost of sending more fighting men to the Transvaal. Though New Zealand was Radical and Democratic, and termed by some Socialistic, there was in the present emergency an amount of Imperial patriotism in the country which was unsurpassed in any part of Her Majesty's dominions."

- - 15.—Boer attack on Gen. French's advanced position near Rensburg repulsed by detachment of 1st Yorkshires and New Zealanders.

- - 16. **Delagoa Bay: Boer supplies and reinforcements.**—The continuous reports as to the smuggling through Delagoa Bay of guns, ammunition, and stores for the Boers, to be despatched to them by the Delagoa Bay Railway, become still more numerous about this date. The reports also suggest a steady inflow, *viâ* Delagoa Bay, of mercenaries for the Boer army gathered from all parts of Europe. [It was subsequently reported that in sending out Scriptures for the use of wounded Boers the British and Foreign Bible Society had found it necessary to forward them in the following languages (in addition to English, Gaelic, and Dutch): German, Flemish, French, Swedish, Danish, Italian, Portuguese, Russian, Polish, Yiddish (for Polish Jews), Bulgarian, Croat, Magyar, Rumanian, and Czech, or 18 languages for one hospital.]

- - 17. (a) **The Imperial Yeomanry.**—Reported that 5,000 men have attested for the Imperial Yeomanry, of whom a large proportion have passed the necessary standards. A special corps of sharpshooters in association with the Imperial Yeomanry will be raised. [The first contingent of about 1,000 of the Imperial Yeomanry left on Jan. 27, others following at later dates.]

- - - (b).—Great demonstration at Sydney on the departure of second New South Wales contingent, which includes 44 officers, 644 men, hospital nurses, a medical corps, and 756 horses. [In a send-off speech to the men, Mr. Lyne, the Premier, said :—

“Great Britain is finding that her colonies form a valuable nursery-ground, and we, on our part, are prepared to supply Great Britain with a force which is rapidly becoming a powerful adjunct of the British arms.”]

- - 17-18.—Gen. Lyttelton crosses the Tugela, and holds position on Zwart's Kop. Sir Charles Warren's Division cross at Trichard's Drift, five miles further west, throwing a pontoon bridge over the river.

- - 19. **An Eighth Division.**—Orders given for the mobilisation of an Eighth Division for service in South Africa.

- - 22. **Danish sympathy.**—Announced that Danish farmers have presented 12,000 boxes of Danish butter to the Princess of Wales for the troops in South Africa.

- - 23-5. **Spion Kop.**—As the result of the flanking movement set on foot by Gen. Buller, Spion Kop, which commands the Boer entrenchments, is captured and held during the 24th against severe attacks and heavy shell fire. Hill found very difficult to hold,

and water deficient. It was abandoned on night of Jan. 24-5. [On the same night Sir C. Warren's Division recrossed the Tugela unmolested. Our casualties between Jan. 17-24, the period covered by the Spion Kop movement, had, however, been exceptionally severe. They were:—Killed: officers, 27; non-commissioned officers and men, 246. Wounded: officers, 53; non-commissioned officers and men, 1,056. Died of wounds (included in wounded): officers, 4; non-commissioned officers and men, 30. Missing and prisoners: officers, 7; non-commissioned officers and men, 340. Total killed, wounded, missing, and prisoners: officers, 87; non-commissioned officers and men, 1,642.]

— 26.—Gen. Kelly-Kenny occupies Thebus, on the railway between Steynsburg and Rosmead Junction.

— 27. (a) **India and the war.**—Meeting in Calcutta decides to promote war relief fund. Speeches full of enthusiastic loyalty delivered by several prominent natives. [It was announced at the meeting that horses and gifts for Lumsden's Horse continued to arrive daily, accompanied by many touching letters from the native donors expressive of loyalty and devotion to the Queen and Empire. A few days later it was reported that the Indian Government had decided to accept a number of horses from each prince. As showing the enthusiasm that prevailed, it may be mentioned that the Maharajah of Marwan placed every horse in his State at the disposal of the Government. See March 25.]

— (b).—Three more battalions of Militia to be embodied.

— 29. (a) **The Queen's compliments.**—Sir Redvers



Buller reads to Sir Charles Warren's force a message from the Queen expressing admiration of the work of the troops during the past trying week.

--- (b).—Lord Carrington, speaking at Maidstone, says the nation has set its teeth in grim earnest, and will not rest until the invading Boers have been driven out of South African England.

-- 30. (a) **Parliament and the war.**—Parliament re-assembles. [In the Lords, Lord Kimberley urged that it was the duty of the Government to ensure the efficiency of the defences of the Empire, and to bring about a speedy termination of the conflict. Lord Salisbury said he was glad no immediate inquiry had been proposed, as he did not think such investigation should take place until those concerned were in a position to come forward. In the Commons, Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman announced the resolve of the Opposition to support the vigorous prosecution of the war, in order that the integrity of the Queen's dominions might be vindicated. Mr. Balfour said the Government had no desire to conceal their shortcomings, but they would endeavour to discharge their responsibilities so long as they retained the confidence of the House and the nation.]

--- (b).—States of Jersey vote £5,000 for purchase of battery of six field guns to be presented to British Government for use in South Africa. [Later on it was found the battery could not be provided in time, and, by arrangement with the War Office, the gift was altered to one of £5,000 for the purchase of machine-guns and carriages.]

— FEB. 1. **The defence of Natal.**—A Blue Book issued to-day throws light on the reasons why the plan originally fixed upon by the military authorities for concentrating a force on the Orange River, with a view to the invasion of the Free State, was changed, for political considerations, to one of defending Natal from invasion, with the consequent concentration there, instead; the engagement at Glencoe, and the locking up of Sir George White and his 10,000 men in Ladysmith. The correspondence shows that on May 25 Sir A. Milner telegraphed to Mr. Chamberlain that Natal was uneasy at the Boer preparations, and that Sir W. F. Hely-Hutchinson had told the Prime Minister that the Natal Government ought to give the British Government an unwavering support. The Prime Minister had replied that this support would gladly be given, but he feared the consequences to Natal should the British Government draw back after all. Sir A. Milner, on learning this, telegraphed to the Governor:—

“You can tell Minister from me that it is out of the question that any invasion of Natal should be tolerated by Her Majesty’s Government. Such an event is highly improbable, I think; but Natal would be defended with the whole force of the Empire, if it occurred, and redress would be exacted for any injury to her.”

This answer was approved by Mr. Chamberlain on May 28. On June 17 the Natal Ministry passed a minute in which they said that, should war break out, Natal would probably become the field of operations, and as the Colony would, of course, give its loyal and active support to Her Majesty’s Government, it

"would thereafter be regarded by the South African Republic and the Orange Free State with suspicions and unfriendly feelings."

The Ministry therefore thought that South Africa ought not to be exposed to war by any act of Her Majesty's Government without their opinions having been heard. On June 26 Sir Alfred wrote:—

"I can assure Ministers that Her Majesty's Government are entirely alive to the situation, and will exhaust every peaceable effort to bring about a satisfactory settlement."

On July 25 the Ministry adopted another minute in which, referring to a communication received by them on the previous day, they expressed "extreme surprise" at learning that in the event of a sudden outbreak of hostilities

"it would not be possible for the military authorities in Natal, with the garrison and Colonial forces now available, to effectually defend the northern portion of the Colony. Ministers cannot regard the defence of the Dundee and Navigation Collieries and other collieries in the vicinity, and the holding of the line of railway as far as the Ingagane Bridge, as being a fulfilment of the promise that Natal would be defended with the whole force of the Empire. Ministers therefore ask that, if Her Majesty's Government have any reason to fear that the present negotiations may not result in a peaceful settlement, such steps may be at once taken as may be necessary for the effectual defence of the whole of the Colony."

Mr. Chamberlain asked whether, if Laing's Nek were occupied, Colonial troops would be sent with British; and the Ministers, on Aug. 8, welcomed the decision to reinforce the troops, but strongly deprecated the calling out of the Colonial forces prior to any outbreak of hostilities. On Sept. 6 the Ministers sent an urgent

message asking that sufficient troops should be despatched to Natal immediately, and speaking of a seizure of Laing's Nek and the destruction of the northern portion of the railway as a "catastrophe." On Sept. 9 Mr. Chamberlain informed the Governor that 5,700 troops from India would arrive in five weeks' time, and reinforcements from England in six. On Sept. 13 the Governor telegraphed to Mr. Chamberlain that Sir W. P. Symons thought the occupation of Laing's Nek and the locking up of troops for defensive purposes would be injudicious, and that he could occupy with safety only as far as Glencoe Junction with his then forces, or Newcastle after the arrival of the Manchester Regiment. The Ministers thought it extremely unlikely the Boers would commence hostilities, and they were, on Sept. 22, averse to calling out the Volunteers to occupy Newcastle; but on learning of the tenor of the Boer replies they agreed to the advance to Glencoe on the 25th. Sir W. P. Symons was, on the 24th, doubtful about the expediency of occupying Newcastle. The High Commissioner agreed with him. The Governor of Natal telegraphed on the 25th that he would not press for the occupation of Newcastle, but if it were taken by the Boers the effect on the Natal Dutch might be serious. On Oct. 9 (the day of the Boer ultimatum) there was an interview between the Governor and Sir George White about the occupation of Glencoe. The General thought it a dangerous position, and that, from a military point of view, the troops should be withdrawn to Ladysmith. On being consulted, Sir A. Hunter and Col. Duff (Assistant

Military Secretary) agreed, but Sir Penn Symons was said to be quite confident about the troops at Glencoe, while the Governor, whose primary object in occupying Glencoe—with the concurrence of Sir P. Symons—had been to make sure of the coal supply, thought withdrawal, now the troops were there, would involve grave political results. Finally—

“Sir A. Hunter, on being again consulted, said that, whilst he retained his opinion as to the military situation, it was (Glencoe having been occupied) a case of balancing drawbacks, and advised that under the circumstances the troops be retained at Glencoe. Sir G. White decided to adopt this course.”

— 3. (a) **Mafeking greets the Queen.**—The Queen receives from the Mayor of Mafeking the following telegram, dated Jan. 27, forwarded by runner:—

“Mafeking, upon the hundredth day of the siege, sends loyal devotion to your Majesty, and assurance of continued resolve to maintain your Majesty’s supremacy in this town.”

— — — (b).—The Honourable Artillery Company’s contingent of the City Imperial Volunteers—7 officers and 120 men—leave London for the front.

— 4.—Gen. MacDonald crosses Modder River and occupies Koodoosberg, forming entrenchments.

— 5.—Lord Roberts telegraphs to the Lord Mayor heartily welcoming as comrades the City Imperial Volunteers, who are, he says, a valuable addition to our force.

— 5-7. **The third try for Ladysmith.**—Gen. Buller’s third attempt to relieve Ladysmith. Gen. Lyttelton crosses the Tugela at the same time that a frontal attack is made. He attacks and occupies Vaal Krantz,

but the position is found to be untenable, and the British are withdrawn across the river.

- - 7.—Announced that Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener have left Capetown for the front.

- - 8. (a) **The strength of the British forces.**—In the House of Commons Mr. Wyndham states that within the next two or three weeks there would be a total of 194,000 effective troops in South Africa. There were 2,283 officers and men missing.

- - - (b).—Unsuccessful attack by Boers on Koodoosberg.

- - 9. (a) **Rhodesia.**—North-Eastern Rhodesia Order in Council published. It brings under the administration of the British South Africa Company the north-eastern portion of British Central Africa adjoining the British Protectorate of Nyassaland.

- - - (b).—Lord Roberts arrives at Modder River.

- - - (c).—Gen. MacDonald's force recalled from Koodoosberg.

- - - (d).—Supplementary estimates issued for the additional number of men and the money required for the operations in South Africa; £13,000,000 and 120,000 men asked for.

- - 15. (a) **The relief of Kimberley.**—Relief of Kimberley by Gen. French. [Summoned from the southern frontier on Feb. 11, Gen. French marched across country, and, on the following day, with his Cavalry Division, successfully seized the crossing of the Reit River at Dekiel's Drift, being followed by the Sixth and Seventh Divisions, which encamped on the

east bank. On the 13th Gen. French, leaving Dekiel's Drift with three Brigades of Cavalry, Horse Artillery, and Mounted Infantry, including several Colonial contingents, started to seize a crossing on the Modder River 25 miles distant. He forced a passage at Klip's Drift, and occupied the hills on the north of the river, capturing three of the enemy's laagers. In the meantime Col. Gordon, of the 15th Hussars, who, with his Brigade, had made a feint on Rondevaal Drift, four miles west of Klip's, had seized it and another adjoining drift, and captured two more of the Boer laagers. Gen. French's performance was afterwards described by Lord Roberts as a brilliant one, considering the prevalence of excessive heat and a blinding dust storm, while, owing to the rapidity of his movements, he met with very slight resistance. Kimberley was reached on the 15th, and the siege, which had lasted since Oct. 14, was brought to an end, Gen. French and his men being received with immense enthusiasm. Gen. French afterwards cleared off the Boers on the south of Kimberley.] [Mr. Cecil Rhodes was in Kimberley throughout the whole period of the siege, taking an active part in the defensive measures, and doing much to encourage garrison and people.]

- - - (b) **Pursuit of Cronje.**—Taken completely by surprise by the rapidity of Gen. French's movements, the Boers under Gen. Cronje evacuate Magersfontein and Spytfontein on the 15th, and retreat towards Bloemfontein with their 1,000 wagons. [They were at once hotly pursued by Gen. Kelly-Kenny, and the pursuit was followed up by the main body of Lord

Roberts's army. On the 20th Cronje and his men laagered near Paardeberg, where they were surrounded and subjected to a terrible bombardment by the British, who also stopped the enemy's reinforcements.]

- - 17. **The struggle for Ladysmith.**—Gen. Buller advances on Monte Cristo Hill.

- - 18.—Gen. Buller moves round Boers' left flank and captures Monte Cristo Hill, driving enemy across the Tugela.

- - 19.—Gen. Buller takes Hlangwane Hill.

- - 20.—Colenso occupied.

- - 21.—Fifth Division cross the Tugela.

- - 22. (a) **Canada and the war.**—Lord Roberts telegraphs from Paardeberg to Lord Minto, Governor of Canada, speaking of the "admirable service" done by the Canadian Regiment since its arrival in South Africa, and of its "conspicuous gallantry."

- - - (b).—Gen. Buller advances on Grobler's Kloof. Heavy fighting.

- - 23. **Mr. Rhodes on the war.**—Speaking at a meeting of the De Beers Company, at Kimberley, Mr. Rhodes says that Europeans considered it a puzzle how the war had arisen. In his opinion the Transvaal and Orange Free State were not Republics, but oligarchies, and there had long been a conspiracy to seize British South Africa. He continued:—

"Each of the two Governments constitutes a small political gang, who have humbugged the poor Dutchmen by appealing to their patriotism, and who divide the spoils among their coteries. The Afrikanders for 20 years have been working for an independent South Africa, and Mr. Reitz, years and



years ago, avowed that the only ambition of his life was to drive England out of Africa."

- - 24.—Attack by Gen. Buller on Railway Hill repulsed by Boers.

- - 25-6.—Finding the passage of Langewachte Spruit commanded by strong entrenchments, Gen. Buller decides on another passage. He relays pontoon bridge, and once more crosses. Reported that enemy occupy strongly entrenched positions, and that severe fighting may be expected before Ladysmith is reached.

- - 26. **India and the war.**—Lumsden's Horse—the force of Volunteers, 250 strong, raised in India for service in South Africa—sail from Calcutta amid a scene of great enthusiasm. The Viceroy attends in state, and delivers a stirring speech, in which he says:—

"I doubt not that had we been willing to enrol 1,000, instead of 250, they would have been forthcoming; that had not one thousand, but many thousand, Volunteers been called for from the native races, who vie with us in fervent loyalty to the same Sovereign, they would have sprung joyfully to arms, from the Hindu or Mussulman chief of ancient lineage and great possessions to the martial Sikh or fighting Pathan. You, however, are the 250 who have been chosen, the first body of Volunteers from India that has ever had a chance of fighting for the Queen outside these shores. . . . You carry a great responsibility with you; for it will fall to you, in the face of great danger, perhaps even in the face of death, to sustain the honour of the country which is now sending you forth, and of the race from which you have sprung. . . . But you will have this consolation, that you are engaged on a glorious and, as I believe, a righteous mission, not to aggrandise an Empire, not merely to repel an unscrupulous invasion of the Queen's territory, but to plant liberty, justice, and equal rights upon the soil of a South Africa henceforward to be united under the British and no other flag."

- - 27. (a) **Surrender of Cronje.**—Lord Roberts telegraphs from Paardeberg announcing the unconditional surrender, at daylight, of General Cronje and all his force, and adding: "I hope Her Majesty's Government will consider this event satisfactory, occurring as it does on the anniversary of Majuba." [Cronje's force represented 4,300 men.]

- - - (b) **The storming of Pieters Hill.**—Gen. Buller storms Pieters Hill, the main Boer position between Ladysmith and the Tugela. It is "magnificently carried," as he states in his despatch, "by the South Lancashire Regiment, while the enemy are scattered in all directions."

- - - (c) **Canada and the war.**—The Governor of Canada receives the following telegram from Mr. Chamberlain with respect to the fighting at Paardeberg:—

"Her Majesty the Queen desires you to express to the people of the Dominion her admiration of the gallant conduct of her Canadian troops in the late engagement, and her sorrow at the loss of so many brave men."

- - 28. **Relief of Ladysmith.**—Lord Dundonald, with 300 men of the Imperial Light Horse and the Natal Carabineers, marches on Ladysmith, finding that since the engagement of the previous day the enemy has retreated. They enter Ladysmith in the evening, and are received there with intense delight by garrison and people. [It was stated that Ladysmith might have held out another month or six weeks, but the four months' siege had led to privations which were all the more severe by reason of the terrible prevalence of

disease. Since Jan. 15 there had been over 200 deaths from disease alone. Altogether as many as 8,424 passed through the hospitals, including 1,710 cases of enteric fever, and the daily average under treatment was between 1,500 and 2,000. The news of the relief of Ladysmith was the occasion of great rejoicing throughout the British Empire. Among the messages of congratulation received by the Queen was one from the Emperor of Japan. So complete had been Gen. Buller's final success that he was subsequently able to report that the surrounding country was clear of Boers.]

- MARCH 1. **The Queen's congratulations.**—Announced that the Queen has despatched the following telegrams:—

To Lord Roberts: "Accept for yourself and all under your command my warmest congratulations on this splendid news."

To Sir Redvers Buller: "I have heard with the deepest concern of the heavy losses sustained by my brave Irish soldiers. I desire to express my sympathy and my admiration of the splendid fighting qualities which they have exhibited throughout these trying operations."

[This gracious message respecting the Irish troops was followed on March 8 by the following special Army Order:—

"Her Majesty the Queen is pleased to order that in future, upon St. Patrick's Day, all ranks in Her Majesty's Irish regiments shall wear, as a distinction, a sprig of shamrock in their headdress, to commemorate the gallantry of her Irish soldiers during the recent battles in South Africa."]

- - 3. **The colonies invited to help.**—Premier of New South Wales announces receipt of a message from Mr. Chamberlain stating that Her Majesty's Govern-

ment require from the Australian colonies an additional force of 2,000 men similar to the Bushmen, for general service anywhere in South Africa. The new force will "probably be employed outside Natal and Cape Colony." [The peculiar significance of this intimation lay in the fact of the Australian colonies being now invited to send help to South Africa. When, on Oct. 8, the offers of assistance from the colonies were accepted to a limited extent there was, in the circumstances of the acceptance, a suggestion almost of an act of maternal condescension on the part of Great Britain, rather than of any serious conviction that such assistance was really needed. But in the six months that have since elapsed the conditions have entirely changed. Not only has the real gravity of the campaign been fully realised, but the splendid bravery and the great practical value of the Colonial forces have been repeatedly and most conspicuously proved, whilst the idea of the unity of the Empire has been strengthened by the campaign to an extent that the most sanguine and the most imaginative of English or Colonial patriots could not have dreamed of half a year previously. Thus, in helping to do the Empire's work in South Africa, Australasia and Canada have brought about, also, a complete revolution in their own relationship to the Mother Country, and enabled Great Britain to stand on quite a different footing among the nations of the world. The request now made for help was taken up with a renewed outburst of enthusiasm, as shown by the fact that in Victoria alone there were soon 4,000 applications for enrolment, although only 2,000 men had been asked for from

the whole of Australia. New Zealand had previously arranged to supply 500 rough-riders, forming her fifth contingent, and increasing her total contribution to the forces in South Africa to nearly 1,600 men and horses. Victoria's total contribution of £67,000 to the various war funds, up to March 11, may be regarded as a fair sample of the further outpouring of Colonial generosity in the cause of the Empire.]

- - 4.—Gen. Brabant captures the Boer position at Labuschagne's Nek, and thereby breaks the back of the rebellion in the Jamestown district of Cape Colony. Reported that both there and at Burghersdorp large numbers of the rebels are anxious to surrender.

- - 6. **Mr. Kruger at Bloemfontein.**—Mr. Kruger arrives at Bloemfontein, where he is received by President Steyn. [On leaving Pretoria he had announced that he was going to the Free State to arrange a compromise.]

- - 7. (a) **The enemy routed.**—Lord Roberts, continuing his advance towards Bloemfontein, finds the enemy in a position at Poplar Grove which he describes as "extremely strong," and "cunningly arranged, with a second line of entrenchments." Our troops make a flank movement, in preference to any direct attack, and completely rout the enemy, who, in a state of panic, are soon in full retreat. [Lord Roberts telegraphed on March 9 that Mr. Kruger and Mr. Steyn were both present at this fight, and "did all in their power to rally their troops. The rout, however, was complete, the men declaring that they could not stand against British Artillery and such a formidable force of Cavalry."]

- - - (b).—Gen. Gatacre occupies Burghersdorp.
- - - (c).—Lord Kitchener at Victoria Road, making arrangements to deal with the rebellion in that district.
- - 8.—Jamestown occupied.

- - 9. (a) **A National War Loan.**—Prospectus issued of a National War Loan of 30 millions, bearing interest at  $2\frac{3}{4}$  per cent. per annum, to be redeemed at par on April 5, 1910. The issue price is  $98\frac{1}{2}$ . [The Chancellor of the Exchequer stated in the House of Commons, on March 19, that the total number of applications for allotment was 39,800, and the total amount applied for £335,500,000.]

- - - (b). **Sir George White on the war.**—Sir George White arrives at Pietermaritzburg, where he is received with “unparalleled enthusiasm.” [In the course of a speech acknowledging an address presented by the Mayor he said the only possible chance of the Boers gaining Ladysmith was the actual starvation of the garrison. From the commencement of the campaign, however, he had recognised the fact that the enemy’s army desired to secure the town, as the fall of Ladysmith was to be the signal of a general rising of Colonial Dutch, which the Boers had anticipated, all over South Africa. In their presumption the enemy had actually brought trucks down for the conveyance of the Ladysmith garrison to Pretoria. Those trucks, thank God, had gone back without them.]

- - 10. (a) **The advance to Bloemfontein.**—Lord Roberts to-day meets with active opposition from the enemy, who give what he describes as “considerable

trouble," but the British, all the same, reach their destination at Driefontein. The Boers leave behind them 102 dead and 20 prisoners. Our casualties: 321 wounded men, and about 60 or 70 killed or missing. Lord Roberts addresses to the Presidents a strongly worded protest against a further gross abuse of the white flag, and against the use of explosive bullets.

— (b) **Casualties to date.**—A War Office list of casualties from the outbreak of the war to this date gives the following totals of casualties in action:—Killed: officers, 194, non-commissioned officers and men, 1,847; wounded: officers, 601, non-commissioned officers and men, 8,755; died of wounds (included in wounded): officers, 40, non-commissioned officers and men, 365; missing and prisoners: officers, 150, men (including missing men of Royal Irish Fusiliers, estimated at 442), 3,372; total killed, wounded, missing and prisoners: officers, 945, non-commissioned officers and men, 13,974, making a grand total of 14,919. Excluding from these figures the sick and wounded men now in British hospitals in South Africa, but including 26 officers and 904 men who have died from disease, 2 officers and 23 men who have met with accidental deaths, and 103 officers and 2,771 men sent home as invalids, the total "losses" to the field forces in South Africa since the outbreak of the war have been 515 officers and 9,282 men, or a net total of 9,797.

— II (a).—Lord Roberts's force continues its march unopposed, and reaches Aasvogel Kop.

— (b).—Barkly East occupied.

- - 12. (a) **General French at Bloemfontein.**—Making a wide détour, and thus outflanking the enemy, Lord Roberts's force marches, without further opposition, 16 miles to Venter's Vlei, which is 18 miles from Bloemfontein. Under the direction of Lord Roberts, Gen. French pushes on and occupies two hills close to the railway station and commanding the town. He is entertained for the night by President Steyn's brother, on his farm. President Steyn himself leaves Bloemfontein secretly at 6.30 in the evening for Kroonstadt, to which place he has announced the "transfer" of the capital. He makes no reply to a demand from Gen. Roberts that he shall surrender the town within 24 hours. The fighting components of the Boer force leave for the north, the Free Staters declining to remain, notwithstanding the threats of the Transvaal Boers to turn their guns on the town.

- - - (b) **Relief funds to date.**—Up to this date the total amount contributed to the Mansion House War Fund, from every quarter of the globe, has been £769,189. Of this £354,766 has been designated by the donors for the widows and orphans (Royal Patriotic Fund), £77,407 for the sick and wounded (British Red Cross Society), £83,495 for the disabled soldiers and sailors (Lloyd's Patriotic Fund), and £140,047 for the wives and families (Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association), leaving £113,474 to be applied by the Lord Mayor at his discretion. These sums are exclusive of nearly £140,000 contributed to the *Daily Telegraph* Shilling Fund for widows and orphans, £87,000 contributed to the *Daily Mail* Kipling Poem



Fund, the local funds of the Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association, and of the funds raised by the Lord Mayors of cities like Liverpool and Manchester, and the Lord Provosts of Edinburgh and Glasgow, or by various provincial newspapers and other agencies. The total contributions to the Mansion House Transvaal Refugees Fund amount to £175,500. A meeting at Marlborough House decides to form a central committee, with the Prince of Wales as Chairman, for the better distribution of the war relief funds, and to prevent overlapping, etc.

— 13. (a) **Occupation of Bloemfontein.**—Lord Roberts breakfasts with Mr. Steyn's brother, and then, leading a cavalcade a mile in length, descends the southern slope towards Bloemfontein. Two miles from the town he is met by the mayor and leading officials, who give him the keys of the Government buildings, and appear greatly relieved at the course that events have taken. Entering the town "in state," Lord Roberts has a very cordial reception from the inhabitants, who cheer vigorously and sing "God save the Queen." He takes possession of Bloemfontein in the name of the Queen, raising over the Presidency a Union Jack which had been specially made by Lady Roberts. In addressing the Guards Brigade Lord Roberts says that owing to a slight mistake he had not been able to march into Bloemfontein at the head of the Brigade as he had intended, but he adds, "I promise I will lead you into Pretoria." The correspondent of the *Times*, telegraphing under to-day's date, says of the advance on Bloemfontein:—

“The marching of the Army Corps throughout has been superb. The Guards Brigade marched from 3 p.m. yesterday to 1 p.m. to-day with two and a half hours’ sleep, but every man in the force is willing to work till he drops for Lord Roberts. Every march, every movement, and every victory increases his popularity and strengthens the Army’s confidence in him. All the troops realise that they are taking part in the most famous march of recent times.”

— (b) **The Presidents seek peace.**—Lord Salisbury reads in the House of Lords a telegram from the Presidents of the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, dated Bloemfontein, March 5, making overtures for peace, and his own reply thereto. The Presidents said in the course of their message:—

“This war was undertaken solely as a defensive measure to safeguard the threatened independence of the South African Republic, and is only continued in order to secure and safeguard the incontestable independence of both Republics as sovereign international States, and to obtain the assurance that those of Her Majesty’s subjects who have taken part with us in this war shall suffer no harm whatsoever in person or property. On these conditions, but on these conditions alone, are we now, as in the past, desirous of seeing peace re-established in South Africa, and of putting an end to the evils now reigning over South Africa ; while, if Her Majesty’s Government is determined to destroy the independence of the Republics, there is nothing left to us and to our people but to persevere to the end in the course already begun.”

In his reply, on March 11, Lord Salisbury said:—

“In the beginning of October last peace existed between Her Majesty and the two Republics under the Conventions which then were in existence. A discussion had been proceeding for some months between Her Majesty’s Government and the South African Republic, of which the object was to

obtain redress for certain very serious grievances under which British residents in the South African Republic were suffering. In the course of these negotiations the South African Republic had, to the knowledge of Her Majesty's Government, made considerable armaments, and the latter had, consequently, taken steps to provide corresponding reinforcements to British garrisons of Capetown and Natal. No infringement of the rights guaranteed by the Conventions had, up to that point, taken place on the British side. Suddenly, at two days' notice, the South African Republic, after issuing an insulting ultimatum, declared war upon Her Majesty; and the Orange Free State, with whom there had not even been any discussion, took a similar step. Her Majesty's dominions were immediately invaded by the two Republics, siege was laid to towns within the British frontier, a large portion of the two colonies was overrun, with great destruction to property and life, and the Republics claimed to treat the inhabitants of extensive portions of Her Majesty's dominions as if those dominions had been annexed to one or other of them. In anticipation of these operations the South African Republic had been accumulating for many years past military stores on an enormous scale, which, by their character, could only have been intended for use against Great Britain.

"Your Honours make some observations of a negative character upon the object with which these preparations were made. I do not think it necessary to discuss the questions you have raised. But the result of these preparations, carried on with great secrecy, has been that the British Empire has been compelled to confront an invasion which has entailed upon the Empire a costly war and the loss of thousands of precious lives. This great calamity has been the penalty which Great Britain has suffered for having in recent years acquiesced in the existence of the two Republics.

"In view of the use to which the two Republics have put the position which was given to them, and the calamities which their unprovoked attack has inflicted upon Her Majesty's dominions, Her Majesty's Government can only answer your

Honours' telegram by saying that they are not prepared to assent to the independence either of the South African Republic or of the Orange Free State."

— (c) **German non-intervention.**—Reported from Durban that, the Transvaal Government having appealed to Germany for the latter's mediation or intervention, the German Government replied that it must decline to interfere, as it considered that it was in no way concerned in the conflict.

— (d) **Canada and the war.**—Canadian House of Commons passes a resolution approving the action of the Dominion Government in despatching a Canadian contingent to assist the justice of the Imperial cause in South Africa. In the course of a great speech Sir Wilfrid Laurier, Prime Minister, says:—

"It will be to the eternal glory of England that instead of preparing for war last summer that war found her practically unprepared. Mr. Kruger had been preparing for years for war—buying munitions, accumulating provisions, importing European officers, and drilling his people—and when the time came and he thought he was ready, and he issued his insolent ultimatum calling upon England to give up her possessions in South Africa, England was found absolutely unprepared, and consequently had to submit at the outset to successive defeats. What we did we did of our own free will, and as to future wars, I have only this to say, that if it should be the will of the people of Canada at a future stage to take part in any war of England, the people of Canada will have their way. . . . When our young Volunteers sailed from our shores to join the British Army in South Africa, great were our expectations that they would display on those distant battlefields the same courage which had been displayed by their fathers when fighting in the last century. In many breasts there was a fugitive sense of uneasiness at the thought that the first facing of

musketry by raw recruits was always a severe trial. But when the telegraph brought us the news that such was the good impression made by our Volunteers that the Commander-in-Chief had placed them in the post of honour in the first rank, to share the dangers with that famous corps the Gordon Highlanders; when we read that they had justified fully the confidence placed in them, that they had charged like veterans, that their conduct was heroic and had won for them the encomiums of the Commander-in-Chief and the unstinted admiration of their comrades, who had faced death on a hundred battle-fields in all parts of the world, was there a man whose bosom did not swell with pride—that noblest of all pride, that pride of pure patriotism, the pride of consciousness of our rising strength, the pride of consciousness that that day it had been revealed to the world that a new Power had been born in the West?”

- - 14. (a) **The position at Mafeking.**—A *Times* telegram from Mafeking, dated Feb. 23, says:—

“We are reduced to horseflesh and bread made from horseforage, while the water-supply is no longer free from parasitical contamination. Typhoid, dysentery, and diphtheria are epidemic. . . . The sufferings of the women and children are terrible. Deaths of women in the laager are of daily occurrence. . . . The native population is starving. The mortality among them is five a day.”

- - - (b) **Occupation of Boshof.**—Announced from Kimberley that the troops under Lord Methuen have returned from the occupation of Boshof, where the Landdrost was placed under a guard. The guns and 79,000 rounds of ammunition were seized, and a strong garrison was left.

- - - (c).—Reported from Ladysmith that the enemy are occupying several strong positions at the junction of the Drakensberg and the Biggarsberg.

- - - (d) **A record to be proud of.**—Lord Roberts issues an Army Order in which he says :—

“On Feb. 12 this force crossed the boundary of the Free State; three days later Kimberley was relieved; on the 15th day the bulk of the Boer army under one of its most trusted generals was made prisoner; on the 17th day news came of the relief of Ladysmith; and on March 13, 29 days from the commencement of the operations, the capital of the Free State was occupied. This is a record of which any army would be proud—a record which could not have been achieved except by earnest, well-disciplined men, determined to do their duty, whatever the difficulties and dangers. Exposed to the extreme heat of the day, bivouacking under heavy rain, marching long distances, often on reduced rations, all ranks have displayed an endurance, cheerfulness, and gallantry which is beyond all praise.”

- - - (e).—Reported that Col. Plumer—who for some time has been pushing steadily forward from the north, in spite of enormous difficulties, to secure the relief of Mafeking—occupied Lobatsi on March 5. [See March 23.]

- - 15 (a).—Reported that march of Gen. Joubert on Bloemfontein, with 3,000 men, has been prevented by blowing up of railway by Major Hunter-Weston.

- - - (b).—The total number of Australian troops now at the front or *en route* is 4,237. In addition to the Canadians who have gone to the front the Dominion is raising a force of 1,000 Militia for home service, to allow of the departure from Canada of the Leinster Regiment for South Africa. This makes a total of 3,900 troops contributed by Canada to the Empire since the beginning of the war.

- - - (c).—In the course of a speech at Kimberley Lord Methuen says that if President Kruger had done nothing else they would have to thank him for uniting the various portions of the Empire.

- - - (d) **No intervention by Foreign Powers: New Colonial departure.**—Mr. Balfour announces in the House of Commons that the President of the United States, having been asked by the two Republics to intervene with a view to a cessation of hostilities, had intimated that “he would be glad to aid in any friendly manner to bring about so happy a result.” Lord Salisbury, in reply, had expressed sincere acknowledgments for the friendly tone of the communication, but stated that “Her Majesty’s Government does not propose to accept the intervention of any Power in the South African War.” [With reference to this declaration the Governor of New Zealand (the Earl of Ranfurly) sent the following message to Mr. Chamberlain on March 18:—

“People of New Zealand wish to express their endorsement of the position taken up by the Imperial Government declining to allow the intervention of any foreign Power in the settlement to be arrived at with the Transvaal Republic and Orange Free State, and not to assent to either State being independent. My Government assures Her Majesty’s Government that New Zealand will support to the last the Mother Country, as far as lies in their power, in maintaining that position, which has been taken up irrespective of consequences. I am desirous to add there are large numbers of men volunteering who are good riders and shots willing to go to South Africa for relief of Imperial forces, if the services of the latter will be required elsewhere.”

The special significance of this message lay in the fact

that it presented, for the first time in the history of our colonies, an official statement of the views which one of those colonies expected the Imperial Government to maintain. The new departure in the rights and privileges already so enthusiastically claimed and discharged in regard to assistance in Imperial defence was thus followed by a further new departure in a tacit claim to present Colonial views on Imperial policy. So there was brought about, as the result of the war, still another important development in the relationship between the colonies and the Mother Country. On March 27 it was announced that the Australian Premiers had jointly cabled to Mr. Chamberlain to the effect that it was "undesirable that peace should be concluded except on terms providing for the absolute supremacy of British rule in South Africa." The Presidents also endeavoured to secure the intervention of Holland, Russia, Italy, and France, but these, in view of Lord Salisbury's statement, declined to take any action.]

--- (e).—Major-Gen. Pole-Carew and 2,000 men of the Guards and Mounted Infantry leave Bloemfontein in three trains to join hands with Gen. Gatacre and Gen. Clements on the Orange River. They reach Springfontein unopposed. In the meantime the Orange River is crossed at both Norval's Pont and Bethulie by our troops. [At the former place the Berks and Worcester Battalions were taken over in boats, and in the afternoon a pontoon bridge had been built over which Clement's whole force passed. At Bethulie the bridge was saved from destruction by two young



officers, and Gatacre's force crossed and occupied the town.]

- - 16.—Announced that, following on a proclamation issued by Lord Roberts, 400 Free Staters have laid down their arms and are returning to their farms.

- - 17.—Gen. Gatacre's whole force, with artillery and transport, encamp two miles north of Bethulie.

- - 18. **The rebel movement.**—Lord Kitchener occupies Prieska without opposition, the rebels laying down arms. Reports received from Barkly East, Bethulie, Burghersdorp, Herschel, Lady Grey, Aliwal North, and other places on the frontier, show that the rebel movement in both the north and west of Cape Colony has collapsed.

- - 20 (a).—Announced that Col. Peakman, advancing with mounted troops from Kimberley, for the relief of Mafeking from the south, has had an engagement near Fourteen Streams. Royal Artillery scattered enemy with shrapnel.

- - - (b).—Reported from Pretoria that everyone available is being ordered to proceed to Kroonstadt on pain of death.

- - 21.—Free State burghers from southern districts are surrendering arms in considerable numbers.

- - 22.—Reported that Pretoria Federal commandos at Kroonstadt are awaiting advance of Lord Roberts towards the Transvaal, and that Mr. Kruger has made an impassioned appeal to them to maintain the fight for freedom. Mr. Steyn told them the war was really now commencing.

-- 23.—Announced that Col. Plumer's force, being attacked by Boers in greatly superior numbers, retired from Lobatsi on March 16, and was at Crocodile Pools on the 19th.

-- 24. (a) **The Colonies and the war.**—The fourth New Zealand contingent, numbering 440 men (picked from 1,000 who offered), leaves Otago for South Africa. The whole community, numbering about 80,000 people, witness the departure. The procession of volunteers and citizens is fully two miles long. Fifteen hundred children sing patriotic songs, and the display of enthusiasm is most demonstrative. In his speech on the occasion Lord Ranfurly, Governor of New Zealand, spoke of the crisis through which the Empire had just passed as having displayed the unanimity of the Anglo-Saxon people. To the consternation of their opponents the reverses had but given them occasion to display the splendid qualities of their troops, officers, and men.

--- (b).—Death of Major-Gen. Sir E. Woodgate from the effects of wounds received at Spion Kop.

-- 25. **India's contribution to the war.**—An official report issued at Calcutta shows that India's contributions to the war have been as follows:—8,000 officers and men, 3,000 natives for non-combatant services, 6,700 horses, 1,600 mules and ponies, 100,000 warm coats, 40,000 haversacks, 5,000 spurs, 40,000 suits of khaki, 45,000 helmets, 70,000 pairs of boots, 2,650 sets of mounted infantry saddlery, 460 muleteers and artificers, and 2,000 water-carriers. A further 2,650 horses for the mounted infantry have been provided by the native cavalry and Imperial Service regiments.

' - - 27. (a) **Boer losses during the war.**—A *Times* telegram from Capetown says trustworthy informants agree that the Boers have lost about 2,000 killed in action since the outbreak of the war, and that, adding wounded, sick, and prisoners, their total loss must exceed 15,000.

- - - (b) **Sir George White on the war.**—Sir George White, *en route* for England, is presented at Capetown with an address by the Mayor and Corporation. In his reply he says:—

“As the enemy closed round Ladysmith I determined to try to beat them in the open at Lombard's Kop. I thought I had located the enemy's position, but I had always been hampered by the splendid system of Boer intelligence. I could not move a gun at midnight without the enemy's knowing it before daybreak. I took all responsibility for the disaster at Nicholson's Nek. Afterwards I felt the responsibility for Natal behind me, Ladysmith being the shield to protect her. I hoped to uphold the shield long enough to enable the sleepy giant John Bull to wake up and have his own. I am proud to acknowledge the help of the Naval Brigade. Jack came in the nick of time, as he generally does. During the attack on Cæsar's Camp a remote corner was held by 16 men of the Manchester Regiment, who fought from three in the morning until dusk, when the Devonshires reinforced them. Fourteen of the little band lay dead, and of the two survivors one was wounded, but they still held their position. On the same day the sergeant of one of the guns had one leg and one arm shot off. As he fell across the trail of the gun he said, 'Roll me out of the way. Go on working the gun.' England, that little dot on the map, always comes out best in the end. That little England, the heart of the whole Empire, so brave and strong, sent her lifeblood into the furthest corner of the Empire and appears before the world an unconquerable whole. The dark hours are past. I

glory in being a lieutenant of Lord Roberts, who is England's greatest soldier and possesses the heart of the whole nation."

- - - (c).—Gen. Clements occupies Fauresmith.

- - 28 (a).—Death of Gen. Joubert from peritonitis.

- - - (b).—Messages from Mafeking suggest that the garrison has been able to secure new sources of food supply.

- - 29. (a) **Delagoa Bay Arbitration.**—Award of Delagoa Bay Railway Arbitration Tribunal published. [For history of question, see 1889, June 29.] The award, which is unanimous, orders Portugal to pay to the United States of America and Great Britain, in addition to the £28,000 sterling paid to them on account in 1890, the sum, in Swiss currency, of 15,314,000 francs (equivalent to £612,560), with interest at the rate of 5 per cent. per annum from June 25, 1889 to the day of payment. The total amount to be paid over represents close on £950,000.

- - - (b).—Owing to activity of enemy near Bloemfontein, and their hostile action towards burghers who have surrendered, Lord Roberts attacks and drives them from some kopjes south of Brandfort. British loss: 2 officers killed, 8 wounded; 10 (? 19) rank and file killed, 159 wounded, 3 missing.

- - 30. **Cape views on the final settlement.**—Enthusiastic meeting of the constituents of Mr. Rose-Innes, at Claremont, passes a resolution in support of the refusal of Her Majesty's Government to allow the maintenance of the independence of the Republics, and urging their incorporation in the dominions of the

Queen. [Mr. Rose-Innes said the agitation which was carried on by the Boers to secure the retention of their independence by the two Republics had compelled many who would otherwise remain silent to speak out. The resolution meant that the two flags which had been wont to fly in South Africa in the past should fly there no more. It meant, also, that the two States would cease to exist. The British would be charged with having made war to take the territories, but it was absolutely false, as shown by the complete unpreparedness with which Great Britain embarked on the war. Nobody wanted another such war, and therefore he and those who thought with him said, "Give us peace, in Heaven's name, after settlement, but make no settlement not calculated to secure permanent peace." It was useless to attempt to piece together China broken in ten thousand fragments. What the Transvaal Boer meant by independence was the continued domination of the ruling caste. No independence could be given which would not be a sham, and which would not afford the Republics an opportunity to arm again and menace once more the peace of South Africa. The lines that worked before the war were now impossible and impracticable. The British flag must fly over the Republics, and these must first be brought under direct British rule, the fullest possible measure of self government being afterwards granted on Colonial lines. In Canada perfect loyalty had, in spite of past rebellion, been secured by free institutions. Let them hope that the same results would follow the adoption of a like course in South Africa.]

# INDEX

## Afrikander movement :

- Afrikander Bond : Aims of originators . . . April 7, 1882
- A proposed Afrikander Republic . . . June, 1891
- Afrikander Ministry at the Cape . . . April, 1899
- "Joy and satisfaction": Transvaal "reasonable"  
conditions . . . July 22 ,,
- Mr. Steyn and the "Afrikander nation" . . . Jan. 9, 1900
- Mr. Rhodes on Afrikander aims . . . Feb. 23 ,,
- Albany Settlement . . . 1811-12, 1820-1
- Aliens Expulsion Law . . . Oct. 14, 1896 ; July 15, 1898
- Aliens Immigration Laws :
  - Orange Free State . . . May 19, 1897
  - Transvaal . . . Nov. 26, 1896 ; May 6 ,,
- Aliwal North, Treaty of . . . Feb. 12, 1869
- Amatola district, *see* . . . 1850-3
- Amatongaland :
  - Queen Zambela seeks protection . . . June, 1887
  - Mr. Kruger makes an offer . . . May 4, 1889
  - British Protectorate, *see* . . . March 15, 1895
  - The Administration of . . . June 29, 1896
  - Annexed to Zululand, *see* . . . Nov. 22, 1897
- Anstruther, Col., *see* . . . Dec. 20, 1880
- Appelbe, Mrs., Murder of . . . April 28, 1899
- Arbitration question . . . May 31-June 5, Aug. 19, 28 (*a*), Oct. 9 ,,
- Australia and the War . . . July 11, Oct. 3 (*b*), Dec. 18 (*b, c*), 21 (*a, b*) ,,  
Jan. 1 (*b*), 3 (*b*), March 3, 15 (*b*), 1900

- Baden-Powell, Col. . . . Oct. 12 (*a*), Nov. 7 (*b*), 1899
- Banjailand (Limpopo) Trek . . . June, 1891
- Barkly, Sir Henry, on Boer treatment of natives . . . Dec. 18, 1876
- Basutoland :
  - Rise of the Basuto under Moshesh . . . 1824
  - Encroachments on Basuto territory forbidden . . . 1842
  - Basutoland created a Treaty State . . . Oct. 5, 1843 (*a*)
  - Basuto defeat British and Boers . . . June 30, 1851

Basutoland—*continued*.

Moshesh as diplomatist, <i>see</i>	Dec., 185
Boer raids and Basuto troubles	1861 ( <i>a</i> )
Boers and Basuto: Arbitration	1864 (
Renewed troubles: British Commissioner	1865 ( <i>a</i> )
Moshesh submits to the Free State	April, "
Britain comes to the rescue	March 12, 186
Treaty of Aliwal North: Boer compensation	Feb. 12, 186
Basutoland annexed to Cape	Aug., 187
Moirosi causes trouble	March, 187
Cape Disarmament Act: Revolt	April, 1880 ( <i>b</i> )
Peace restored	Dec., 18
Self-government leads to further discord	Feb., 188
Imperial administration, <i>see</i>	Nov. 29 "
Basutoland a British colony	March 13,
Basutoland enters the Customs Union	July 1, 1891
Basuto grateful to British, <i>see</i>	April, 1898 ( <i>b</i> )
Expresses loyalty	Oct. 26, 1899 ( <i>b</i> )
Battles, etc.:	
Boers defeat Moselekatze	Nov., 1837
Dingaan massacres Retief's party	Feb. 6, 1838
"Dingaan's Day"	Dec. 16 "
Boers and Panda defeat Dingaan	Jan. 4, 1840
Natal Boers defeat Capt. Smith	May 23, 1842
Skirmish of Zwart Kopjes	Feb., 1846
Battle of Boomplaats	Aug. 29, 1848
Viervoet	June 30, 1851
Gen. Cathcart and Basuto	Dec., 1852
FIRST BOER WAR	
Bronkhorst Spruit	Dec. 20, 1880
Laing's Nek	Jan. 28, 1881
Ingogo River	Feb. 8 "
Majuba Hill	" 27 "
MATABELE WAR	
Shangani River	Oct. 24, 1893
Imbembesi River	Nov. 1 "
Singuesi River	" 2 "
Bulawayo occupied	" 3 "
SECOND BOER WAR	
Time fixed by Boer ultimatum expires	Oct. 11, 1899 ( <i>a'</i> )
Free State's first act of war	" 11 " ( <i>a'</i> )
First shot fired: Mafeking isolated	" 12 " ( <i>a</i> )
Natal invaded	" 14 " ( <i>b</i> )

Battles, etc.—*continued*.

Dundee evacuated : Kimberley isolated .	. Oct. 16, 1899
British success at Talana Hill .	. „ 20 „
„ „ Elandslaagte .	. „ 21 „ (a)
Gen. Yule retires on Ladysmith .	. „ 22 „ (b)
Death of Gen. Symons .	. „ 23 „ (a)
Dundee occupied by Boers .	. „ 23 „ (b)
Action at Rietfontein .	. „ 24 „ (a)
Fighting at Kimberley .	. „ 24 „ (b)
Gen. Yule joins Gen. White at Ladysmith .	. „ 26 „ (a)
Enemy closing round Ladysmith .	. „ 28 „ (b)
Nicholson's Nek mishap .	. „ 29-30 „ (b)
Ladysmith isolated .	. Nov. 2 „ (c)
First transport arrives .	. „ 9 „ (c)
General attack on Ladysmith repulsed .	. „ 9 „ (e)
A Fifth Division .	. „ 11 „ (b)
Boers occupy Aliwal North .	. „ 14 „ (c)
Armoured train wrecked : Chieveley .	. „ 15 „ (a)
Engagement at Belmont .	. „ 23 „ (a)
Boers repulsed at Tugela Drift .	. „ 23 „ (b)
Skirmish at Willow Grange .	. „ 23 „ (c)
Battle of Enslin (Graspan) .	. „ 25 „ (a)
„ Modder River .	. „ 29 „ (b)
A Sixth Division .	. Dec. 4 „
Sortie from Ladysmith : Gun Hill .	. „ 8 „ (b)
Reverse at Stormberg .	. „ 10 „
„ „ Magersfontein .	. „ 11 „
„ on the Tugela .	. „ 15 „ (a)
Mobilisation of Seventh Division ordered .	. „ 15 „ (b)
Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener to go out .	. „ 18 „ (a)
Militia, Volunteer, and Colonial reinforcements .	. „ 18 „ (b)
Eighth Division preparing .	. „ 25 „
Sunnyside .	. Jan. 1, 1900 (b)
Colesberg .	. „ 1 „ (c)
Kuruman surrenders .	. „ 2 „
Heavy fighting at Ladysmith .	. „ 6 „ (a)
Rensburg .	. „ 6 „ (b)
„ .	. „ 15 „
Crossing at Trichard's Drift .	. „ 17-18 „
Spion Kop .	. „ 23-25 „
Thebus occupied .	. „ 26 „
Koodoosberg occupied .	. Feb. 4 „
Vaal Krantz .	. „ 5-7 „
Koodoosberg attacked .	. „ 8 „ (b)
„ abandoned .	. „ 9 „ (b)



Battles, etc.—*continued*.

Kimberley relieved . . . . .	Feb. 15, 1900 (
Pursuit of Cronje . . . . .	„ 15 „ (
Final struggle for Ladysmith . . . . .	„ 17-27 „ (
Surrender of Cronje . . . . .	„ 27 „ (
Relief of Ladysmith . . . . .	„ 28 „
Gen. Brabant captures Boer position at Labuschagne's Nek . . . . .	March 4 „
Boers routed at Poplar Grove . . . . .	„ 7 „ (
Gen. Gatacre occupies Burghersdorp . . . . .	„ 7 „ (
Lord Kitchener at Victoria Road . . . . .	„ 7 „ (
Jamestown occupied . . . . .	„ 8 „
Lord Roberts at Driefontein . . . . .	„ 10 „ (
Casualties to date . . . . .	„ 10 „ (
Lord Roberts at Aasvogel Kop. . . . .	„ 11 „ (
Barkly East occupied . . . . .	„ 11 „ (
Gen. French at Bloemfontein . . . . .	„ 12 „ (
Occupation of „ . . . . .	„ 13 „ (
The Presidents seek peace . . . . .	„ 13 „ (
Occupation of Boshof . . . . .	„ 14 „ (
„ Bethulie . . . . .	„ 15 „ (
„ Prieska: Collapse of Rebel Movement . . . . .	„ 18 „
Engagement at Fourteen Streams . . . . .	„ 20 „ (
Col. Plumer's retirement from Lobatsi reported . . . . .	„ 23 „
Boer losses during the War . . . . .	„ 27 „
Fighting near Brandfort . . . . .	„ 29 „ (
(See also Zululand.)	

## Bechuanaland :

Boer interference with travellers, <i>see</i> 1852 (a), 1858 (a); Feb., 185	
Boers attack Sechele, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1852 (
„ „ Montsioa, <i>see</i> . . . . .	„ (
Boers tax the Baralong . . . . .	1865 (
„ send a commando . . . . .	1868 (
Montsioa complains of Boers . . . . .	March 27, 187
Boers wish to "dwell together" with Baralong . . . . .	Aug. „
President Burgers discovers Moshette, <i>see</i> . . . . .	July 1, 187
„ „ wants to alter boundary . . . . .	187
Montsioa seeks British protection . . . . .	1874 (
Military occupation of South Bechuanaland . . . . .	1878 (
Montsioa again seeks British protection . . . . .	Dec., 187
Mankaroane and Massow: Boer helpers . . . . .	188
Montsioa and Moshette „ . . . . .	May „
Mr. Rhodes and Boer encroachments, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1882
Montsioa drives back Boers . . . . .	Jan. 22, 188
British subjects not to intervene . . . . .	Feb. „

Bechuanaland—*continued*.

Boers divide the spoil . . . . .	March 25, 1882
Republic of Goshen . . . . .	April 1 „
Proposed joint armed intervention . . . . .	July „
Mankaroane and Massow tired of fighting . . . . .	July 26 „
Boers arrange a treaty for them, and secure Stellaland for themselves . . . . .	Aug. „
British disallow the treaty . . . . .	Oct. 16 „
Montsioa-Moshette treaty <i>à la</i> Boer . . . . .	„ 24 „
British policy : non-intervention . . . . .	March, 1883
Stellaland Republic set up . . . . .	Sept. „
Mankaroane protests to High Commissioner “United States of Stellaland” . . . . .	Oct. „
Extent of the spoils . . . . .	Nov. „
British policy : intervention . . . . .	Feb. 1884
Mr. Mackenzie's mission . . . . .	Feb. 9 „
Murder of Mr. Bethell . . . . .	April 12, May „
Mr. Mackenzie withdrawn . . . . .	June „
Mr. Rhodes's mission . . . . .	July 30 „
Settles Stellaland : Goshen too much for him . . . . .	Aug., 1884 ( <i>b</i> )
Mr. Kruger intervenes : “Interests of humanity” . . . . .	Sept. 8, 1884
Capetown protests . . . . .	„ 10 „
Warren expedition decided on . . . . .	„ 24 „
Mr. Kruger withdraws his proclamation . . . . .	Oct. „
Cape politicians seek a settlement . . . . .	Oct. 9 „
Sir Charles Warren's force on the Vaal . . . . .	Nov. 22 „
Mr. Kruger pacific : Conference . . . . .	Jan. 22, 1885
A bloodless victory and a Protectorate . . . . .	Jan. 25 „
Treaty with Khama . . . . .	March „
Sir Charles Warren returns . . . . .	May 12 „
British Bechuanaland constituted . . . . .	Sept. 24 „
Settlement of land claims . . . . .	„ 30 „
Administration of North Bechuanaland . . . . .	May, 1886
British Bechuanaland Annexation Bill . . . . .	July 4, 1890 ( <i>a</i> )
B.S.A. Co. and the Protectorate . . . . .	Aug., 1895 ( <i>b</i> )
Khama, Sebele, and Bathoen in England . . . . .	„ „
Settlement of Bechuanaland . . . . .	Sept. 6, 1895
Beira Railway, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Nov. 15 „
Beit, Mr. Alfred . . . . .	June 11, 1891
Bethell, Mr. Christopher . . . . .	Oct. 30, 1888
Black Circuit . . . . .	Dec., 1878; June, 1884
Bloemfontein : . . . . .	1811
Rise of . . . . .	Feb., 1846
Convention of . . . . .	Feb. 23, 1854
Conference at . . . . .	May 31–June 5, 1899

Bloemfontein—*continued*.

Occupation of . . . . . March 13, 1900 (

## Boer Aspirations for Supremacy:

A Boer-Kaffir alliance to eject British . . . . . March 6, 181

Piet Retief and a great Boer Republic . . . . . Feb. 6, 183

Mr. Burgers „ „ „ . . . . . 1875 (

Africa for Afrikanders . . . . . April 7, 188

Lord Rosebery's views . . . . . Oct. 27, 189

Mr. Balfour's „ . . . . . Nov. 28, 1899 (

Mr. Rhodes's „ . . . . . Feb. 23, 190

Sir G. White's „ . . . . . March 9, 1900 (

## Boer Intrigues for Expanded Boundaries:

Amatongaland, *see* . . . . . June, 188

## Bechuanaland:

They tax the Baralong . . . . . 1865 (

Send a commando . . . . . 1868 (

Would "dwell together" with Baralong . . . . . Aug., 187

Burgers "discovers" Moshette, *see* . . . . . July 1, 187

"Help" rival chiefs 1881; May, 1881; Jan. 22, Feb., 188

Measure out Baralong land . . . . . March 25 „

Set up Republic of Goshen, *see* . . . . . April 1 „

"Intervene" between chiefs . . . . . July 26 „

A "treaty of peace": Stellaland set up . . . . . Aug. „

Another "treaty," and more farms . . . . . Oct. 24 „

Given a free hand . . . . . March, 188

The plough follows the rifle . . . . . Oct. „

"United States of Stellaland" . . . . . Nov. „

Not enough yet to go round . . . . . Feb., 188

British wake up . . . . . „ 9 „

Mr. Kruger's proclamation . . . . . Sept. 10 „

Nemesis: Warren! . . . . . March, 188

Matabeleland: Limpopo trek . . . . . June, 189

## Natal:

Boer trekkers "help" Panda against Dingaan,  
make him king, and annex most of the country Jan. 4, 184

## North and East:

Mr. Kruger will withdraw all claims to the north  
if given a free hand to the east . . . . . May 4, 182

Convention: will not compete with B.S.A. Co.;  
unwelcome conditions . . . . . Aug., 1890 (

After which, the Limpopo trek. "Compensation"  
asked for on the east . . . . . June, 189

## Swaziland:

Boer adventures: the concessions they got, and  
their "Little Free State." *See* Nov., 1885, 1887; March, 1889 (

Boer Intrigues for Expanded Boundaries—*continued*.

A study in Boer tactics . . . Feb. 25, 1890

Later steps to supremacy

Aug., 1890; Nov. 13, 1893; Dec., 1894; Feb. 19, 1895; Oct. 6, 1898

## Zambaan and Umbegesa:

Mr. Ferreira makes "agreements," *see* . . . Jan. 30, 1888

"A closer connection with the sea" . . . Oct. 20 "

A tax-gatherer becomes supreme . . . Aug., 1891

Steady absorption by the Boers . . . 1894

Final annexation by the British . . . March 22, 1895

## Zululand:

Cross Zululand boundaries, and help to provoke .

Zulu War . . . *See* Feb., Dec. 11, 1878

Boer adventurers help the Usutus against Usibepu . . . Jan. 29, 1883

They proclaim Dinizulu king . . . May 21, 1884

Set up the "New Republic" . . . Aug. "

Claim three parts of Zululand . . . Dec., 1885

New Republic recognised by British . . . Nov. 4, 1886

" absorbed in Transvaal . . . July, 1888

## Boer Promises:

Mr. Kruger promises equal treatment . . . May 10, 1881

"Unity and Reconciliation" . . . Aug. 3, 1881 (*b*)

Protection of industries . . . Dec. 22, 1883

Mr. Kruger and the grievances . . . Dec. 31, 1895 (*c*)

Mr. Chamberlain on . . . July 27, Oct. 19, 1899

(*See also* Conventions—Pretoria and London.)

Boer treatment of British Indians . . . July 1, 1899 (*a*)

## Boer treatment of Natives:

Raid on N'capai . . . Jan. 14, 1841

Treatment of Griquas . . . Feb., 1846

Livingstone's description . . . 1852

Raid on Bapedi tribe . . . Aug. "

Massacres in Secocoeni's country . . . *See dates in* 1876

Khama's complaint . . . Aug. 22 "

Tactics and territories . . . Sept. 22 "

"Injustice, cruelty, and rapine" . . . Dec. 18 "

War against Mapoch . . . Aug. 13, Nov. 16, 17, 1882

British coloured subjects . . . Dec. 1898 (*a*)

(*See also* Basutoland and Bechuanaland.)

Boers (*see* Treks, and early dates in Natal, Transvaal,  
and Orange Free State).

## Boers and the Sea:

Desire for St. Lucia Bay thwarted . . . Oct. 5, 1843 (*b*)

Aspirations for Amatongaland . . . June, 1887

A definite request to the British . . . Oct. 20, 1888

Boers and the Sea—*continued*.

Mr. Kruger's friendly offer	. . .	May 4, 187
Britain offers Kosi Bay	. . .	Feb. 25, 189
The movement seawards	. . .	. 189

## British Policy, Phases of:

Shilling and FitzHerbert's proclamation repudiated	. . .	167
Cape taken over	. . .	Aug. 13, 181
Emigration encouraged	. . .	. 181
Regulation of slavery	. . .	Feb., 182
Emancipation of slaves	. . .	Dec. 1, 182
Creation of Native Treaty States	Dec. 11, 1834; Oct. 5, 184	Nov. 23, 184
Expansion of boundaries opposed	. . .	May 10, 183
Colonial Secretary defends the Kaffirs	. . .	Dec. 26 ,,
British influence to Portuguese boundary	. . .	. 183
Attempts to check trekking	. . .	. 1836-4
No independent states by British subjects	. . .	July, 183
	June 10, Sept. 3, Dec. 2, 184	
Anti-annexation (Natal)	. . .	Dec. 4, 1838; Dec. 24, 183
No encroachments on native territories	. . .	. 184
St. Lucia Bay secured to shut out Boers and foreign		
Powers, but British settlers warned off	. . .	Oct. 5, 184
Natal annexed to Cape Colony	. . .	May 31, 184
Native Treaty States in disfavour	. . .	Dec. 1, 184
Boundaries repudiated in 1835 re-absorbed	. . .	„ 17 „
Orange River Sovereignty set up	. . .	Feb. 3, 184
£2,000 offered for the "rebel" Pretorius	. . .	Aug. 29 „
Negotiations with Pretorius <i>re</i> independence	. . .	„ 25, 185
Independence of Transvaal Boers granted	. . .	Jan. 17, 185
Sovereignty abandoned: Free State rises	. . .	Feb. 23, 185
"Queen's authority already extended too far," <i>see</i>	. . .	March 16 „
Sir G. Grey's confederation scheme rejected	. . .	Nov. 19, 185
Free State annexation proposals rejected	. . .	Dec. „
"Five years . . . seven Secretaries of State . . .		
each different views," <i>see</i>	. . .	July 20, 185
Non-expansion policy dropped on discovery of		
diamonds	. . .	. 1871 ( <i>a</i> )
Lord Carnarvon's confederation scheme proposed	. . .	May 4, 187
Annexation of the Transvaal	. . .	April 12, 187,
Sir B. Frere's view of German designs "ground-		
less," <i>see</i>	. . .	March 12, 187
"Impossible to withdraw from Transvaal"	May 9, 1877; April 4	„
	Jan. 13, Nov. 3, 29, Dec. 17, 187	
	April 12, May 12, 20, 24, 1880; Jan. 7, 1881	

British Policy, Phases of—*continued*.

- British withdrawal from Transvaal (Pretoria Convention) . . . . . Aug. 3, 1881
- Responsibility repudiated over S.W. coast, except as regards Walfisch Bay . . . . . Oct. „
- Warship sent, on hearing of German action in Damaraland, *see* . . . . . Nov. 3, 1883
- Recognition of obligations as Paramount Power . . . . . March, 1885
- Having refused to annex Zululand after war in 1879, Britain takes over what Boers have left . . . . . May, 1887
- British Commissioner eventually sent to Swaziland; finds Boers have appropriated everything . . . . . Feb. 25, 1890
- Allows Colonies to help: Imperial defence . . . . . Oct. 3, 1899 (*b*)
- Invites „ „ „ „ . . . . . March 3, 1900
- Receives Colonial advice: Imperial policy . . . . . March 15, 1900 (*d*)
- British South Africa Company (*see* Bechuanaland, Mashonaland, and Rhodesia).
- Bulawayo . . . . . Oct., Nov. 3, 1893; Nov. 4, 1897
- Buller, Sir Redvers:
- Commander-in-Chief in South Africa . . . . . Oct. 7, 1899
- Leaves Waterloo . . . . . Oct. 14, 1899 (*a*)
- At Capetown . . . . . „ 31 „ (*a*)
- „ Durban . . . . . Nov. 25 „ (*b*)
- Efforts to reach Ladysmith . . . . . Dec. 15, 1899, *et seq.*
- Relief of Ladysmith . . . . . Feb. 28, 1900
- Bulwer, Sir Henry . . . . . Feb., Nov. 16, 29, 1878; Nov. 13, 1884
- Burgers, Mr.:
- President of the Transvaal . . . . . 1872
- His aspirations: Delagoa Bay . . . . . 1875 (*a*)
- Leads commando against Secocoeni . . . . . 1876 (*a*)
- His views respecting Transvaal . . . . . March 3, 1877
- Canada and the War: Oct. 3 (*b*), Dec. 18 (*b, c*), 19 (*b*), 21 (*a, b*), 28, 1899
- Jan. 1 (*b*), 4 (*b*), 10 (*c*), Feb. 27 (*c*), March 3, 13 (*d*), 15 (*b*), 1900
- Cape Colony:
- Bartholomew Diaz discovers the Cape . . . . . 1486
- Vasco da Gama doubles the Cape . . . . . 1497
- Antonio Saldanha ascends Table Mountain . . . . . 1503
- Sir Francis Drake doubles the Cape . . . . . 1580
- English ships arrive . . . . . 1591
- Dutch ships arrive . . . . . 1595
- Becomes a port of call . . . . . 1620
- Dutch take possession . . . . . April 7, 1652
- First settlers . . . . . 1657
- First vineyard . . . . . 1658

Cape Colony—*continued.*

"Always be a burden," <i>see</i>	.	.	.	Dec. 15, 1651
Bought from Hottentots	.	.	.	1671
Stellenbosch founded	.	.	.	1671
Drakenstein Valley occupied	.	.	.	1681
Huguenot settlers arrive	.	.	.	1681
Extension to Tulbagh Basin	.	.	.	171
Magistracy established at Swellendam	.	.	.	1741
Great Fish River the Colonial boundary	.	.	.	1771
British Fleet sent to the Cape	.	.	.	1781
Graaff Reinet founded	.	.	.	178
Graaff Reinet and Swellendam rebel	.	.	.	1791
British occupy Capetown	.	.	.	Sept. 16 "
Dutch Government take over the Cape	.	.	.	Feb., 180
Capetown surrenders to British	.	.	.	Jan. 10, 181
The Black Circuit	.	.	.	1811
Military posts on eastern frontier	.	.	.	1811-12
Britain pays six millions for the Cape	.	.	.	Aug. 13, 1811
Slachter's Nek, <i>see</i>	.	.	.	March 6, 1811
Arrival of Scotch mechanics	.	.	.	1817 (b)
Four thousand British Immigrants	.	.	.	1820-
Executive Council appointed	.	.	.	1821
Grahamstown invaded by Kaffirs	.	.	.	Dec., 183
Legislative Council constituted	.	.	.	1835 (b)
New boundaries taken and abandoned, <i>see</i>	.	.	.	May 10, 183
Cape of Good Hope Punishment Act	.	.	.	1836 (a)
Great Trek	.	.	.	1837
Abandoned boundaries re-absorbed	.	.	.	Dec. 17, 1841
Colonial Parliament for the Cape	.	.	.	185
Responsible Government conceded	.	.	.	Nov. 29, 187
Griqualand West incorporated	.	.	.	Oct. 15, 187
Galekaland annexed to Cape	.	.	.	1887 (c)
Pondoland	„	„	.	March, 1887
British Bechuanaland annexed to Cape	.	.	.	Aug., 1895 (b)
Glen Grey Act	.	.	See Aug., 1894; May 14	„
Public feeling on Transvaal question	.	.	.	March 29, 1891
Afrikaner Ministry	.	.	.	April, 1891
The Cape and the crisis	.	.	.	Sept. 8, 1899 (c)
Refugees in Capetown	.	.	See Oct. 10	„ (b)
Martial law in northern districts	.	.	.	Nov. 3 „ (g)
Collapse of rebel movement	.	.	.	March 18, 1901
Cape views on the final settlement	.	.	.	„ 30 „
Carnarvon, Lord :				
Proposes confederation scheme	.	.	.	May 4, 1871
Sends Sir T. Shepstone to the Transvaal	.	.	.	Sept. 22, 1871

Carnarvon, Lord—*continued.*

His hopes concerning Sir B. Frere	.	.	Nov., 1876
Letter on Zulu situation	.	.	Jan. 24, 1878
Resigns	.	.	Feb. „
Cathcart, Gen.: Expedition against Basuto	.	.	Dec., 1852
Celliers, Mr. J. F.	.	.	May, 1888
Ceylon contingent	.	.	Jan. 12, 1900 (a)
Chamberlain, Mr. :			
Becomes Colonial Secretary	.	.	July 2, 1895
Friendly greeting to Mr. Kruger	.	.	„ 8 „
Action on Drifts question	.	.	Oct. 1 „
„ Jameson Raid	.	Dec. 29, 1895 (a), <i>et seq.</i>	
„ Mr. Kruger's proposed visit	.	.	Jan. 23, 1896
„ Suzerainty question	.	April 16, 1898 ; May 9, 1899	
„ explosives monopoly	.	Jan. 13 ; March 9 „	
„ Bloemfontein Conference	.	May 10, 19 „	
On Boer promises	.	.	July 27 „
Proposes Joint Commission	.	.	„ 31 „
Explains British position	.	.	Aug. 28 „
Reply to ultimatum	.	.	Oct. 10 „
(See also Franchise Laws, Transvaal, and Speeches.)			
Clements, Gen.	.	.	March 15, 1900 (c)
Clerk, Sir George	.	April 6, 1853 ; Feb. 23, 1854	
Clery, Sir C. F.	.	Oct. 7 ; Nov. 18, 1899	
Cloete, Col. A. J.	.	.	July 14, 1842
„ Mr. H.	.	May, 1843 ; Oct. 5, 1843 (b)	
Colley, Sir George.	June, 1880, and Transvaal dates to Feb. 27, 1881		
Colonies and the War :			
Help offered	.	.	July 11, 1899
„ accepted	.	.	Oct. 3 „ (b)
„ invited	.	.	March 3, 1900
Advice on Imperial policy	.	.	„ 15 „ (d)
(See also Australia, Canada, New Zealand.)			
Comforts for the troops	.	.	Jan. 6, 1900
Commandeering of British subjects	.	May-June, July 25, 1894	
Company, Dutch East India, <i>see</i>	.	.	1602, 1790
„ English „	.	.	1600
Confederation :			
Proposed by Sir George Grey	.	.	Nov. 19, 1858
Lord Carnarvon's scheme	.	May 4, 1875 ; Nov., 1876	
Permissive Confederation Act	.	.	Aug. 10, 1877
Lord Carnarvon resigns	.	.	Feb., 1878
Lord Kimberley and Confederation	.	.	April 12, 1880
Boer agitation against	.	.	May 6 „
Cape Parliament shelves the question	.	.	June 29 „



- "Conquered territory" . . . . Feb. 12, 1869
- Conventions:
- Sand River Convention . . . . Jan. 17, 1852
  - Bloemfontein . . . . Feb. 23, 1854
  - Diamond Fields . . . . July, 1876
  - Pretoria . . . . Aug. 3, 1881
  - London . . . . Feb. 27, 1884
  - Anglo-Portuguese . . . . June 11, 1891
  - Swaziland . . . . Aug., 1890 (a); Dec., 1894
- (See also Treaties.)
- Cronje, Gen., surrender of . . . Feb. 27, 1900 (a)
- Cunninghame, Sir A. . . . June 12, 1877
- Customs Union, South African:
- Conference at Capetown . . . Jan. 30-Feb. 18, 1888
  - Convention between Cape and Orange Free State . . April, 1889
  - British Bechuanaland enters . . . Jan. 1, 1891
  - Basutoland enters . . . . July 1 ,,
  - Bechuanaland Protectorate enters . . . July, 1893
  - Natal enters . . . . Oct., 1898 (b)
  - For Rhodesia, *see* . . . . Aug. 1, 1899
  - ,, Transvaal, *see* Jan. 30-Feb. 18, 1888; Feb. 25, Aug. (a), 1890
- Damaraland and Namaqualand:
- Explorations of Namaqualand . . . . 1761-2
  - Rhenish Mission begins . . . . 1842
  - Britain takes over Guano Islands . . . . 1867
  - Rhenish Missionaries seek British protection . . . 1868 (b)
  - Annexation proposed . . . . 1876 (b)
  - Walfisch Bay taken over . . . . March 12, 1878
  - Further appeals for protection refused . . . . Aug., 1880
  - Missionaries ask for German warship . . . . ,, 1881
  - Limits of British responsibility . . . . Oct. ,,
  - German flag raised in Damaraland . . . . May 2, 1883
  - Germany annexes Damaraland and Namaqualand . . Aug., 1884 (c)
  - Mr. Rhodes on German trade . . . . June, 1895 (c)
- Danish sympathy . . . . Jan. 22, 1900
- Davies, Mr. W. D. (Reform prisoner), *see* May 30, 1896; June 22, 1897
- Delagoa Bay:
- Boer treks to . . . . 1835 (a), 1845
  - ,, claims (and previous history) . . . . 1868 (a)
  - Marshal MacMahon's award . . . . July 24, 1875
  - Germany proposes to land troops . . . . Dec. 31, 1895 (f)
  - Anglo-German agreement . . . . Oct., 1898 (a)
  - Boer supplies *via* Delagoa Bay . . . Dec. 27, 1899 (a); Jan. 16, 1900

## Delagoa Bay Railway :

President Burgers' scheme . . . . .	1875 (a)
Portuguese treaty with Transvaal . . . . .	Dec. 11, 1875
Concession to Col. McMurdo . . . . .	„ 14, 1883
First section completed . . . . .	„ 14, 1887
Seizure by Portugal . . . . .	June 29, 1889
Extension to Pretoria opened . . . . .	July 8, 1895
Decision of arbitrators . . . . .	March 29, 1900

(*See also* Drifts Question, Oct. 1, 1895.)

## Diamonds (*see under* Industries).

## Dingaan (*see* Zululand).

Dodds, Mr., arrest of, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Dec. 24, 1898
Dunkin, Sir Rufane, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1820-1
Drifts Question, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Oct. 1, 1895
Dundonald's, Lord, entry into Ladysmith . . . . .	Feb. 28, 1900
Durban, rise of . . . . .	June 23, 1835

## D'Urban, Sir Benjamin :

Extends boundary from Keiskamma to Kei . . . . .	May 10, 1835
Letter on Great Trek, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1836-40

## Dutch Rule at the Cape :

Trekking to avoid . . . . .	1689, 1745, 1784
Adriaan van der Stel's maladministration . . . . .	1707
Memorial against arbitrary officials . . . . .	1779
Trekkers followed up, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1745, 1784
Deputation to Amsterdam to complain . . . . .	1789
Graaff Reinet and Swellendam in revolt . . . . .	1795
Direct rule of Dutch Government . . . . .	1803

Dynamite monopoly, *see* . . . . . Jan. 13, Feb. 2, March 9, 1899

East London founded . . . . . 1857

Edgar, Tom Jackson, The killing of . . . . . Dec. 16, 1898

## Education in the Transvaal :

Statistics concerning . . . . .	Oct. 3, 1896
Technical schools . . . . .	May, 1898
Egerton, Lieut., Death of . . . . .	Nov. 2, 1899 (d)
Elliott, Capt., shot by Boers, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Dec. 20, 1880
Emigration to the Cape, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1817, 1819, 1820-1, 1884 (b)
Erasmus, Abel . . . . .	1876
Erasmus, Gen. . . . .	Oct. 20, 1899

Faku, Pondo chief, demands protection . . . . . Jan. 14, 1841

Farewell, Lieut. . . . . Aug., 1824

Farrar, Mr. George . . . . . Dec. 29, 1895 (b); April 28, June 11, 1896

Ferreira, Mr. J. J. . . . . Jan. 30, 1888; March, 1889; Aug., 1891, 1894

Fitzherbert raises British flag at the Cape . . . . . July 3, 1620

- "Flag incident" in Johannesburg . . . . . March 4, 1890  
 Flying squadron . . . . . See Jan. 8, 1896  
 Forbes, Major . . . . . Oct., Dec. 3, 1893  
 Forestier-Walker, Gen. Sir. F. W. E. . . . . Aug. 16, Oct. 7, 1899  
 Franchise Laws :  
     Orange Free State, *see* . . . . . Dec., 1897  
     Transvaal :  
         Mr. Kruger promises continuance of equal rights . . . . . May 10, 1881  
         Two years' residence increased to five . . . . . 1882 (*a*)  
         Five increased to ten; Second Chamber . . . . . 1890  
         Fourteen years' qualification . . . . . Sept., 1894  
         Petition by 35,483 Uitlanders rejected . . . . . Aug., 1895 (*a*)  
         Concession to Uitlanders favouring Government . . . . . Feb., 1897  
         Bloemfontein Conference, *see* . . . . . May 31-June 5, 1899  
         New Bill, seven years' qualification . . . . . June 12, 14 ,,  
         Mr. Kruger and his "rights" . . . . . June 14 ,,  
         Fresh proposals, five years' qualification, seven or  
             nine retrospective, "cumbersome formalities" . . . . . July 13 ,,  
         New law passed . . . . . ,, 18 ,,  
         Declared wholly inadequate . . . . . ,, 26 ,,  
         Mr. Chamberlain proposes Joint Commission . . . . . ,, 31 ,,  
         Transvaal offers five years' retrospective, new  
             seats, but with three conditions . . . . . Aug. 19 ,,  
         H.M. Government maintains previous attitude . . . . . ,, 28 ,,  
         Transvaal withdraws five years' offer . . . . . Sept. 2 ,,  
         Government will accept offer without conditions . . . . . Sept. 8, 1899 (*a*)  
         Transvaal insists on conditions . . . . . Sept. 16, 1899  
         Mr. Chamberlain regrets; situation to be "con-  
             sidered afresh" . . . . . ,, 22 ,,  
 French, Gen. . . . . Oct. 7, 21 (*a*), Nov. 2 (*e*) ,,  
     Jan. 1 (*c*), 15, Feb. 15, March 12 (*a*), 1900  
 Frere, Sir Bartle :  
     Appointed Governor of Cape . . . . . Nov., 1876  
     Arrives at the Cape . . . . . March 31, 1877  
     "Supremacy up to Delagoa Bay" . . . . . Dec. 19 ,,  
     "General rising of Kaffirdom" . . . . . March 18, 1878  
     Letter on Britain's responsibility . . . . . Aug. 10 ,,  
     "Slumbering on a volcano" . . . . . Sept. 30 ,,  
     Ultimatum to Zulus . . . . . Dec. 11 ,,  
     The common purpose of the Kaffirs . . . . . ,, 12 ,,  
     Rebuked . . . . . Jan. 23, 1879  
     Censured . . . . . March 13 ,,  
     Meets the Boers . . . . . April 10, 12 ,,  
     Partially superseded . . . . . June ,,  
     Agitation against . . . . . June 3, 1880

Frere, Sir Bartle—*continued*.

- Recalled . . . . . Aug. 1, 1880
- (*See also* Transvaal and Zululand.)
- Froude, Mr. J. A. . . . . May 4, 1875
- Funds (Refugees and War), *see* Oct. 11 (*b*), 12 (*c*), 18 (*c*), 21 (*b*), Nov. 6 (*b*),  
18 (*b*), Dec. 8 (*a*), 21 (*c*), 1899; Jan. 13, March 12, 1900 (*b*)
- Fynn, Mr. . . . . Aug., 1824
  
- Galekaland annexed to Cape . . . . . 1887 (*c*)
- Galishwe, Revolt of . . . . . Sept., 1897
- Gatacre, Sir W. . . . . Oct. 7, Nov. 18, Dec. 10, 24, March 15 (*c*), 17, 1900
- Germany and South Africa :
- Rhenish missionaries in Namaqualand . . . . . 1842
- They seek British protection : Prussia suggests joint  
    demonstration . . . . . 1868 (*b*)
- German protection of Transvaal possible . . . . . *See* April 12, 1877
- ,, African Society of Berlin formed . . . . . 1878 (*b*)
- Sir B. Frere and German designs . . . . . *See* March 12 ,,
- Prince Bismarck, Great Britain, and the missionaries, *see* Aug., 1880
- Missionaries ask for German warship . . . . . ,, 1881
- Germany told British responsibility limited to Wal-  
    fisch Bay . . . . . Oct. ,,
- German Colonial Society (Frankfort) . . . . . Dec. 6, 1882
- Angra Pequena conceded to Herr Lüderitz . . . . . May 1, 1883
- German flag raised in Damaraland . . . . . ,, 2 ,,
- ,, activity affects British policy in Bechuanaland, *see* Feb. 9, 1884
- Germany annexes Damaraland and Namaqualand . . . . . Aug. ,,
- ,, and St. Lucia Bay . . . . . Sept. (*a*), Nov. 13, 1884; June 25, 1885
- German South-West African Association takes over  
    the claims of Herr Lüderitz . . . . . ,,
- German junction with Transvaal on the west prevented . . . . . March ,,
- ,, aspirations for Mashonaland . . . . . May ,,
- Mr. Kruger's "Birthday Speech" on the Emperor . . . . . Jan. 26, 1895
- German trade through Walfisch Bay . . . . . June, 1895 (*c*)
- Germans in Pretoria appeal to Emperor (Jameson  
    Raid) . . . . . Dec. 30 ,, (*d*)
- Germany proposes to land troops at Delagoa Bay . . . . . ,, 31 ,, (*f*)
- German Emperor congratulates Mr. Kruger . . . . . Jan. 3, 1896 (*a*)
- Mr. Kruger thanks the Emperor . . . . . ,, 5 ,, (*a*)
- British Flying Squadron: German press changes tone . . . . . ,, 8 ,, (*a*)
- Anglo-German agreement (Delagoa Bay), *see* . . . . . Oct., 1898 (*a*)
- Cape to Cairo railway and telegraph . . . . . March, 1899
- Emperor greets British troops . . . . . Oct. 30, 1899 (*c*)
- ,, and neutrality . . . . . Nov. 9 ,, (*d*)
- Non-intervention . . . . . March 13, 1900 (*c*)

## Gladstone, Mr. :

- Midlothian speeches, *see* . . . . . Nov., 1879  
 Thanked by the Boers . . . . . March 18, 188c  
 Returned to power . . . . . April ,,  
 His change of front . . . . . June 8 ,,  
 A limit to his concessions, *see* . . . . . Oct. 25, 1881

## Glenelg, Lord :

- Opposed to extensions . . . . . May 10, 1835  
 Defends the Kaffirs . . . . . Dec. 26 ,,

Glen Grey Act, *see* . . . . . Aug., 1894 ; May 14, 1895

Gold (*see* Industries).

Goold-Adams, Col., *see* . . . . . June, 1891 ; Oct., 1892

Goshen (*see* Bechuanaland).

## Graaff Reinet :

- Magistracy founded . . . . . 1794  
 Rebellion against Dutch rule . . . . . 1795

Grahamstown, *see* . . . . . 1811-12

Gray, Mr. (Reform prisoner), commits suicide . . . . . May 16, 1881

Greene, Mr. Conyngham . . . . . Aug., 1896 ; Oct. 12 (f), 1896

Gregorowski, Judge . . . . . April 28, 1897

Grey, Col. . . . . Dec. 30, 1895 (a) ; July 20 ,,

## Grey, Sir George :

- Proposes confederation . . . . . Nov., 1885  
 Supports Free State request for annexation . . . . . Dec. ,,  
 Uncertainties of British policy . . . . . July 20, 1885

## Griqualand West :

- Territory ceded by Nicholas Waterboer . . . . . 1871 (a)  
 Annexed to Cape . . . . . 1877  
 Incorporated with Cape . . . . . Oct. 15, 1877  
 Boundary Commission . . . . . 1882-3

## Griquas, The :

- Treaty with Andries Waterboer . . . . . Dec. 11, 1837  
 Sir G. Napier forbids encroachments . . . . . 1842  
 Treaty with Adam Kok . . . . . Oct. 5, 1843 (a)  
 Troubles with Boers . . . . . Feb., 1846

Grondwet, The . . . . . *See* Feb. 19, 1858

Guano Islands annexed by Britain . . . . . 1867 (b)

*Haarlem*, Wreck of the . . . . . 1648

Hammond, Mr. J. H. . . . . Dec. 29, 1895 (b) ; April 28, June 11, 1896

Hart, Gen. . . . . Dec. 15, 1899 (a)

Havelock, Sir A. E., *see* . . . . . Jan. 30, 1888

Hawksley, Mr. . . . . Feb. 4, 1896

## Hicks-Beach, Sir Michael :

- Receives Boer deputation . . . . . April 4, 1878  
 Action on Zululand question . . . . . *See* Sept. 30, 1878, to March 13, 1879

Hildyard, Gen.	.	.	Nov. 23 (c), Dec. 15 (a), 1899
Honourable Artillery Company	.	.	Feb. 3, 1900 (b)
Huguenot Settlers :			
Arrival at the Cape	.	.	1688
Forbidden to use French	.	.	1709
Hunter, Gen.	.	.	Oct. 7, Dec. 8 (b), 1899
India and the War	Jan. 3 (a), 10 (b), 27 (a),	Feb. 26, March 25,	1900
Indians, British Native, in Transvaal	.	.	July 1, 1899 (a)
Industrial Commission, Report of	.	.	Aug. 5, 1897
Industries :			
Diamonds :			
Diamond found in Hopetown district	.	.	1867 (a)
Discovery at Du Toit's Pan and Bultfontein	.	.	1870 (a)
Discovery at Old de Beers and Colesberg Kopje	.	.	1871 (a)
Results of discoveries, <i>see</i>	.	.	1871
Number of claimants and diggers	.	.	Nov., 1872
De Beers Co., Ltd., formed	.	.	1880
De Beers Consolidated Mines, Ltd., formed	.	March 13,	1888
First copper ore shipped from Capetown	.	.	1852 (b)
First vineyard planted	.	.	1658
Gold :			
Carl Mouch discovers Tati gold fields	.	.	1864 (b)
Gold found in Lydenburg, Mashonaland, and Zoutpansberg	.	.	1869 (a)
First gold law in Transvaal	.	.	1871 (b)
Systematic gold-mining begins	.	.	1884 (a)
Goldfields of South Africa Co.	.	1886 (b) ; Oct. 30,	1888
Rand gold fields and the changes they brought	.	July 18,	1886
Gold output in the Transvaal	.	Dec.,	1898 (b)
Ostrich farming established	.	.	1869 (b)
Wool industry established	.	.	1856 (b)
Irish troops, Queen and	.	.	March 1, 1900 (a)
Jameson, Dr. :			
Releases Portuguese prisoners	.	.	May 11, 1891
Action on Limpopo trek	.	.	June ,,
,, in Matabele War	.	.	July 18, 1893
The title of Rhodesia	.	.	Oct. 27, 1894
Jameson Raid, The :			
Mr. Chamberlain's warning	.	.	Dec. 29, 1895 (a)
Dr. Jameson starts	.	.	,, 29 ,, (b)
Joined by Col. Grey	.	.	,, 30 ,, (a)
Consternation in Johannesburg	.	.	,, 30 ,, (b)
Sir H. Robinson intervenes	.	.	,, 30 ,, (c)
Germans appeal to their Emperor	.	.	,, 30 ,, (d)

Jameson Raid, The—*continued*.

Defence of Johannesburg . . .	Dec. 31, 1895 (a)
Negotiations opened . . .	„ 31 „ (b)
Mr. Kruger will consider grievances . . .	„ 31 „ (c)
Dr. Jameson ordered back . . .	„ 31 „ (d)
Proposed German intervention . . .	„ 31 „ (f)
Mr. Chamberlain's attitude . . .	Jan. 1, 1896 (a)
“Jameson must be mad” . . .	„ 1 „ (c)
Dr. Jameson's fight with the Boers . . .	„ 1 „ (d)
„ surrender . . .	„ 2 „ (a)
German Emperor's telegram . . .	„ 3 „ (a)
Mr. Rhodes disclaims . . .	„ 3 „ (c)
Sir H. Robinson in Pretoria . . .	„ 4 „ (a)
Mr. Chamberlain and the grievances . . .	„ 4 „ (b)
Mr. Kruger's reply to the Kaiser . . .	„ 5 „ (a)
Execution of Jameson demanded . . .	„ 5 „ (b)
“Johannesburg must lay down arms” . . .	„ 6 „ (a)
Mr. Rhodes resigns the Premiership . . .	„ 6 „ (b)
Johannesburg surrenders . . .	„ 7 „
A Flying Squadron . . .	„ 8 „
Queen's message to Mr. Kruger . . .	„ 9 „ (a)
Mr. Kruger shows his hand . . .	„ 9 „ (b)
Dr. Jameson removed from office . . .	„ 9 „ (c)
Mr. Kruger wants to “Forget and Forgive” . . .	„ 10 „ (a)
Arrests of Reformers . . .	„ 10 „ (b)
Sir H. Robinson leaves Pretoria . . .	„ 14 „
The “Reasonable Concessions” . . .	„ 15 „
Mr. Kruger's proposed visit to London . . .	„ 23 „
Dr. Jameson and others at Bow Street . . .	Feb. 25 „
Johannesburg Reformers sentenced . . .	April 28 „
Resignation of Sir Jacobus de Wet . . .	May 1 „
Suicide of Mr. Gray . . .	„ 16 „
Release of 56 Reform prisoners . . .	„ 30 „
„ four Reform leaders . . .	June 11 „
Dr. Jameson committed . . .	„ 15 „
Trial of the Raiders: Sentences . . .	July 28 „
South Africa Committee: Mr. Rhodes's evidence . . .	Feb. 16, 1897
Mr. Kruger's claim for damages . . .	„ 17 „
Dr. Jameson gives evidence . . .	March 26 „
Last two Reform prisoners released . . .	June 22 „
South Africa Committee: Report . . .	July 13 „
Jersey, States of, <i>see</i> . . .	Jan. 30, 1900 (b)
Johannesburg :	
Rise of, <i>see</i> . . .	Sept. 20, 1886
Chamber of Mines founded . . .	Oct., 1889

Johannesburg—*continued.*

Mr. Kruger's visit : The flag incident . . .	March 4, 1890
Reform meeting (followed by new law) . . .	July 14, 1894
Consternation in (Jameson Raid) . . .	Dec. 30, 1895 ( <i>b</i> )
Defence measures . . .	„ 31 „ ( <i>a</i> )
Mr. Kruger invites submission . . .	„ 31 „ ( <i>c</i> )
Sends deputation to Pretoria . . .	Jan. 1, 1896 ( <i>b</i> )
Why Johannesburg surrendered . . .	„ 7 „
Population of . . .	Oct. „
Situation in . . .	Aug. 31, Sept. 1, 12, 1899
Joubert, Piet . . .	April 4, May 20, 1878 ; Jan. 13, 1879
	Oct. 20, Nov. 3 ( <i>b</i> ), 1899 ; March 15 ( <i>a</i> ), 28 ( <i>a</i> ), 1900

Kaffir wars, *see* . . . 1811-12, 1819, 1834, 1835, 1846,  
1850-3, 1858, and Aug., 1877

## Kaffraria :

Province of British Kaffraria set up . . .	Dec. 17, 1847
Fingoland, Idutywa Reserve, and Noman's Land annexed to Cape, <i>see</i> . . .	June 12, 1876
Transkei territory annexed . . .	May, 1878
Port and Estuary of St. John's River taken over . . .	Sept. 4 „
Tembuland, Emigrant Tembuland, Bomvanaland, and Galekaland proclaimed British . . .	Nov., 1881
(They were annexed to Cape Colony . . .	Aug. 26, 1885)
St. John's River territory annexed to Cape . . .	Sept., 1884 ( <i>b</i> )
British Protectorate over Pondoland East . . .	Jan. 6, 1885
Mount Ayliff district annexed . . .	1886
Rode Valley annexed . . .	1887
Resident Commissioner for Pondoland . . .	July 6, 1888
Troubles in Pondoland . . .	Dec., 1893
Pondoland annexed to Cape . . .	March, 1894
Keate, The, award, <i>see</i> . . .	1871 ( <i>a</i> )
Keith Falconer, Lieut.-Col., killed . . .	Nov. 10, 1899
Kelly-Kenny, Major-Gen. . . .	Dec. 4, 1899 ; Jan. 26, Feb. 15 ( <i>b</i> ), 1900

## Khama :

Complains of treatment by Boers . . .	Aug. 22, 1876
Sir Charles Warren's interview with . . .	May 12, 1885
Visit to England, <i>see</i> . . .	Sept. 6, 1895

## Kimberley :

Isolated . . .	Oct. 16, 1899 ( <i>b</i> )
Relieved . . .	Feb. 15, 1900 ( <i>a</i> )

## Kimberley, Lord :

<i>See</i> Transvaal dates . . .	April 12, 1880, <i>et seq.</i>
( <i>See also</i> Speeches.)	

King's, Richard, gallant ride, *see* . . . May 23, 1842



Kitchener, Lord:

Appointed to South Africa . . . . .	Dec. 18, 1899 ( <i>a</i> )
Arrives at the Cape . . . . .	Jan. 10, 1900 ( <i>a</i> )
Leaves for the front . . . . .	Feb. 7 „
Occupies Prieska . . . . .	March 18 „

Kosi Bay, *see* . . . . . May 4, 1900

Kotze, Chief Justice:

Brown <i>v.</i> The State leads to High Court <i>v.</i> Executive	Jan.-Feb., 1900 „
Protest of judges: temporary settlement . . . . .	March 1 „
Mr. Kotze dismissed . . . . .	Feb. 16, 1899
Judge Ameshoff resigns . . . . .	March 8 „
Mr. Kotze's opinion of the President . . . . .	April „

Kruger, Jacob, arrives at the Cape . . . . . 1871

Kruger, Mr. Paul:

Born in Cape Colony . . . . .	1825
Joins in Great Trek, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1836-7
Attempts a raid on Orange Free State, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Jan. 5, 1857
Commandant-General . . . . .	May 10, 1864
Attitude at the annexation . . . . .	April 12, 1877
Goes to London to protest . . . . .	May 9 „
Second journey to London . . . . .	April 4, 1877
Dismissed from office . . . . .	May 20 „
Conspires against Confederation . . . . .	May 6, June 29, 1888
Tries to arrange treaty with Matabele . . . . .	1882 ( <i>c</i> )
Elected President . . . . .	May 9, 1883
Wants to "protect" Bechuanaland . . . . .	Sept. 10, 1884
Interview with Sir C. Warren . . . . .	Jan. 25, 1885
"Friendly offer" respecting expansion . . . . .	May 4, 1889
The "Flag Incident" at Johannesburg . . . . .	March 4, 1890
Mr. Kruger and his relations . . . . .	July 4, 1890 ( <i>b</i> )
The "Carriage Incident" at Pretoria . . . . .	July 25, 1894
Wants to amend London Convention . . . . .	„ 25 „
Speech on German friendship . . . . .	Jan. 26, 1895
Protest respecting Zambaan and Umbegesa . . . . .	March 22 „
Action on Drifts Question . . . . .	Oct. 1 „
Promises consideration of grievances . . . . .	Dec. 31, 1895 ( <i>c</i> )
„ no hostile steps against Johannesburg . . . . .	Jan. 1, 1896 ( <i>b</i> )
Receives German Emperor's congratulations . . . . .	„ 3 „
His reply thereto . . . . .	„ 5 „ ( <i>a</i> )
Receives message from Queen . . . . .	„ 9 „ ( <i>a</i> )
Will forgive all but ringleaders . . . . .	„ 9 „ ( <i>b</i> )
Wants to "forget and forgive" . . . . .	„ 10 „ ( <i>a</i> )
Proposed visit to London . . . . .	„ 23 „
Releases Reform prisoners . . . . .	May 30, June 11, 1896
Action in Kotze episode . . . . .	Jan.-Feb., 1897

Kruger, Mr. Paul—*continued*.

Visits Free State <i>re</i> closer union . . .	March 9, 1897
Speech at Bloemfontein : "Een Kwaaje Vrouw" . . .	„ 11 „
Attitude respecting Industrial Commission . . .	Aug. 5 „
Fourth term of office . . .	Feb., 1898
At Bloemfontein Conference . . .	May 31–June 5, 1899
Franchise ( <i>see under</i> Franchise Laws).	
Does not want to give away his rights . . .	June 14 „
At Bloemfontein . . .	March 6, 7 ( <i>a</i> ), 1900
Sues for peace . . .	„ 13 ( <i>b</i> ) „
Appeal to burghers . . .	„ 22 „
(See also Transvaal and Franchise dates.)	

## Ladysmith :

Isolated . . .	Nov. 2, 1899 ( <i>c</i> )
Relieved . . .	Feb. 28, 1900
(See also <i>under</i> Battles, etc.)	

Lambert, Capt., shot by Boers, *see* . . . Dec. 20, 1880

## Language Question :

Huguenots forbidden to use their own language . . .	1709
Legal proceedings to be in English . . .	1827
Dutch or English for Cape Parliament . . .	1882 ( <i>b</i> )
Equality of Dutch and English demanded for Transvaal, <i>see</i> . . .	Dec. 27, 1895
Refused by Transvaal Government . . .	Sept. 16, 1899 ( <i>c</i> )

## Lanyon, Col. Sir Owen :

Administrator of Transvaal . . .	Jan., 1879
Asks for troops for Pretoria . . .	Nov. 26, 1880
Issues Proclamation . . .	Dec. 16 „

Leonard, Mr. C. . . . See 1892, Dec. 27, 1895

Limpopo (Banjailand) Trek . . . June, 1891

"Little Free State" in Swaziland . . . See March, 1889 (*a*)

Livingstone, Dr.: opinion of the Boers . . . See 1852 (*a*)

Loan, National War . . . March 9, 1900 (*a*)

Lobengula (*see* Mashonaland).

## Loch, Sir Henry (Lord):

Succeeds as Governor and High Commissioner . . .	June, 1889
Action in Limpopo trek . . .	„ 1891
Action respecting Zambaan and Umbegeza . . .	Feb. 20, 1895
Visit to Pretoria <i>re</i> Commandeering . . .	July 25, 1894

Lombard, Field Cornet . . . See Dec., 1898 (*a*)

Lovat, Lord . . . Jan. 12, 1900 (*b*)

## Lucia, St., Bay:

Ceded by Panda to British . . .	Oct. 5, 1843 ( <i>b</i> )
German designs on . . .	Sept. ( <i>a</i> ), Nov. 13, 1884
British flag hoisted . . .	„ 13 „

- Lumsden's Horse . . . . . Feb. 26, 1899  
 Lyddite: Joubert's protest . . . . . Nov. 3, 1899 (*b*)  
 Lydenburg established . . . . . 1841  
 Lyttelton, Gen. . . . . Jan. 17-18, 1900, *et seq.*
- MacDonald, Gen. . . . . Feb. 4, 9 (*b*), 1899  
 Mackenzie Mission to Bechuanaland . . . . . April 12, 1899  
 McMurdo, Col. . . . . See Dec. 14, 1883; June 29, 1883
- Mafeking :  
     Isolated . . . . . Oct. 12, 1899 (*a*)  
     Daily fighting . . . . . Nov. 7 ,, (*b*)  
     Position at . . . . . March 14, 1900 (*a*)  
     Fresh food supplies . . . . . ,, 28 ,, (*b*)  
 Magna Charta of the natives . . . . . See July, 1899  
 Maguire, Mr. Rochfort . . . . . See Oct. 30, 1899  
 Maitland, Sir Peregrine . . . . . Nov. 23, 1899
- Malaboch :  
     Boer expedition against . . . . . May-June, 1899  
     His fate . . . . . July 31 ,,
- Mampoor . . . . . See Aug. 13, Nov. 16-17, 1899
- Mankoroane (*see* Bechuanaland).
- Mapoch . . . . . See Aug. 13, Nov. 16-17 ,,
- Mashonaland and Matabeleland :  
     Rise of the Matabele under Moselekatze . . . . . 1817 (*a*)  
     Treaty of friendship with Cape . . . . . 1836 (*b*)  
     Conflicts with Boer trekkers, *see* . . . . . 1836-40  
     Driven across the Limpopo . . . . . Nov., 1837  
     Moselekatze succeeded by Lobengula . . . . . 1870 (*b*)  
     Mr. Kruger fails to arrange a treaty . . . . . 1882 (*c*)  
     Boer, German, and Portuguese longings . . . . . May, 1885  
     Gold fields of South Africa Company formed . . . . . 1886 (*b*)  
     Portuguese claims . . . . . 1887 (*a*)  
     Moffat treaty with Lobengula . . . . . Feb. 11, 1888  
     The Rudd Concession . . . . . Oct. 30 ,,  
     Lobengula sends envoys to the Queen, *see* . . . . . March, 1889  
     Rise of British South Africa Company . . . . . April 30 ,,  
     Charter granted to British South Africa Company . . . . . Oct. 29 ,,  
     Imperial Commissioners at Bulawayo . . . . . Jan. 27, 1890  
     Pioneer Expedition starts . . . . . June 28 ,,  
     Arrives at Salisbury . . . . . Sept. 11 ,,  
     Pioneers disband . . . . . ,, 29 ,,  
     An Anglo-Portuguese skirmish . . . . . May 11, 1891  
     Anglo-Portuguese Convention . . . . . June 11 ,,  
     Mr. Rhodes over-confident . . . . . Nov. 29, 1892  
     Matabele raid on Victoria . . . . . July 18, 1893

Mashonaland and Matabeleland—*continued*.

Preparations for war	.	.	Oct., 1893
Engagement on Shangani River	.	.	Oct. 24 „
„ Imbembesi „	.	.	Nov. 1 „
„ Singuesi „	.	.	„ 2 „
Bulawayo occupied	.	.	„ 3 „
Ultimatum to Lobengula	.	.	„ 9 „
Death of Major Allen Wilson	.	.	Dec. 3 „
Death of Lobengula	.	.	Jan. 23, 1894
Matabeleland agreement	.	.	May 23 „
(For later dates <i>see</i> Rhodesia.)			

Massow (*see* Bechuanaland).

Meetings, Public, Law against	.	.	July 14, 1894
Methuen, Lord	Oct. 7, Nov. 23 (a), 25 (a), 29 (b), Dec. 11, 1899		March 15 (c), 1900

Meyer, Lucas	.	.	Oct. 20, 1899
Militia	.	Dec. 18 (b), 1899 ; Jan. 4 (a), 27 (b), 1900	

## Milner, Sir Alfred:

Appointed High Commissioner	.	.	Feb. 15, 1897
In Basutoland	.	.	April, 1898 (b)
States the case for the Uitlanders	.	.	May 4, 1899
At the Bloemfontein Conference	.	.	„ 31 „
Explains his policy	.	.	June 12, 1899 (b)
The state of suspense	.	Aug. 31, Oct. 3 (a)	„
(See also Franchise Laws and recent Transvaal items.)			

## Missionaries:

George Schmidt, Moravian, begins work	.	.	1737
Moravian station of Genadendal established	.	.	1792
London Missionary Society, <i>see</i>	.	.	1799
Moravian station of Groene Kloof established	.	.	1807
Robert Moffat goes to the Cape	.	.	1816
Dr. Philip	.	See 1818, 1828, Oct. 5, 1843	
Effect of Missionary movement, <i>see</i>	.	.	1818
Glasgow Missionary Society, <i>see</i>	.	.	1821
Paris Evangelical Society, <i>see</i>	.	.	1829
Moirosi, Basuto chief, <i>see</i>	.	.	March, 1879
Monopolies begin (Transvaal)	.	.	Sept., 1881
Montsioa ( <i>see</i> Bechuanaland).			
Moshette ( <i>see</i> Bechuanaland).			

Namaqualand (*see* Damaraland and Namaqualand).

Napier, Sir George	.	See July, 1838, <i>et seq.</i> ; also 1842	
Napoleon, Prince Louis, killed in Zululand	.	.	June 1, 1879

## Natal:

Vasco da Gama discovers Natal	.	.	1497
-------------------------------	---	---	------

Natal—*continued.*

Chaka supreme . . . . .	1812
„ grants Port Natal to British . . . . .	Aug., 1824
British settlers fix site for D'Urban (Durban) . . . . .	June 23, 1835
Boer trekkers called back . . . . .	Nov., 1838
„ in Natal . . . . .	July „
„ set up Republic of Natatia, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Dec. 4 „
Military occupation by British . . . . .	„ 4 „
British Garrison withdrawn . . . . .	Dec. 24, 1839
Natalia and Panda overthrow Dingaan . . . . .	Jan. 4, 1840
„ seeks independence . . . . .	Sept. 4 „
„ in alliance with Winburg . . . . .	„ 4 „
Raid on N'capai . . . . .	Jan. 14, 1841
Still British subjects . . . . .	June 10, Sept. 3 „
Natalia and the natives . . . . .	Aug. „
„ casts off British allegiance . . . . .	Oct. 11 „
Military occupation to be resumed, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Dec. 2 „
Natalia's solemn protest . . . . .	Feb. 21, 1842
Hopes of help from Holland . . . . .	March 24 „
Boers defeat British at Congella . . . . .	May 23 „
Richard King's gallant ride, <i>see</i> . . . . .	„ 23 „
Natalia submits . . . . .	July 14 „
Mr. H. Cloete's settlement: further trek . . . . .	May, 1843
Natal formally annexed to Cape . . . . .	May 31, 1844
Separate Legislative Council granted . . . . .	1847
Natal becomes a separate Colony . . . . .	July 15, 1856
Sir G. Wolseley promulgates new Constitution . . . . .	1875 (b)
Responsible Government granted . . . . .	June 26, 1893
Natal enters the Customs Union . . . . .	Oct., 1898 (b)
Reinforcements for Natal . . . . .	Aug. 9, Sept. 8 (b), 1899
Transvaal troops moving to Natal . . . . .	Sept. 30 „
Invasion of Natal . . . . .	Oct. 14, 1899 (b)
Boer plans disconcerted . . . . .	Nov. 20 „ (a)
The defence of Natal: official correspondence . . . . .	Feb. 1, 1900
New Zealand and the War . . . . .	Oct. 3 (b), Dec. 21 (c), 1899
	Jan. 13, 15, March 3, 15 (d), 24 (a), 1900

## Orange Free State :

(For early dates *see* Treks.)

Rise of Bloemfontein . . . . .	Feb., 1846
Orange River Sovereignty set up . . . . .	Feb. 3, 1848
Battle of Boomplaats . . . . .	Aug. 29 „
Abandonment of Sovereignty proclaimed . . . . .	Jan. 30, 1854
Bloemfontein Convention recognises independence . . . . .	Feb. 23 „
Attempted raid by Transvaal . . . . .	Jan. 5, 1857
Annexation with Cape sought . . . . .	Dec., 1858

## Orange Free State—*continued*.

- Free Staters and Basuto . . . . . See 1861 (a), 1864 (a), 1865 (a),  
April, 1866; March 12, 1868; Feb. 12, 1869
- Free State and diamond fields . . . . . 1871 (a)
- Receives £90,000 compensation . . . . . July, 1876
- Death of President Brand . . . . . July 14, 1888
- Mr. Reitz elected President . . . . . Jan. 11, 1889
- Approves federal union with Transvaal . . . . . June, 1895 (a)
- Mr. Steyn elected President . . . . . Feb., 1896
- Treaty of Alliance with Transvaal . . . . . April, 1897
- War preparations . . . . . June 23, 1899
- British troops on Free State borders . . . . . Sept. 19 „
- Attitude of Free State . . . . . „ 27 „
- President Steyn denounces the British . . . . . Oct. 11, 1899 (c)
- First act of war by the Free State . . . . . „ 11 „ (d)
- (See also Battles, etc.)
- Palgrave, Mr. Coates, *see* . . . . . 1876 (b)
- Panda, King :
- Joins Boers in overthrowing Dingaan . . . . . Jan. 4, 1840
- Cedes St. Lucia Bay to British . . . . . Oct. 5, 1843 (b)
- Phillips, Mr. Lionel Nov. 20, Dec. 29 (b), 1895; April 28, June 11, 1896
- Phrases, some striking :
- “The great evil of the Cape Colony consists in its  
magnitude” (Lord Glenelg) . . . . . May 10, 1835
- “Vaal R. run backwards,” etc. (Sir G. Wolseley) . . . . . Nov. 3, 1879
- “The interests of humanity” (Mr. Kruger) . . . . . Sept. 10, 1884
- “Now let the storm burst !” (Mr. Kruger) . . . . . Sept. 1, 1892
- “Come on and fight ! Come on !” (Mr. Otto, in the Raad) Aug., 1895
- “Take a tortoise; if,” etc. (Mr. Kruger). . . . . Dec. 26 „
- “Forget and forgive” (Mr. Kruger) . . . . . Jan. 10, 1896 (a)
- “Een Kwaaje Vrouw” (Mr. Kruger) . . . . . March 11, 1897
- “British subjects . . . in the position of helots”  
(Sir A. Milner) . . . . . May 4, 1899
- “Policy . . . of singular patience” (Sir A. Milner) June 12, 1899 (b)
- “Nothing to justify . . . even military preparations”  
(Sir H. Campbell-Bannerman) . . . . . „ 17, 1899
- “Hands to plough.” “See it through” (Mr.  
Chamberlain) . . . . . „ 26 „
- “Mr. Kruger . . . dribbles out reforms like water  
from a squeezed sponge” (Mr. Chamberlain) Aug. 28 (b) „
- “The sands are running down” (Mr. Chamberlain) „ 28 (b) „
- “War was always inevitable” (Mr. Chamberlain) . . . . . Oct. 19 „
- “Going to war in defence of principles” (Mr.  
Chamberlain) . . . . . „ 19 „

Phrases, some striking—*continued*.

- "The suzerainty was never buried. . . . It matters little what is the word provided we have the substance" (Mr. Chamberlain) . . . Oct. 19, 1899  
 "The effort of a nation . . . to put back the hands of the clock" (Lord Rosebery) . . . , 27 ,  
 "Got to see this thing through" (Lord Rosebery) . . . Nov. 1 ,  
 "We seek no gold fields. We seek no territory" (Lord Salisbury). . . . Nov. 9 (a) ,  
 Boer ultimatum "unparalleled in the history of diplomacy" (Sir H. H. Fowler) . . . , 9 (b) ,  
 "The Boers . . . have made for us a clean sheet" (Mr. Chamberlain) . . . , 29 (c) ,  
 "The reverses and disasters of to-day may become the victories and the triumphs of to-morrow" (Mr. Asquith) . . . Dec. 16 (a) ,  
 "Stagger humanity" (Mr. Kruger) . . . Oct. 12 (b)  
 Pietermaritzburg founded by Boer trekkers, *see* . . . Dec. 4, 1838  
 Pilcher, Col. . . . Jan. 1, 1900 (b)  
 Plumer, Col. . . . March 14 (e), 23, 1900  
 Pole-Carew, Major-Gen. . . . March 15, 1900 (e)  
 Portugal and South Africa:  
     Claims to Delagoa Bay . . . 1868 (a), July 24, 1875  
     Transvaal-Portuguese Treaty, *see* . . . Dec. 11, 1875; Oct. 7, 1882  
     Burgers seeks Portuguese alliances . . . April 12, 1877  
     Aspirations for Mashonaland and Matabeleland . . . May, 1885, 1887 (a); Feb. 11, Oct. 30, 1888  
     Portugal and Amatongaland . . . June, 1887  
     An Anglo-Portuguese skirmish . . . May 11, 1891  
     " " Convention . . . June 11 ,  
     Anglo-German agreement and Portuguese interests, *see* . . . Oct., 1898 (a)  
     (See also Delagoa Bay, and Delagoa Bay Railway.)  
 Potgieter, Hendrik:  
     Leads a party in Great Trek . . . 1836-40  
     Refuses to fight against British . . . Feb. 21, 1842  
     Combines Potchefstroom and Winburg districts . . . Feb., 1846  
     Death of . . . March, 1853  
 Press Laws in the Transvaal . . . Oct. 14, 1896  
 Pretorius, Andries W. J.:  
     Arrives in Natal . . . Nov., 1838  
     Commando against Dingaan . . . Jan. 4, 1840  
     " " N'capai . . . , 14, 1841  
     Treks from Natal, *see* . . . Jan., 1848  
     Supports discontented in Orange River territory . . . Feb. 3 ,  
     Defeated at Boomplaats . . . Aug. 29, ,

- Pretorius, Andries W. J.—*continued*.  
 Asks for independence of Transvaal . . . Aug. 25, 1851  
 Death . . . . . July 23, 1853
- Pretorius, M. W.:  
 Commandant-General, *see* . . . . . „ 23 „  
 Founds Pretoria, *see* . . . . . 1855  
 First President S.A. Republic . . . . . „  
 Attempted raid on Orange Free State, *see* . . . Jan. 5, 1857  
 President of united Transvaal . . . . . May 10, 1864
- Pringle, Thomas, the “South African Poet,” *see* . . . 1826
- Public Meetings, Law against . . . . . July 14, 1894
- Punishment Act, Cape of Good Hope . . . . . 1836 (*a*)
- Queen, The :  
 Gives 500 gs. to Refugees Fund, *see* . . . Oct. 18, 1899 (*c*)  
 „ £1,000 to War Relief Fund . . . Nov. 6 „ (*a*)  
 Sympathetic messages . . . . . Oct. 22 „ (*a*)  
 Farewell to Household Cavalry . . . Nov. 11 „ (*a*)  
 Present of chocolate . . . . . „ 21 „  
 Inspects troops and sees wives and children . . . „ 29 „ (*a*)  
 Message to Indian Princes . . . . . Jan. 3, 1900 (*a*)  
 Compliments Sir C. Warren’s force . . . „ 29 „ (*a*)  
 Receives greetings from Mafeking . . . Feb. 3, 1900  
 Compliments Canadians . . . . . Feb. 27 (*c*) „  
 Congratulations (Cronje’s surrender and Ladysmith) March 1 „
- Raaf, Commander . . . . . Oct., 1893
- Railways :  
 First sod of first railway . . . . . March 31, 1859  
 Transvaal Railway Concession . . . . . April 16, 1884  
 A gold fields steam tramway . . . . . 1888  
 Cape railway extension to Bloemfontein, *see* . . . 1889  
 Railway from Kimberley to Vryburg completed . . . Dec. 3, 1890  
 Cape system extended to Vaal River . . . . . 1891  
 „ „ „ the Rand . . . . . Sept., 1892  
 Extension from Vryburg to Mafeking . . . . . Oct. 3, 1894  
 „ „ Mafeking to Bulawayo . . . . . Nov. 4, 1897  
 Cape to Cairo railway, *see* . . . . . March, 1899  
 (*See also* Delagoa Bay Railway, Drifts Question,  
 and Beira Railway.)
- Reform Movement (*see* Uitlanders).
- Reitz, Mr., elected President of Free State . . . Jan. 11, 1889
- Retief, Piet :  
 Statement of grievances . . . . . Jan. 22, 1837  
 Commandant-General of Emigrants . . . . . April „  
 Murdered by Dingaan . . . . . Feb. 6, 1838



Rhodes, Col. Francis, *see* Dec. 29, 1895 (*b*); April 28, June 11, 1896  
 Rhodes, Mr. Cecil:

Goes out to South Africa . . . . 1871 (*c*)  
 Commissioner in Griqualand West . . . . 1882-3  
 Mission to Bechuanaland . . . . Aug., 1884 (*b*)  
 Agreement with the Freebooters . . . . Sept. 8, 1884  
 Wanted to keep the British flag flying . . . . „ 8 „  
 Helps to found gold fields of S.A. Co. . . . . 1886 (*b*)  
 Moffat Treaty with Lobengula, *see* . . . . Feb. 11, 1888  
 De Beers Consolidated Mines, Ltd. . . . . March 13 „  
 Rudd Concession, *see* . . . . Oct. 30 „  
 British South Africa Co., *see* . . . . April 30, 1889  
 Prime Minister at the Cape . . . . July 17, 1890  
 The Glen Grey Act . . . . May 14, 1895  
 German trade in Damaraland . . . . June, 1895 (*c*)  
 Repudiates Jameson's action . . . . Jan. 1 (*c*), 3 (*c*), 1896  
 Resigns Premiership . . . . Jan. 6 (*b*) „  
 In London . . . . Feb. 4 „  
 Settles revolt in Rhodesia . . . . March-Oct. „  
 Resignation as director B.S.A. Co. accepted . . . . June 26 „  
 Gives evidence before South Africa Committee . . . . Feb. 16, 1897  
 Censured by Report of „ „ . . . . July 13 „  
 Declaration on "equal rights" . . . . April 21 „  
 Re-elected a director of B.S.A. Co. . . . „ 21 1898  
 Cape to Cairo railway and telegraph, *see* . . . . March, 1899  
 Besieged at Kimberley, *see* Oct. 30, 1899 (*b*); Feb. 15, 1900 (*a*)  
 On the War . . . . Feb. 23, 1900

Rhodesia:

(For earlier dates *see* Mashonaland and Bechuanaland.)

The name "Rhodesia" . . . . Oct. 27, 1894  
 The occupation of Rhodesia . . . . March, 1895  
 A Revolt in Rhodesia . . . . March-Oct., 1896  
 Capital of B.S.A. Co., £5,000,000 . . . . April 21, 1898  
 Southern Rhodesia Order in Council . . . . Oct. 20 „  
 „ „ Legislative Council . . . . May 15, 1899 (*b*)  
 Rhodesia and the Customs Union . . . . Aug. 1, 1899  
 N.W. (Barotseland) Rhodesia Order in Council . . . . Dec. „  
 N.E. Rhodesia Order in Council . . . . Feb. 9, 1900

Riebeck, Jan van:

Takes possession of Table Bay . . . . April 7, 1652  
 Plants first vineyard . . . . . 1658  
 Letter concerning Hottentots . . . . July 29, 1659  
 Authorised to increase garrison . . . . Dec. 15 „

Ripon, Lord:

Action respecting commandeering . . . . May-June, 1894

Ripon, Lord—*continued*.

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Action respecting Amatongaland . . .                | March 15, 1895                     |
| „ „ Zambaan and Umbegeza . . .                      | „ 22 „                             |
| Roberts, Lord :                                     |                                    |
| His reinforcements after Majuba . . .               | Feb. 29, 1881                      |
| Commander-in-Chief in South Africa . . .            | Dec. 18, 1899 (a)                  |
| Message on Colonial sympathy . . .                  | „ 21 „ (a)                         |
| Leaves England . . .                                | „ 23 „ (b)                         |
| Arrives at the Cape . . .                           | Jan. 10, 1900 (a)                  |
| Welcomes C.I.V. . . .                               | Feb. 5 „                           |
| Leaves for the front . . .                          | „ 7 „                              |
| At Modder River . . .                               | „ 9 „ (a)                          |
| Praises Canadian troops . . .                       | „ 22 „ (a)                         |
| Cronje's surrender . . .                            | „ 27 „ (a)                         |
| At Bloemfontein . . .                               | March 13 „ (a)                     |
| “A record to be proud of” . . .                     | „ 14 „ (d)                         |
| Robinson, Mr. John . . .                            | Oct. 3, 1896                       |
| Robinson, Sir Hercules (Lord Rosmead) :             |                                    |
| Moffat Treaty with Lobengula . . .                  | Feb. 11, 188                       |
| Speech at Pretoria . . .                            | July 8, 1895                       |
| Action in Jameson Raid, <i>see</i> . . .            | Dec. 30, 1895, <i>et seq.</i>      |
| Granted a peerage . . .                             | July, 1896                         |
| Rowlands, Col., expedition against Secocoeni . . .  | <i>See</i> Dec. 2, 1879            |
| Rudd, C. D., Mr. . . .                              | <i>See</i> 1886 (b), Oct. 30, 1888 |
| Russell, Sir Baker, <i>see</i> . . .                | Dec. 2, 1879                       |
| Sampson, Mr. W. . . . May 30, 1896 ; June 22, 1897  |                                    |
| Saunders, Mr. C. R. . . .                           | Aug., 1891                         |
| Schlickmann, Capt. von . . .                        | 1876 (a)                           |
| Schmidt, Geo., Moravian missionary . . .            | 1737                               |
| Schreiner, Mr. . . .                                | April, July 8, 1899                |
| Sechele . . .                                       | <i>See</i> 1852 (a)                |
| Secocoeni :   |                                    |
| Defeats the Boers . . .                             | 1876 (a)                           |
| Ruthless massacres of his people . . .              | 1876                               |
| Cetewayo's lieutenant . . .                         | April 30, 1878                     |
| Surrenders to British . . .                         | Dec. 2, 1879                       |
| His murder by Mampoor . . .                         | Aug. 13, 1882                      |
| How he was “avenged” by the Boers, <i>see</i> . . . | Nov. 16-17 „                       |
| Secret Service (Transvaal) . . .                    | July 4, 1890 (b)                   |
| Selous, Mr. . . .                                   | June 28, 1890 ; May 11, 1891       |
| Shepstone, Sir T. :                                 |                                    |
| “Recognises” Cetewayo as heir to throne . . .       | 1861 (b)                           |
| Attends coronation . . .                            | Sept. 1, 1873                      |
| Mission to Transvaal . . .                          | „ 22, 1876                         |

Shepstone, Sir T.—*continued*.

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Arrives at Pretoria . . . . .  | Jan. 22, 1877      |
| Carries out annexation . . . . .                                       | April 12 „         |
| Shilling raises British flag at Cape . . . . .                         | July 3, 1820       |
| Sibonda and Uncamana : their territories annexed . . . . .             | Dec. 9, 1888       |
| Slachter's Nek, <i>see</i> . . . . .                                   | March 6, 1816      |
| Slavery :  |                    |
| Punishments of slaves . . . . .  | 1754               |
| "Apprenticing" of children . . . . .                                   | 1812               |
| Thomas Pringle, <i>see</i> . . . . .                                   | 1826               |
| The "Magna Charta of the Natives" . . . . .                            | July, 1828         |
| Regulation of: "Punishment Record Book" . . . . .                      | Feb., 1830         |
| Slave Emancipation Act . . . . .                                       | Dec. 1, 1834       |
| Slavery forbidden by Sand River Convention . . . . .                   | Jan. 17, 1852      |
| „ „ Bloemfontein „ . . . . .   | Feb. 23, 1854      |
| <i>See</i> declaration in Grondwet . . . . .                           | „ 19, 1858         |
| Slavery practised by Boers, <i>see</i> . . . . .                       | Aug. 22, 1876      |
| Admissions by President Burgers . . . . .                              | March 3, 1877      |
| Forbidden by Pretoria Convention . . . . .                             | Aug. 3, 1881 (a)   |
| „ London „ . . . . .   | Feb. 27, 1884      |
| Smellekamp, Johan, and the Natalia Boers . . . . .                     | March 24, 1842     |
| Smith, Capt. T. C.:  |                    |
| Sent to Faku's country . . . . .                                       | Jan. 14, 1841      |
| Defeated by Boers at Congella . . . . .                                | May 23, 1842       |
| Smith, Sir Harry:  |                    |
| Arrives in Capetown . . . . .  | Dec. 1, 1847       |
| Sets up British Kaffraria . . . . .                                    | „ 17 „             |
| „ Orange River Sovereignty . . . . .                                   | Feb. 3, 1848       |
| Somerset, Lord Charles . . . . .                                       | <i>See</i> 1819    |
| Sordwana Bay . . . . .   | Dec. 9, 1888       |
| "Sovereign international State" . May 9, 31-June 5, Sept. 22 (a), 1899 | March 13 (b), 1900 |

## Speeches:

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Asquith, Mr. . . . .                  | Dec. 16, 1899 (a)                                 |
| Balfour, Mr. . . . .                  | Oct. 11 (a), Nov. 28 (a), 1899; Jan. 30, 1900 (a) |
| Bannerman, Sir H. Campbell- . . . . . | June 17, Nov. 15 (b), Dec. 19 (a), 1899           |
|                                       | Jan. 30, 1900 (a)                                 |
| Brassey, Lord . . . . .               | Oct. 3, 1899 (b)                                  |
| Carrington, Lord . . . . .            | Jan. 29, 1900 (b)                                 |
| Chamberlain, Mr. . . . .              | June 26, Aug. 28 (b), Oct. 19, Nov. 29 (c), 1899  |
| Curzon, Lord . . . . .                | Feb. 26, 1900                                     |
| Devonshire, Duke of . . . . .         | Dec. 14, 1899                                     |
| Fowler, Sir H. H. . . . .             | Nov. 9, 1899 (b)                                  |
| Grey, Sir Edward . . . . .            | Oct. 25, 1899                                     |
| Kimberley, Lord . . . . .             | Nov. 14, 1899 (a); Jan. 30, 1900 (a)              |

Speeches—*continued*.

Laurier, Sir Wilfrid . . . . .	March 13, 1900 ( <i>d</i> )
Lord Mayor . . . . .	. Jan. 1 ,, ( <i>a</i> )
Lyne, Mr. . . . .	. ,, 17 ,, ( <i>b</i> )
Milner, Sir Alfred . . . . .	. June 12, 1899 ( <i>b</i> )
Phillips, Mr. Lionel . . . . .	. Nov. 20, 1895
Ranfurly, Lord . . . . .	March 24, 1900 ( <i>a</i> )
Rosebery, Lord . . . . .	Oct. 27, Nov. 1, 1899
Rose-Innes, Mr. . . . .	. March 30, 1900
Salisbury, Lord . . . . .	Nov. 9, 1899 ( <i>a</i> ); Jan. 30 ,,
Seddon, Mr. J. R. . . . .	. ,, 13 ,,
White, Sir George . . . . .	March 9 ( <i>b</i> ), 27 ( <i>b</i> ) ,,
Sprigg, Sir Gordon, <i>see</i> . . . . .	. Nov. 22, 1884
Stellaland ( <i>see</i> Bechuanaland).	
Stellenbosch founded . . . . .	. . . . . 1679
Steyn, Mr. : . . . . .	
Elected President of Orange Free State . . . . .	. Feb., 1896
Seeks friendly settlement . . . . .	Oct. 2 ( <i>b</i> ), 4, 1899
Denounces the British . . . . .	. Oct. 11, 1899 ( <i>c</i> )
New Year Address . . . . .	. Jan. 9, 1900
Strathcona, Lord . . . . .	<i>See</i> Jan. 10, 1900 ( <i>c</i> )
Suzerainty : . . . . .	
<i>See</i> Pretoria Convention . . . . .	. Aug. 3, 1881 ( <i>a</i> )
Transvaal discontent . . . . .	. Nov. 7, 1883
<i>See</i> London Convention . . . . .	. Feb. 27, 1884
Mr. Kruger says: "They relinquished S." . . . .	. Jan. 26, 1895
Transvaal despatches denying S. . . . .	April 16, 1898; May 9, 1899
"Controversy to drop" . . . . .	. Aug. 19 ,,
British position maintained . . . . .	. Aug. 28, 1899 ( <i>a</i> )
"Suzerainty never buried" . . . . .	. Oct. 19, 1899
Swaziland : . . . . .	
Independence of Swaziland recognised—	
By the Pretoria Convention, <i>see</i> . . . . .	. Aug. 3, 1881 ( <i>a</i> )
,, London ,, ,, . . . . .	. Feb. 27, 1884
Umbandine seeks British protection against Boers . . . . .	. Nov., 1885
Asks for British Resident . . . . .	. . . . . 1887 ( <i>b</i> )
,, ,, Protectorate . . . . .	. March, 1889 ( <i>a</i> )
Sir F. de Winton, Special Commissioner . . . . .	. Sept., 1889
,, ,, <i>en route</i> . . . . .	. Nov. 11 ,,
His report: Boer tactics . . . . .	. Feb. 25, 1890
Convention signed . . . . .	. Aug., 1890 ( <i>a</i> )
Boer protection for Swaziland . . . . .	. Nov. 13, 1893
Swazi envoys to England . . . . .	. Oct.-Nov., 1894
A Boer suzerainty . . . . .	. Dec. ,,
Boer administration assumed . . . . .	. Feb. 19, 1895

Swaziland—*continued*.

Boer rule in Swaziland . . .	Oct. 6, 1898
Swellendam :	
Magistracy established . . .	1745
Rebels against Dutch rule . . .	1795
Symons, Gen. Sir W. Penn :	
His position in Natal . . .	Oct. 7, 1899
Wounded at Battle of Talana Hill . . .	„ 20 „
Death . . .	Oct. 23, 1899 ( <i>a</i> )

## Telegraphs :

Direct communication with Cape . . .	Dec. 25, 1879
Cape to Cairo telegraph, <i>see</i> . . .	March, 1899
Trafalgar Square meeting . . .	Sept. 23 „

## Transvaal, The :

(See dates under Treks.)

Having defeated Moselekatze, Matabele king, Boers claim greater part of Transvaal, etc. . .	Nov., 1837
The "Thirty-three Articles" . . .	May 23, 1849
Four Commandants-General appointed . . .	1851
Pretorius asks for independence of Transvaal, <i>see</i> . . .	Aug. 25 „
Sand River Convention signed . . .	Jan. 17, 1852
Parties in the Transvaal . . .	July 23, 1853
Pretoria founded . . .	1855
Representative Assembly at Potchefstroom . . .	Jan. 5, 1857
Relations with Free State : a raid, <i>see</i> . . .	„ 5 „
Grondwet proclaimed . . .	Feb. 19, 1858
Pretorius President of united Transvaal . . .	May 10, 1864
First gold law passed . . .	1871 ( <i>b</i> )
Mr. Burgers becomes President . . .	July 1, 1872
Treaty with Portugal, <i>see</i> . . .	Dec. 11, 1875
War with Secocoeni . . .	1876 ( <i>a</i> )
Rival factions . . .	April, 1876
Sir T. Shepstone's mission, <i>see</i> . . .	Sept. 22 „
President Burgers on the situation . . .	March 3, 1877
Annexation . . .	April 12 „
Mr. Kruger leaves for London . . .	May 9 „
"Peoples' Committee" formed . . .	Jan., 1878
• Second deputation to London . . .	April 4 „
"Nothing short of independence" . . .	Jan. 13, 1879
Sir B. Frere talks of "local self-government" . . .	„ 13 „
„ „ meets the Boers . . .	April 10 „
Erasmus Farm Conference . . .	„ 12 „
Mr. Gladstone's Midlothian speeches . . .	Nov. „
Paramountcy of England, <i>see</i> . . .	Nov. 29 „

Transvaal, The—*continued*.

The execution on burgher Storm . . .	Dec. 9, 1879
Wonderfontein meeting foreshadows revolt . . .	„ 10 „
Mr. Gladstone thanked . . .	March 18, 1880
Decision of new Government . . .	May 12 „
Mr. Gladstone's change of front . . .	June 8 „
Bezuidenhout's wagon . . .	Nov. 11 „
British troops wanted at Pretoria . . .	„ 26 „
Peace negotiations . . .	<i>See</i> Dec. 5, 1880; Jan 10, 23, 27; Feb. 8 ( <i>b</i> ), 13, 16, 21, 1881
Declaration of Independence . . .	Dec. 13, 1880
Outbreak of hostilities (Potchefstroom) . . .	„ 16 „
Bronkhorst Spruit massacre . . .	„ 20 „
The vindication of the Queen's authority . . .	Jan. 7, 1881
Colley's reason for advancing . . .	„ 24 „
British defeat at Laing's Nek . . .	„ 28 „
Engagement at Ingogo River . . .	Feb. 8, 1881 ( <i>a</i> )
Sir Evelyn Wood's reinforcements . . .	Feb. 17, 1881
Colley and the home Government, <i>see</i> . . .	„ 18 „
Majuba Hill Disaster: death of Colley . . .	„ 27 „
Sir F. Roberts to take reinforcements, <i>see</i> . . .	„ 29 „
Armistice arranged . . .	March 6 „
H.M. Government will appoint Commission . . .	„ 8 „
Surrender of Potchefstroom . . .	„ 19 „
Terms of Peace . . .	„ 22 „
Mr. Kruger promises equal treatment . . .	May 10 „
Pretoria Convention signed . . .	Aug. 3 „
Boer discontent with Pretoria Convention . . .	Nov. 7, 1883
London Convention signed . . .	Feb. 27, 1884
Johannesburg Chamber of Mines founded . . .	Oct., 1889
The "Flag Incident" at Johannesburg . . .	March 4, 1890
Mr. Kruger and his Relations . . .	July 4, 1890 ( <i>b</i> )
The Banjailand (Limpopo) Trek . . .	June, 1891
Mr. Kruger will "never give anything" . . .	Sept. 1, 1892
Commandeering of British subjects . . .	May-June, 1894
Reform meeting at Johannesburg . . .	July 14 „
Law against public meetings, <i>see</i> . . .	„ 14 „
Sir Henry (Lord) Loch at Pretoria . . .	„ 25 „
Mr. Kruger wants to amend the London Convention . . .	„ 25 „
Mr. Kruger talks about German friendship . . .	Jan 26, 1895
Question of federal union with Free State . . .	June, 1895 ( <i>a</i> )
Vaal River Drifts Question . . .	Oct. 1, 1895
Dr. Jameson starts on his raid . . .	Dec. 29, 1895 ( <i>b</i> )
( <i>See</i> further under Jameson Raid.)	
Aliens Expulsion Law, <i>see</i> . . .	Oct. 14, 1896; July 15, 1898

Transvaal, The—*continued*.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Aliens Immigration Law, <i>see</i>                      | Nov. 26, 1896; May 6, 1897                |
| War expenditure in 1896                                 | Dec., 1896                                |
| Kotze episode, <i>see</i>                               | Jan.-Feb., March 1, 1897                  |
| Sir Alfred Milner High Commissioner                     | Feb. 15 "                                 |
| Mr. Kruger visits the Free State <i>re</i> closer union | March 9 "                                 |
| His speech: "Een Kwaaje Vrouw"                          | " 11 "                                    |
| Treaty of alliance with Free State                      | April "                                   |
| Report of Industrial Commission                         | Aug. 5 "                                  |
| Revenue during 1897                                     | Dec., 1897 ( <i>b</i> )                   |
| Denies suzerainty, <i>see</i>                           | April 16, 1898                            |
| The killing of Edgar                                    | Dec. 18 "                                 |
| Market Square meeting, Johannesburg                     | " 24 "                                    |
| Petition to the Queen                                   | Dec. 24, 25, 1898; March 24, May 10, 1899 |
| Reformers' Meeting broken up                            | Jan. 14 "                                 |
| Murder of Mrs. Appelbe                                  | April 28 "                                |
| Sir A. Milner states the case                           | May 4 "                                   |
| "A Sovereign International State"                       | " 9 "                                     |
| Mr. Chamberlain suggests a Conference                   | " 10 "                                    |
| The Bogus Conspiracy                                    | " 15 "                                    |
| Bloemfontein Conference                                 | May 31-June 5 "                           |
| Franchise proposals ( <i>see under</i> Franchise Laws). |   |
| Suspense at Johannesburg                                | Aug. 31 "                                 |
| Raid on Editors: general exodus                         | Sept. 1 "                                 |
| Distress in Johannesburg                                | " 12 "                                    |
| "Situation to be considered afresh"                     | Sept. 22, 1899 ( <i>a</i> )               |
| Transvaal troops moving on Natal                        | " 30 "                                    |
| Chaos   | Oct. 2 " ( <i>a</i> )                     |
| President Steyn seeks a settlement                      | " 2 " ( <i>b</i> )                        |
| Plan of campaign arranged                               | " 2 " ( <i>c</i> )                        |
| Seizure of gold by Boers                                | " 3 " ( <i>a</i> )                        |
| Peace negotiations                                      | " 4 "                                     |
| Boer ultimatum  | " 9 "                                     |
| British reply   | " 10 " ( <i>a</i> )                       |
| Refugees, Number of                                     | " 10 " ( <i>b</i> )                       |
| (For war operations <i>see under</i> Battles, etc.)     |   |
| Transvaal and Orange Free State, Relations between:     |   |
| Transvaal raid on the Free State, <i>see</i>            | Jan. 5, 1857                              |
| Treaties made   | March 13, 1889                            |
| Free State supports federal union                       | June, 1895 ( <i>a</i> )                   |
| Closer union: Mr. Kruger's visit                        | March 9, 11, 1897                         |
| Treaty of alliance                                      | April "                                   |
| Free State will respect obligations                     | Sept. 27, 1899                            |
| Treaties:   |   |
| With Andries Waterboer                                  | Dec. 11, 1834                             |

Treaties—*continued*.

Treaty of Thaba Bosigo . . . . .	April, 1866
„ Aliwal North . . . . .	Feb. 12, 1869
Transvaal-Portuguese . . . . .	Dec. 11, 1875; Oct. 7, 1882
Sir C. Warren with Khama . . . . .	May 12, 1885
Treaty with Amatongaland . . . . .	June, 1887
Moffat Treaty with Lobengula . . . . .	Feb. 11, 1888
Transvaal-Free State . . . . .	March 13, 1889; April, 1897

## Treaty States :

Treaty with Andries Waterboer (Griqua) . . . . .	Dec. 11, 1834
„ Kok (Griqua) and Moshesh (Basuto) . . . . .	Oct. 5, 1843 ( <i>a</i> )
Pondo Treaty State created . . . . .	Nov. 23, 1844

## Treks :

Early treks to avoid Dutch rule . . . . .	1689, 1745, 1784
In advance of the Great Trek . . . . .	1835 ( <i>a</i> )
The Great Trek . . . . .	1836-40
Piet Retief's statement . . . . .	Jan. 22, 1837
Trek from Natal . . . . .	May, 1843; Jan., 1848
„ Potchefstroom and Winburg . . . . .	1845
„ Griqua country . . . . .	Feb., 1846
„ Orange River Sovereignty . . . . .	Feb. 3, 1848
Banjailand or Limpopo Trek . . . . .	June, 1891
Trichardt, Carel, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1835

## Uitlanders, Grievances of :

Transvaal Republican Union (Barberton) . . . . .	1887 ( <i>d</i> )
„ National Union formed . . . . .	1892
Johannesburg meeting demands reforms . . . . .	July 14, 1894
Petition to Sir Henry Loch at Pretoria . . . . .	„ 25 „
Statement by Mr. Lionel Phillips . . . . .	Nov. 20, 1895
Manifesto by Mr. Charles Leonard . . . . .	Dec. 27 „
Education, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Oct. 3, 1896; May, 1898
Report of Industrial Commission . . . . .	Aug. 5, 1897
Killing of Edgar . . . . .	Dec. 18, 1898
Meeting in Market Square, Johannesburg . . . . .	„ 24 „
Petition to the Queen, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Dec. 24, 25, 1898; March 24, May 10, 1899
Explosives monopoly . . . . .	Jan. 13, Feb. 2, March 9 „
Meeting broken up . . . . .	Jan. 14 „
Views on Bloemfontein Conference . . . . .	June 10 „
Declaration by Uitlander Council . . . . .	July 1, 1899 ( <i>b</i> )
New Franchise law inadequate . . . . .	„ 26 „

Umbandine (*see under* Swaziland).

Umhlagaza the prophet, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1857
Upington, Sir Thomas . . . . .	Nov. 22, 1884
Uys, Piet . . . . .	March 28, 1879



- Vaal River Drifts question . . . . . Oct. 1, 1895  
 Vasco da Gama doubles the Cape . . . . . 1497  
 Vaughan, Cardinal, and the War . . . . . Dec. 20, 1899 (*b*)  
 Viljoen, Gen. . . . . Oct. 21 (*a*), 1899  
 Vineyard, First, planted . . . . . 1658  
 Volunteers and the War, *see* . . . . . Dec. 18, 1899, (*b*) *et seq.*  
 Volunteers, City of London Imperial Dec. 20, 23 (*a*), 1899; Jan. 1, 1900  
  
 Wales, Prince of, and relief funds . . . . . March 12, 1900 (*b*)  
 Wales, Princess of, and Hospital Ship . . . . . Nov. 2, 1899 (*a*)  
 Walfisch Bay:  
     Taken over by Britain . . . . . March 12, 1878  
     Added to Cape Colony . . . . . Aug. 7, 1884  
 Warden, Major, *see* . . . . . Feb., 1846  
 Warren, Sir Charles:  
     *See* Bechuanaland . . . . . 1878 (*a*); Oct. 24, 1884–Sept. 24, 1885  
     Appointed to command Fifth Division . . . . . Nov. 14, 1899 (*b*)  
     At Trichard's Drift . . . . . Jan. 17–18, 1900  
     Complimented by the Queen . . . . . „ 29, 1900 (*a*)  
 Waterboer, Andries . . . . . Dec. 11, 1834; Oct. 5, 1843 (*a*)  
 Wauchope, Gen., killed . . . . . Dec. 11, 1899  
 Webb, Mr., Arrest of, *see* . . . . . Dec. 24, 1898  
 Wet, Sir Jacobus de, resigns . . . . . May 1, 1896  
 White, Col. the Hon. H. F. . . . . July 20 „  
 White, Major the Hon. R. . . . . „ 20 „  
 White, Sir George . . . . . Sept. 16 (*b*), Oct. 7, 20, 24 (*a*), 29, 30 (*a*), 1899;  
     Jan. 6 (*a*), March 9 (*b*), 27 (*b*), 1900  
 Willoughby, Sir John . . . . . July 20, 1896  
 Wilson, Major Allen, *see* . . . . . Oct., Dec. 3, 1893  
 Winton, Sir F. de, mission to Swaziland, *see* . . . . . Sept., Nov. 11, 1889;  
     Feb. 25, 1890  
 Wolseley, Sir Garnet (Lord):  
     Appointed to Natal (Zulu War) . . . . . June, 1879  
     Arrives at Cape . . . . . June 28 „  
     Sets up 13 districts in Zululand . . . . . Sept. 1 „  
     Operations against Secocoeni . . . . . Dec. 2 „  
     Transvaal not to be given back . . . . . Nov. 3, „ 17 „  
 Wood, Sir Evelyn:  
     *See* Zululand dates . . . . . March 28, 1879, *et seq.*  
     And Transvaal dates . . . . . Feb. 17, 1881, *et seq.*  
 Woodgate, Major-Gen. Sir E., Death of . . . . . Mar. 24, 1900 (*b*)  
 Wynberg founded . . . . . 1658  
  
 Yeomanry, Imperial . . . . . Dec. 19 (*c*), 20 (*c*), 23 (*a*), 1899; Jan. 17, 1900 (*a*)  
 Yule, Gen. . . . . Oct. 21 (*a*), 22 (*b*), 26 (*a*), 1899

## Zambaan and Umbegesa :

Boer claims to their territory . . . . .	Jan. 30, 1888
The Boer access to the sea . . . . .	Oct. 20 „
Mr. Kruger makes an offer . . . . .	May 4, 1889
A Boer tax-gatherer . . . . .	Aug., 1891
Boer movement seawards . . . . .	1894
Sir H. B. Loch's appeal . . . . .	Feb. 20, 1895
Annexation to Zululand . . . . .	March 22 „

## Zululand :

Chaka establishes Zulu power, <i>see</i> . . . . .	1812
„ murdered and succeeded by Dingaan . . . . .	1828
Dingaan massacres Retief's party . . . . .	Feb. 6, 1838
Zulus defeat Boer commando . . . . .	April 11 „
„ Natal „ . . . . .	„ 17 „
Dingaan defeated (“Dingaan's Day”) . . . . .	Dec. 16 „
Finally overthrown by Panda and Boers, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Jan. 4, 1840
Boers proclaim Panda king . . . . .	„ 4 „
Their claims to Zulu territory . . . . .	„ 4 „
Cetewayo fights Umbelazi for succession . . . . .	1856 (a)
„ recognised as heir to throne . . . . .	1861 (b)
„ becomes king . . . . .	Sept. 1, 1873
„ conspires against whites, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Nov. 2, 1876
„ wants to fight the Dutch . . . . .	April 11, 1877
The danger of the situation, <i>see</i> . . . . .	Jan. 24, 1878
Zulus and Boers : Boundary question . . . . .	Feb. „
Cetewayo and Secocoeni . . . . .	April 30 „
Troubles with Zululand . . . . .	July, 1878 (a)
Boundary Commissioners' report . . . . .	„ „ (b)
Zulu “hunting party” on the Tugela . . . . .	Sept. 12, 1878
Zulu military system . . . . .	Nov. 29 „
Sir B. Frere's ultimatum . . . . .	Dec. 11 „
British Government deprecate war . . . . .	„ 13 „
Reinforcements “for defensive purposes” . . . . .	„ 14 „
„ arrive . . . . .	Jan. 9, 1879
Troops enter Zululand . . . . .	„ 10 „
Disaster at Isandhlwana . . . . .	Jan. 22, 1879 (a)
Defence of Rorke's Drift . . . . .	„ 22 „ (b)
Col. Pearson's engagement . . . . .	„ 22 „ (c)
Intombi River disaster . . . . .	March 12, 1879
Capture of Hlobani . . . . .	„ 28 „
Victory of Kambula Kop . . . . .	„ 29 „
„ Gingilhovo . . . . .	April 1 „
Sir Garnet Wolseley to go out . . . . .	June „
Decisive defeat of Zulus at Ulundi . . . . .	July 4 „
Cetewayo a prisoner . . . . .	Aug. 28 „

*Zululand—continued.*

Sir G. Wolseley sets up 13 districts . . .	Sept. 1, 1879
Cetewayo : Reinstatement and overthrow, <i>see</i> . . .	Jan. 29, 1883
Boers proclaim Dinizulu king . . .	May 21, 1884
„ secure “New Republic” in Zululand . . .	Aug , 1884 ( <i>a</i> )
Boer claims in Zululand : their extent . . .	Dec., 1885
“Boer Republic” recognised by Britain . . .	Nov. 4, 1886
British annex remainder of Zululand . . .	May, 1887
“New Republic” absorbed in Transvaal . . .	July, 1888
Territories of Sibonda and Uncamana annexed to Zululand . . .	Dec. 9 „
Territories of Zambaan and Umbegesa annexed . . .	March 22, 1895
Zululand incorporated with Natal . . .	Dec. 1, 1897

